



OpenShift Container Platform 4.16

Virtualization

OpenShift Virtualization installation, usage, and release notes

OpenShift Container Platform 4.16 Virtualization

OpenShift Virtualization installation, usage, and release notes

Legal Notice

Copyright © 2024 Red Hat, Inc.

The text of and illustrations in this document are licensed by Red Hat under a Creative Commons Attribution–Share Alike 3.0 Unported license ("CC-BY-SA"). An explanation of CC-BY-SA is available at

<http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/>

. In accordance with CC-BY-SA, if you distribute this document or an adaptation of it, you must provide the URL for the original version.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, the Red Hat logo, JBoss, OpenShift, Fedora, the Infinity logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java® is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS® is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL® is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Node.js® is an official trademark of Joyent. Red Hat is not formally related to or endorsed by the official Joyent Node.js open source or commercial project.

The OpenStack® Word Mark and OpenStack logo are either registered trademarks/service marks or trademarks/service marks of the OpenStack Foundation, in the United States and other countries and are used with the OpenStack Foundation's permission. We are not affiliated with, endorsed or sponsored by the OpenStack Foundation, or the OpenStack community.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Abstract

This document provides information about how to use OpenShift Virtualization in OpenShift Container Platform.

Table of Contents

CHAPTER 1. ABOUT	17
1.1. ABOUT OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION	17
1.1.1. What you can do with OpenShift Virtualization	17
1.1.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization supported cluster version	17
1.1.1.2. About volume and access modes for virtual machine disks	17
1.1.1.3. Single-node OpenShift differences	18
1.1.1.4. Additional resources	18
1.2. SECURITY POLICIES	19
1.2.1. About workload security	19
1.2.2. TLS certificates	19
1.2.3. Authorization	19
1.2.3.1. Default cluster roles for OpenShift Virtualization	20
1.2.3.2. RBAC roles for storage features in OpenShift Virtualization	20
1.2.3.2.1. Cluster-wide RBAC roles	20
1.2.3.2.2. Namespaced RBAC roles	23
1.2.3.3. Additional SCCs and permissions for the kubevirt-controller service account	24
1.2.4. Additional resources	24
1.3. OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION ARCHITECTURE	25
1.3.1. About the HyperConverged Operator (HCO)	26
1.3.2. About the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) Operator	27
1.3.3. About the Cluster Network Addons Operator	28
1.3.4. About the Hostpath Provisioner (HPP) Operator	28
1.3.5. About the Scheduling, Scale, and Performance (SSP) Operator	29
1.3.6. About the OpenShift Virtualization Operator	29
CHAPTER 2. RELEASE NOTES	31
2.1. OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION RELEASE NOTES	31
2.1.1. Providing documentation feedback	31
2.1.2. About Red Hat OpenShift Virtualization	31
2.1.2.1. OpenShift Virtualization supported cluster version	31
2.1.2.2. Supported guest operating systems	31
2.1.2.3. Microsoft Windows SVVP certification	31
2.1.3. Quick starts	32
2.1.4. New and changed features	32
2.1.4.1. Installation and update	32
2.1.4.2. Virtualization	32
2.1.4.3. Networking	32
2.1.4.4. Web console	32
2.1.4.5. Monitoring	32
2.1.4.6. Notable technical changes	32
2.1.5. Deprecated and removed features	33
2.1.5.1. Deprecated features	33
2.1.5.2. Removed features	33
2.1.6. Technology Preview features	33
2.1.7. Known issues	33
Monitoring	33
Nodes	34
Storage	34
Virtualization	34
Web console	35

CHAPTER 3. GETTING STARTED	36
3.1. GETTING STARTED WITH OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION	36
3.1.1. Planning and installing OpenShift Virtualization	36
Planning and installation resources	36
3.1.2. Creating and managing virtual machines	36
3.1.3. Next steps	37
3.2. USING THE CLI TOOLS	37
3.2.1. Installing virtctl	37
3.2.1.1. Installing the virtctl binary on RHEL 9, Linux, Windows, or macOS	37
3.2.1.2. Installing the virtctl RPM on RHEL 8	38
3.2.2. virtctl commands	39
3.2.2.1. virtctl information commands	39
3.2.2.2. VM information commands	39
3.2.2.3. VM manifest creation commands	40
3.2.2.4. VM management commands	40
3.2.2.5. VM connection commands	41
3.2.2.6. VM export commands	42
3.2.2.7. VM memory dump commands	43
3.2.2.8. Hot plug and hot unplug commands	45
3.2.2.9. Image upload commands	45
3.2.3. Deploying libguestfs by using virtctl	45
3.2.3.1. Libguestfs and virtctl guestfs commands	46
3.2.4. Using Ansible	47
CHAPTER 4. INSTALLING	48
4.1. PREPARING YOUR CLUSTER FOR OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION	48
4.1.1. Supported platforms	48
4.1.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization on AWS bare metal	49
4.1.2. Hardware and operating system requirements	50
4.1.2.1. CPU requirements	50
4.1.2.2. Operating system requirements	50
4.1.2.3. Storage requirements	50
4.1.2.3.1. About volume and access modes for virtual machine disks	51
4.1.3. Live migration requirements	51
4.1.4. Physical resource overhead requirements	52
Memory overhead	52
CPU overhead	53
Storage overhead	53
4.1.5. Single-node OpenShift differences	54
4.1.6. Object maximums	54
4.1.7. Cluster high-availability options	54
4.2. INSTALLING OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION	55
4.2.1. Installing the OpenShift Virtualization Operator	55
4.2.1.1. Installing the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the web console	55
4.2.1.2. Installing the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the command line	56
4.2.1.2.1. Subscribing to the OpenShift Virtualization catalog by using the CLI	56
4.2.1.2.2. Deploying the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the CLI	58
4.2.2. Next steps	58
4.3. UNINSTALLING OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION	58
4.3.1. Uninstalling OpenShift Virtualization by using the web console	59
4.3.1.1. Deleting the HyperConverged custom resource	59
4.3.1.2. Deleting Operators from a cluster using the web console	59
4.3.1.3. Deleting a namespace using the web console	60

4.3.1.4. Deleting OpenShift Virtualization custom resource definitions	60
4.3.2. Uninstalling OpenShift Virtualization by using the CLI	61
CHAPTER 5. POSTINSTALLATION CONFIGURATION	63
5.1. POSTINSTALLATION CONFIGURATION	63
5.2. SPECIFYING NODES FOR OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION COMPONENTS	63
5.2.1. About node placement rules for OpenShift Virtualization components	63
5.2.2. Applying node placement rules	64
5.2.3. Node placement rule examples	64
5.2.3.1. Subscription object node placement rule examples	64
5.2.3.2. HyperConverged object node placement rule example	65
5.2.3.3. HostPathProvisioner object node placement rule example	67
5.2.4. Additional resources	68
5.3. POSTINSTALLATION NETWORK CONFIGURATION	68
5.3.1. Installing networking Operators	68
5.3.2. Configuring a Linux bridge network	68
5.3.2.1. Creating a Linux bridge NNCP	68
5.3.2.2. Creating a Linux bridge NAD by using the web console	69
5.3.3. Configuring a network for live migration	70
5.3.3.1. Configuring a dedicated secondary network for live migration	70
5.3.3.2. Selecting a dedicated network by using the web console	72
5.3.4. Configuring an SR-IOV network	72
5.3.4.1. Configuring SR-IOV network devices	72
5.3.5. Enabling load balancer service creation by using the web console	75
5.4. POSTINSTALLATION STORAGE CONFIGURATION	75
5.4.1. Configuring local storage by using the HPP	75
5.4.1.1. Creating a storage class for the CSI driver with the storagePools stanza	76
5.5. CONFIGURING HIGHER VM WORKLOAD DENSITY	77
5.5.1. Using wasp-agent to configure higher VM workload density	77
CHAPTER 6. UPDATING	83
6.1. UPDATING OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION	83
6.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization on RHEL 9	83
6.1.1.1. RHEL 9 machine type	83
6.1.1.2. About updating OpenShift Virtualization	83
6.1.2.1. About workload updates	84
Migration attempts and timeouts	85
6.1.2.2. About EUS-to-EUS updates	85
6.1.2.2.1. Preparing to update	85
6.1.3. Preventing workload updates during an EUS-to-EUS update	86
6.1.4. Configuring workload update methods	89
6.1.5. Approving pending Operator updates	90
6.1.5.1. Manually approving a pending Operator update	90
6.1.6. Monitoring update status	91
6.1.6.1. Monitoring OpenShift Virtualization upgrade status	91
6.1.6.2. Viewing outdated OpenShift Virtualization workloads	92
6.1.7. Additional resources	92
CHAPTER 7. VIRTUAL MACHINES	93
7.1. CREATING VMS FROM RED HAT IMAGES	93
7.1.1. Creating virtual machines from Red Hat images overview	93
7.1.1.1. About golden images	93
7.1.1.1.1. How do golden images work?	93
7.1.1.1.2. Red Hat implementation of golden images	93

7.1.1.2. About VM boot sources	94
7.1.2. Creating virtual machines from instance types	94
7.1.2.1. About instance types	94
7.1.2.1.1. Required attributes	94
7.1.2.1.2. Optional attributes	95
7.1.2.2. Pre-defined instance types	96
7.1.2.3. Creating manifests by using the virtctl tool	97
7.1.2.4. Creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console	97
7.1.3. Creating virtual machines from templates	99
7.1.3.1. About VM templates	99
7.1.3.2. Creating a VM from a template	100
7.1.3.2.1. Storage volume types	100
7.1.3.2.2. Storage fields	102
Advanced storage settings	102
7.1.3.2.3. Customizing a VM template by using the web console	103
7.1.4. Creating virtual machines from the command line	103
7.1.4.1. Creating manifests by using the virtctl tool	104
7.1.4.2. Creating a VM from a VirtualMachine manifest	104
7.2. CREATING VMS FROM CUSTOM IMAGES	105
7.2.1. Creating virtual machines from custom images overview	105
7.2.2. Creating VMs by using container disks	106
7.2.2.1. Building and uploading a container disk	106
7.2.2.2. Disabling TLS for a container registry	107
7.2.2.3. Creating a VM from a container disk by using the web console	108
7.2.2.4. Creating a VM from a container disk by using the command line	108
7.2.3. Creating VMs by importing images from web pages	111
7.2.3.1. Creating a VM from an image on a web page by using the web console	111
7.2.3.2. Creating a VM from an image on a web page by using the command line	112
7.2.4. Creating VMs by uploading images	114
7.2.4.1. Creating a VM from an uploaded image by using the web console	114
7.2.4.2. Creating a Windows VM	115
7.2.4.2.1. Generalizing a Windows VM image	116
7.2.4.2.2. Specializing a Windows VM image	117
7.2.4.3. Creating a VM from an uploaded image by using the command line	117
7.2.5. Installing the QEMU guest agent and VirtIO drivers	118
7.2.5.1. Installing the QEMU guest agent	118
7.2.5.1.1. Installing the QEMU guest agent on a Linux VM	118
7.2.5.1.2. Installing the QEMU guest agent on a Windows VM	119
7.2.5.2. Installing VirtIO drivers on Windows VMs	120
7.2.5.2.1. Attaching VirtIO container disk to Windows VMs during installation	120
7.2.5.2.2. Attaching VirtIO container disk to an existing Windows VM	121
7.2.5.2.3. Installing VirtIO drivers during Windows installation	121
7.2.5.2.4. Installing VirtIO drivers from a SATA CD drive on an existing Windows VM	122
7.2.5.2.5. Installing VirtIO drivers from a container disk added as a SATA CD drive	122
7.2.5.3. Updating VirtIO drivers	123
7.2.5.3.1. Updating VirtIO drivers on a Windows VM	123
7.2.6. Cloning VMs	124
7.2.6.1. Cloning a VM by using the web console	124
7.2.6.2. Creating a VM from an existing snapshot by using the web console	124
7.2.6.3. Additional resources	125
7.2.7. Creating VMs by cloning PVCs	125
7.2.7.1. About cloning	125
7.2.7.1.1. CSI volume cloning	125

7.2.7.1.2. Smart cloning	126
7.2.7.1.3. Host-assisted cloning	126
7.2.7.2. Creating a VM from a PVC by using the web console	126
7.2.7.3. Creating a VM from a PVC by using the command line	127
7.2.7.3.1. Cloning a PVC to a data volume	127
7.2.7.3.2. Creating a VM from a cloned PVC by using a data volume template	129
7.3. CONNECTING TO VIRTUAL MACHINE CONSOLES	130
7.3.1. Connecting to the VNC console	130
7.3.1.1. Connecting to the VNC console by using the web console	130
7.3.1.2. Connecting to the VNC console by using virtctl	131
7.3.1.3. Generating a temporary token for the VNC console	131
7.3.1.3.1. Granting token generation permission for the VNC console by using the cluster role	133
7.3.2. Connecting to the serial console	133
7.3.2.1. Connecting to the serial console by using the web console	133
7.3.2.2. Connecting to the serial console by using virtctl	134
7.3.3. Connecting to the desktop viewer	134
7.3.3.1. Connecting to the desktop viewer by using the web console	134
7.4. CONFIGURING SSH ACCESS TO VIRTUAL MACHINES	135
7.4.1. Access configuration considerations	135
7.4.2. Using virtctl ssh	136
7.4.2.1. About static and dynamic SSH key management	136
Static SSH key management	136
Dynamic SSH key management	137
7.4.2.2. Static key management	137
7.4.2.2.1. Adding a key when creating a VM from a template	137
7.4.2.2.2. Adding a key when creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console	138
7.4.2.2.3. Adding a key when creating a VM by using the command line	140
7.4.2.3. Dynamic key management	142
7.4.2.3.1. Enabling dynamic key injection when creating a VM from a template	142
7.4.2.3.2. Enabling dynamic key injection when creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console	143
7.4.2.3.3. Enabling dynamic SSH key injection by using the web console	145
7.4.2.3.4. Enabling dynamic key injection by using the command line	146
7.4.2.4. Using the virtctl ssh command	148
7.4.3. Using the virtctl port-forward command	149
7.4.4. Using a service for SSH access	149
7.4.4.1. About services	150
7.4.4.2. Creating a service	150
7.4.4.2.1. Enabling load balancer service creation by using the web console	150
7.4.4.2.2. Creating a service by using the web console	150
7.4.4.2.3. Creating a service by using virtctl	151
7.4.4.2.4. Creating a service by using the command line	152
7.4.4.3. Connecting to a VM exposed by a service by using SSH	153
7.4.5. Using a secondary network for SSH access	153
7.4.5.1. Configuring a VM network interface by using the web console	154
7.4.5.2. Connecting to a VM attached to a secondary network by using SSH	154
7.5. EDITING VIRTUAL MACHINES	155
7.5.1. Editing a virtual machine by using the command line	155
7.5.2. Adding a disk to a virtual machine	156
7.5.2.1. Storage fields	156
Advanced storage settings	157
7.5.3. Mounting a Windows driver disk on a virtual machine	158
7.5.4. Adding a secret, config map, or service account to a virtual machine	158

Additional resources for config maps, secrets, and service accounts	159
7.6. EDITING BOOT ORDER	159
7.6.1. Adding items to a boot order list in the web console	159
7.6.2. Editing a boot order list in the web console	160
7.6.3. Editing a boot order list in the YAML configuration file	160
7.6.4. Removing items from a boot order list in the web console	161
7.7. DELETING VIRTUAL MACHINES	162
7.7.1. Deleting a virtual machine using the web console	162
7.7.2. Deleting a virtual machine by using the CLI	162
7.8. EXPORTING VIRTUAL MACHINES	162
7.8.1. Creating a VirtualMachineExport custom resource	163
7.8.2. Accessing exported virtual machine manifests	165
7.9. MANAGING VIRTUAL MACHINE INSTANCES	168
7.9.1. About virtual machine instances	168
7.9.2. Listing all virtual machine instances using the CLI	168
7.9.3. Listing standalone virtual machine instances using the web console	169
7.9.4. Editing a standalone virtual machine instance using the web console	169
7.9.5. Deleting a standalone virtual machine instance using the CLI	169
7.9.6. Deleting a standalone virtual machine instance using the web console	169
7.10. CONTROLLING VIRTUAL MACHINE STATES	170
7.10.1. Starting a virtual machine	170
7.10.2. Stopping a virtual machine	170
7.10.3. Restarting a virtual machine	171
7.10.4. Pausing a virtual machine	171
7.10.5. Unpausing a virtual machine	172
7.11. USING VIRTUAL TRUSTED PLATFORM MODULE DEVICES	172
7.11.1. About vTPM devices	172
7.11.2. Adding a vTPM device to a virtual machine	173
7.12. MANAGING VIRTUAL MACHINES WITH OPENSHIFT PIPELINES	174
7.12.1. Prerequisites	174
7.12.2. Virtual machine tasks supported by the SSP Operator	174
7.12.3. Windows EFI installer pipeline	175
7.12.3.1. Running the example pipelines using the web console	175
7.12.3.2. Running the example pipelines using the CLI	175
7.12.4. Additional resources	177
7.13. ADVANCED VIRTUAL MACHINE MANAGEMENT	177
7.13.1. Working with resource quotas for virtual machines	177
7.13.1.1. Setting resource quota limits for virtual machines	177
7.13.1.2. Additional resources	178
7.13.2. Specifying nodes for virtual machines	178
7.13.2.1. About node placement for virtual machines	178
7.13.2.2. Node placement examples	179
7.13.2.2.1. Example: VM node placement with nodeSelector	179
7.13.2.2.2. Example: VM node placement with pod affinity and pod anti-affinity	179
7.13.2.2.3. Example: VM node placement with node affinity	180
7.13.2.2.4. Example: VM node placement with tolerations	181
7.13.2.3. Additional resources	182
7.13.3. Activating kernel samepage merging (KSM)	182
7.13.3.1. Prerequisites	182
7.13.3.2. About using OpenShift Virtualization to activate KSM	182
7.13.3.2.1. Configuration methods	182
CR configuration	182
7.13.3.2.2. KSM node labels	183

7.13.3.3. Configuring KSM activation by using the web console	183
7.13.3.4. Configuring KSM activation by using the CLI	183
7.13.3.5. Additional resources	184
7.13.4. Configuring certificate rotation	185
7.13.4.1. Configuring certificate rotation	185
7.13.4.2. Troubleshooting certificate rotation parameters	185
7.13.5. Configuring the default CPU model	186
7.13.5.1. Configuring the default CPU model	186
7.13.6. Using UEFI mode for virtual machines	187
7.13.6.1. About UEFI mode for virtual machines	187
7.13.6.2. Booting virtual machines in UEFI mode	187
7.13.6.3. Enabling persistent EFI	188
7.13.6.4. Configuring VMs with persistent EFI	188
7.13.7. Configuring PXE booting for virtual machines	189
7.13.7.1. Prerequisites	189
7.13.7.2. PXE booting with a specified MAC address	189
7.13.7.3. OpenShift Virtualization networking glossary	192
7.13.8. Using huge pages with virtual machines	192
7.13.8.1. Prerequisites	192
7.13.8.2. What huge pages do	192
7.13.8.3. Configuring huge pages for virtual machines	193
7.13.9. Enabling dedicated resources for virtual machines	194
7.13.9.1. About dedicated resources	194
7.13.9.2. Prerequisites	194
7.13.9.3. Enabling dedicated resources for a virtual machine	194
7.13.10. Scheduling virtual machines	194
7.13.10.1. Policy attributes	194
7.13.10.2. Setting a policy attribute and CPU feature	195
7.13.10.3. Scheduling virtual machines with the supported CPU model	196
7.13.10.4. Scheduling virtual machines with the host model	196
7.13.10.5. Scheduling virtual machines with a custom scheduler	196
7.13.11. Configuring PCI passthrough	198
7.13.11.1. Preparing nodes for GPU passthrough	198
7.13.11.1.1. Preventing NVIDIA GPU operands from deploying on nodes	198
7.13.11.2. Preparing host devices for PCI passthrough	199
7.13.11.2.1. About preparing a host device for PCI passthrough	199
7.13.11.2.2. Adding kernel arguments to enable the IOMMU driver	199
7.13.11.2.3. Binding PCI devices to the VFIO driver	200
7.13.11.2.4. Exposing PCI host devices in the cluster using the CLI	202
7.13.11.2.5. Removing PCI host devices from the cluster using the CLI	204
7.13.11.3. Configuring virtual machines for PCI passthrough	205
7.13.11.3.1. Assigning a PCI device to a virtual machine	205
7.13.11.4. Additional resources	206
7.13.12. Configuring virtual GPUs	206
7.13.12.1. About using virtual GPUs with OpenShift Virtualization	206
7.13.12.2. Preparing hosts for mediated devices	207
7.13.12.2.1. Adding kernel arguments to enable the IOMMU driver	207
7.13.12.3. Configuring the NVIDIA GPU Operator	208
7.13.12.3.1. About using the NVIDIA GPU Operator	208
7.13.12.3.2. Options for configuring mediated devices	208
7.13.12.4. How vGPUs are assigned to nodes	210
7.13.12.5. Managing mediated devices	211
7.13.12.5.1. Creating and exposing mediated devices	211

7.13.12.5.2. About changing and removing mediated devices	213
7.13.12.5.3. Removing mediated devices from the cluster	214
7.13.12.6. Using mediated devices	214
7.13.12.6.1. Assigning a vGPU to a VM by using the CLI	214
7.13.12.6.2. Assigning a vGPU to a VM by using the web console	215
7.13.12.7. Additional resources	216
7.13.13. Enabling descheduler evictions on virtual machines	216
7.13.13.1. Descheduler profiles	216
7.13.13.2. Installing the descheduler	217
7.13.13.3. Enabling descheduler evictions on a virtual machine (VM)	218
7.13.13.4. Additional resources	219
7.13.14. About high availability for virtual machines	219
7.13.15. Virtual machine control plane tuning	219
7.13.15.1. Configuring a highBurst profile	219
7.13.16. Assigning compute resources	220
7.13.16.1. Overcommitting CPU resources	220
7.13.16.2. Setting the CPU allocation ratio	220
7.13.16.3. Additional resources	221
7.13.17. About multi-queue functionality	221
7.13.17.1. Known limitations	221
7.13.17.2. Enabling multi-queue functionality	221
7.14. VM DISKS	222
7.14.1. Hot-plugging VM disks	222
7.14.1.1. Hot plugging and hot unplugging a disk by using the web console	222
7.14.1.2. Hot plugging and hot unplugging a disk by using the command line	223
7.14.2. Expanding virtual machine disks	223
7.14.2.1. Expanding a VM disk PVC	224
7.14.2.2. Expanding available virtual storage by adding blank data volumes	224
7.14.3. Configuring shared volumes for virtual machines	225
7.14.3.1. Configuring disk sharing by using virtual machine disks	225
7.14.3.2. Configuring disk sharing by using LUN	227
7.14.3.2.1. Configuring disk sharing by using LUN and the web console	228
7.14.3.2.2. Configuring disk sharing by using LUN and the command line	229
7.14.3.3. Enabling the PersistentReservation feature gate	229
7.14.3.3.1. Enabling the PersistentReservation feature gate by using the web console	230
7.14.3.3.2. Enabling the PersistentReservation feature gate by using the command line	230
CHAPTER 8. NETWORKING	231
8.1. NETWORKING OVERVIEW	231
8.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization networking glossary	232
8.1.2. Using the default pod network	232
8.1.3. Configuring VM secondary network interfaces	232
8.1.3.1. Comparing Linux bridge CNI and OVN-Kubernetes localnet topology	234
8.1.4. Integrating with OpenShift Service Mesh	234
8.1.5. Managing MAC address pools	235
8.1.6. Configuring SSH access	235
8.2. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO THE DEFAULT POD NETWORK	235
8.2.1. Configuring masquerade mode from the command line	235
8.2.2. Configuring masquerade mode with dual-stack (IPv4 and IPv6)	236
8.2.3. About jumbo frames support	238
8.2.4. Additional resources	238
8.3. EXPOSING A VIRTUAL MACHINE BY USING A SERVICE	238
8.3.1. About services	238

8.3.2. Dual-stack support	239
8.3.3. Creating a service by using the command line	239
8.3.4. Additional resources	241
8.4. ACCESSING A VIRTUAL MACHINE BY USING ITS INTERNAL FQDN	241
8.4.1. Creating a headless service in a project by using the CLI	241
8.4.2. Mapping a virtual machine to a headless service by using the CLI	242
8.4.3. Connecting to a virtual machine by using its internal FQDN	243
8.4.4. Additional resources	244
8.5. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO A LINUX BRIDGE NETWORK	244
8.5.1. Creating a Linux bridge NNCP	244
8.5.2. Creating a Linux bridge NAD	245
8.5.2.1. Creating a Linux bridge NAD by using the web console	245
8.5.2.2. Creating a Linux bridge NAD by using the command line	246
8.5.3. Configuring a VM network interface	247
8.5.3.1. Configuring a VM network interface by using the web console	248
Networking fields	248
8.5.3.2. Configuring a VM network interface by using the command line	248
8.6. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO AN SR-IOV NETWORK	249
8.6.1. Configuring SR-IOV network devices	250
8.6.2. Configuring SR-IOV additional network	252
8.6.3. Connecting a virtual machine to an SR-IOV network by using the command line	254
8.6.4. Connecting a VM to an SR-IOV network by using the web console	254
8.6.5. Additional resources	255
8.7. USING DPDK WITH SR-IOV	255
8.7.1. Configuring a cluster for DPDK workloads	255
8.7.2. Configuring a project for DPDK workloads	258
8.7.3. Configuring a virtual machine for DPDK workloads	259
8.8. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO AN OVN-KUBERNETES SECONDARY NETWORK	261
8.8.1. Creating an OVN-Kubernetes NAD	262
8.8.1.1. Creating a NAD for layer 2 topology using the CLI	262
8.8.1.2. Creating a NAD for localnet topology using the CLI	263
8.8.1.3. Creating a NAD for layer 2 topology by using the web console	264
8.8.1.4. Creating a NAD for localnet topology using the web console	265
8.8.2. Attaching a virtual machine to the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network	265
8.8.2.1. Attaching a virtual machine to an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network using the CLI	265
8.8.3. Additional resources	266
8.9. HOT PLUGGING SECONDARY NETWORK INTERFACES	266
8.9.1. VirtIO limitations	267
8.9.2. Hot plugging a secondary network interface by using the CLI	267
8.9.3. Hot unplugging a secondary network interface by using the CLI	269
8.9.4. Additional resources	270
8.10. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO A SERVICE MESH	270
8.10.1. Adding a virtual machine to a service mesh	270
8.10.2. Additional resources	272
8.11. CONFIGURING A DEDICATED NETWORK FOR LIVE MIGRATION	272
8.11.1. Configuring a dedicated secondary network for live migration	273
8.11.2. Selecting a dedicated network by using the web console	274
8.11.3. Additional resources	275
8.12. CONFIGURING AND VIEWING IP ADDRESSES	275
8.12.1. Configuring IP addresses for virtual machines	275
8.12.1.1. Configuring an IP address when creating a virtual machine by using the command line	275
8.12.2. Viewing IP addresses of virtual machines	276
8.12.2.1. Viewing the IP address of a virtual machine by using the web console	276

8.12.2. Viewing the IP address of a virtual machine by using the command line	277
8.12.3. Additional resources	277
8.13. ACCESSING A VIRTUAL MACHINE BY USING ITS EXTERNAL FQDN	277
8.13.1. Configuring a DNS server for secondary networks	278
8.13.2. Connecting to a VM on a secondary network by using the cluster FQDN	279
8.13.3. Additional resources	280
8.14. MANAGING MAC ADDRESS POOLS FOR NETWORK INTERFACES	280
8.14.1. Managing KubeMacPool by using the command line	281
CHAPTER 9. STORAGE	282
9.1. STORAGE CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW	282
9.1.1. Storage	282
9.1.2. Containerized Data Importer	282
9.1.3. Data volumes	282
9.1.4. Boot source updates	283
9.2. CONFIGURING STORAGE PROFILES	283
9.2.1. Customizing the storage profile	283
9.2.1.1. Setting a default cloning strategy using a storage profile	285
9.3. MANAGING AUTOMATIC BOOT SOURCE UPDATES	286
9.3.1. Managing Red Hat boot source updates	286
9.3.1.1. Managing automatic updates for all system-defined boot sources	287
9.3.2. Managing custom boot source updates	287
9.3.2.1. Configuring a storage class for custom boot source updates	288
9.3.2.2. Enabling automatic updates for custom boot sources	289
9.3.2.3. Enabling volume snapshot boot sources	290
9.3.3. Disabling automatic updates for a single boot source	291
9.3.4. Verifying the status of a boot source	292
9.4. RESERVING PVC SPACE FOR FILE SYSTEM OVERHEAD	294
9.4.1. Overriding the default file system overhead value	294
9.5. CONFIGURING LOCAL STORAGE BY USING THE HOSTPATH PROVISIONER	295
9.5.1. Creating a hostpath provisioner with a basic storage pool	295
9.5.1.1. About creating storage classes	296
9.5.1.2. Creating a storage class for the CSI driver with the storagePools stanza	296
9.5.2. About storage pools created with PVC templates	297
9.5.2.1. Creating a storage pool with a PVC template	298
9.6. ENABLING USER PERMISSIONS TO CLONE DATA VOLUMES ACROSS NAMESPACES	299
9.6.1. Creating RBAC resources for cloning data volumes	299
9.7. CONFIGURING CDI TO OVERRIDE CPU AND MEMORY QUOTAS	300
9.7.1. About CPU and memory quotas in a namespace	300
9.7.2. Overriding CPU and memory defaults	301
9.7.3. Additional resources	301
9.8. PREPARING CDI SCRATCH SPACE	301
9.8.1. About scratch space	301
Manual provisioning	302
9.8.2. CDI operations that require scratch space	302
9.8.3. Defining a storage class	302
9.8.4. CDI supported operations matrix	303
9.8.5. Additional resources	303
9.9. USING PREALLOCATION FOR DATA VOLUMES	304
9.9.1. About preallocation	304
9.9.2. Enabling preallocation for a data volume	304
9.10. MANAGING DATA VOLUME ANNOTATIONS	305
9.10.1. Example: Data volume annotations	305

CHAPTER 10. LIVE MIGRATION	306
10.1. ABOUT LIVE MIGRATION	306
10.1.1. Live migration requirements	306
10.1.2. Common live migration tasks	306
10.1.3. Additional resources	306
10.2. CONFIGURING LIVE MIGRATION	307
10.2.1. Configuring live migration limits and timeouts	307
10.2.2. Live migration policies	308
10.2.2.1. Creating a live migration policy by using the command line	308
10.2.3. Additional resources	309
10.3. INITIATING AND CANCELING LIVE MIGRATION	309
10.3.1. Initiating live migration	310
10.3.1.1. Initiating live migration by using the web console	310
10.3.1.2. Initiating live migration by using the command line	310
10.3.2. Canceling live migration	311
10.3.2.1. Canceling live migration by using the web console	311
10.3.2.2. Canceling live migration by using the command line	311
CHAPTER 11. NODES	312
11.1. NODE MAINTENANCE	312
11.1.1. Eviction strategies	312
11.1.1.1. Configuring a VM eviction strategy using the command line	313
11.1.1.2. Configuring a cluster eviction strategy by using the command line	314
11.1.2. Run strategies	315
11.1.2.1. Run strategies	315
11.1.2.2. Configuring a VM run strategy by using the command line	316
11.1.3. Maintaining bare metal nodes	316
11.1.4. Additional resources	317
11.2. MANAGING NODE LABELING FOR OBSOLETE CPU MODELS	317
11.2.1. About node labeling for obsolete CPU models	317
11.2.2. About node labeling for CPU features	317
11.2.3. Configuring obsolete CPU models	320
11.3. PREVENTING NODE RECONCILIATION	320
11.3.1. Using skip-node annotation	320
11.3.2. Additional resources	321
11.4. DELETING A FAILED NODE TO TRIGGER VIRTUAL MACHINE FAILOVER	321
11.4.1. Prerequisites	321
11.4.2. Deleting nodes from a bare metal cluster	321
11.4.3. Verifying virtual machine failover	322
11.4.3.1. Listing all virtual machine instances using the CLI	322
CHAPTER 12. MONITORING	323
12.1. MONITORING OVERVIEW	323
12.2. OPENSOURCE VIRTUALIZATION CLUSTER CHECKUP FRAMEWORK	323
12.2.1. About the OpenShift Virtualization cluster checkup framework	324
12.2.2. Running checkups by using the web console	324
12.2.2.1. Running a latency checkup by using the web console	324
12.2.2.2. Running a storage checkup by using the web console	325
12.2.3. Running checkups by using the command line	325
12.2.3.1. Running a latency checkup by using the command line	325
12.2.3.2. Running a storage checkup by using the command line	330
12.2.3.3. Running a DPDK checkup by using the command line	334
12.2.3.3.1. DPDK checkup config map parameters	338

12.2.3.3.2. Building a container disk image for RHEL virtual machines	339
12.2.4. Additional resources	342
12.3. PROMETHEUS QUERIES FOR VIRTUAL RESOURCES	342
12.3.1. Prerequisites	342
12.3.2. Querying metrics	342
12.3.2.1. Querying metrics for all projects as a cluster administrator	342
12.3.2.2. Querying metrics for user-defined projects as a developer	344
12.3.3. Virtualization metrics	345
12.3.3.1. vCPU metrics	345
12.3.3.2. Network metrics	346
12.3.3.3. Storage metrics	346
12.3.3.3.1. Storage-related traffic	346
12.3.3.3.2. Storage snapshot data	347
12.3.3.3.3. I/O performance	347
12.3.3.4. Guest memory swapping metrics	348
12.3.3.5. Live migration metrics	348
12.3.4. Additional resources	349
12.4. EXPOSING CUSTOM METRICS FOR VIRTUAL MACHINES	349
12.4.1. Configuring the node exporter service	349
12.4.2. Configuring a virtual machine with the node exporter service	350
12.4.3. Creating a custom monitoring label for virtual machines	351
12.4.3.1. Querying the node-exporter service for metrics	352
12.4.4. Creating a ServiceMonitor resource for the node exporter service	353
12.4.4.1. Accessing the node exporter service outside the cluster	354
12.4.5. Additional resources	355
12.5. EXPOSING DOWNWARD METRICS FOR VIRTUAL MACHINES	355
12.5.1. Enabling or disabling the downwardMetrics feature gate	355
12.5.1.1. Enabling or disabling the downward metrics feature gate in a YAML file	355
12.5.1.2. Enabling or disabling the downward metrics feature gate from the command line	356
12.5.2. Configuring a downward metrics device	357
12.5.3. Viewing downward metrics	358
12.5.3.1. Viewing downward metrics by using the command line	358
12.5.3.2. Viewing downward metrics by using the vm-dump-metrics tool	358
12.6. VIRTUAL MACHINE HEALTH CHECKS	359
12.6.1. About readiness and liveness probes	359
12.6.1.1. Defining an HTTP readiness probe	360
12.6.1.2. Defining a TCP readiness probe	361
12.6.1.3. Defining an HTTP liveness probe	362
12.6.2. Defining a watchdog	363
12.6.2.1. Configuring a watchdog device for the virtual machine	363
12.6.2.2. Installing the watchdog agent on the guest	365
12.6.3. Defining a guest agent ping probe	365
12.6.4. Additional resources	366
12.7. OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION RUNBOOKS	366
12.7.1. CDIDataImportCronOutdated	367
12.7.2. CDIDataVolumeUnusualRestartCount	367
12.7.3. CDIDefaultStorageClassDegraded	367
12.7.4. CDIMultipleDefaultVirtStorageClasses	367
12.7.5. CDINoDefaultStorageClass	367
12.7.6. CDINotReady	367
12.7.7. CDIOperatorDown	367
12.7.8. CDIStorageProfilesIncomplete	367
12.7.9. CnaoDown	367

12.7.10. CnaoNMstateMigration	367
12.7.11. HCOInstallationIncomplete	367
12.7.12. HPPNotReady	367
12.7.13. HPPOperatorDown	367
12.7.14. HPPSharingPoolPathWithOS	368
12.7.15. KubemacpoolDown	368
12.7.16. KubeMacPoolDuplicateMacsFound	368
12.7.17. KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedCPU	368
12.7.18. KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedMemory	368
12.7.19. KubeVirtCRModified	368
12.7.20. KubeVirtDeprecatedAPIRequested	368
12.7.21. KubeVirtNoAvailableNodesToRunVMs	368
12.7.22. KubevirtVmHighMemoryUsage	368
12.7.23. KubeVirtVMIExcessiveMigrations	368
12.7.24. LowKVMNodesCount	368
12.7.25. LowReadyVirtControllersCount	368
12.7.26. LowReadyVirtOperatorsCount	368
12.7.27. LowVirtAPICount	369
12.7.28. LowVirtControllersCount	369
12.7.29. LowVirtOperatorCount	369
12.7.30. NetworkAddonsConfigNotReady	369
12.7.31. NoLeadingVirtOperator	369
12.7.32. NoReadyVirtController	369
12.7.33. NoReadyVirtOperator	369
12.7.34. OrphanedVirtualMachineInstances	369
12.7.35. OutdatedVirtualMachineInstanceWorkloads	369
12.7.36. SingleStackIPv6Unsupported	369
12.7.37. SSPCommonTemplatesModificationReverted	369
12.7.38. SSPDown	369
12.7.39. SSPFailingToReconcile	369
12.7.40. SSPHighRateRejectedVms	370
12.7.41. SSPTemplateValidatorDown	370
12.7.42. UnsupportedHCOModification	370
12.7.43. VirtAPIDown	370
12.7.44. VirtApiRESTErrorsBurst	370
12.7.45. VirtApiRESTErrorsHigh	370
12.7.46. VirtControllerDown	370
12.7.47. VirtControllerRESTErrorsBurst	370
12.7.48. VirtControllerRESTErrorsHigh	370
12.7.49. VirtHandlerDaemonSetRolloutFailing	370
12.7.50. VirtHandlerRESTErrorsBurst	370
12.7.51. VirtHandlerRESTErrorsHigh	370
12.7.52. VirtOperatorDown	370
12.7.53. VirtOperatorRESTErrorsBurst	371
12.7.54. VirtOperatorRESTErrorsHigh	371
12.7.55. VirtualMachineCRCErrors	371
12.7.56. VMCannotBeEvicted	371
12.7.57. VMStorageClassWarning	371
CHAPTER 13. SUPPORT	372
13.1. SUPPORT OVERVIEW	372
13.1.1. Web console	372
13.1.2. Collecting data for Red Hat Support	372

13.1.3. Troubleshooting	373
13.2. COLLECTING DATA FOR RED HAT SUPPORT	373
13.2.1. Collecting data about your environment	373
13.2.2. Collecting data about virtual machines	374
13.2.3. Using the must-gather tool for OpenShift Virtualization	374
13.2.3.1. must-gather tool options	375
13.2.3.1.1. Parameters	375
13.2.3.1.2. Usage and examples	376
13.3. TROUBLESHOOTING	377
13.3.1. Events	377
13.3.2. Pod logs	378
13.3.2.1. Configuring OpenShift Virtualization pod log verbosity	378
13.3.2.2. Viewing virt-launcher pod logs with the web console	378
13.3.2.3. Viewing OpenShift Virtualization pod logs with the CLI	379
13.3.3. Guest system logs	380
13.3.3.1. Enabling default access to VM guest system logs with the web console	380
13.3.3.2. Enabling default access to VM guest system logs with the CLI	380
13.3.3.3. Setting guest system log access for a single VM with the web console	381
13.3.3.4. Setting guest system log access for a single VM with the CLI	381
13.3.3.5. Viewing guest system logs with the web console	382
13.3.3.6. Viewing guest system logs with the CLI	382
13.3.4. Log aggregation	382
13.3.4.1. Viewing aggregated OpenShift Virtualization logs with the LokiStack	382
13.3.4.2. OpenShift Virtualization LogQL queries	383
13.3.5. Common error messages	385
13.3.6. Troubleshooting data volumes	385
13.3.6.1. About data volume conditions and events	385
13.3.6.2. Analyzing data volume conditions and events	386
CHAPTER 14. BACKUP AND RESTORE	388
14.1. BACKUP AND RESTORE BY USING VM SNAPSHOTS	388
14.1.1. About snapshots	388
14.1.2. Creating snapshots	389
14.1.2.1. Creating a snapshot by using the web console	389
14.1.2.2. Creating a snapshot by using the command line	390
14.1.3. Verifying online snapshots by using snapshot indications	392
14.1.4. Restoring virtual machines from snapshots	393
14.1.4.1. Restoring a VM from a snapshot by using the web console	393
14.1.4.2. Restoring a VM from a snapshot by using the command line	393
14.1.5. Deleting snapshots	395
14.1.5.1. Deleting a snapshot by using the web console	395
14.1.5.2. Deleting a virtual machine snapshot in the CLI	395
14.1.6. Additional resources	396
14.2. BACKING UP AND RESTORING VIRTUAL MACHINES	396
14.2.1. Installing and configuring OADP with OpenShift Virtualization	397
14.2.2. Installing the Data Protection Application 1.3	397
14.3. DISASTER RECOVERY	400
14.3.1. About disaster recovery methods	401
14.3.1.1. Metro-DR	401
14.3.1.2. Regional-DR	401
14.3.2. Defining applications for disaster recovery	401
14.3.2.1. Best practices when defining an RHACM-managed VM	401
Use a PVC and populator to define storage for the VM	401

Use the import method when choosing a population source for your VM disk	401
Use pullMethod: node	402
14.3.2.2. Best practices when defining an RHACM-discovered virtual machine	402
Protect the VM when using MTV, the OpenShift Virtualization web console, or a custom VM	402
Include more than the VirtualMachine object in the VM	402
Include the VM as part of a larger logical application	402
14.3.3. VM behavior during disaster recovery scenarios	402
Relocate	402
Failover	402
14.3.4. Metro-DR for Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation	403

CHAPTER 1. ABOUT

1.1. ABOUT OPENSIFT VIRTUALIZATION

Learn about OpenShift Virtualization's capabilities and support scope.

1.1.1. What you can do with OpenShift Virtualization

OpenShift Virtualization is an add-on to OpenShift Container Platform that allows you to run and manage virtual machine workloads alongside container workloads.

OpenShift Virtualization adds new objects into your OpenShift Container Platform cluster by using Kubernetes custom resources to enable virtualization tasks. These tasks include:

- Creating and managing Linux and Windows virtual machines (VMs)
- Running pod and VM workloads alongside each other in a cluster
- Connecting to virtual machines through a variety of consoles and CLI tools
- Importing and cloning existing virtual machines
- Managing network interface controllers and storage disks attached to virtual machines
- Live migrating virtual machines between nodes

An enhanced web console provides a graphical portal to manage these virtualized resources alongside the OpenShift Container Platform cluster containers and infrastructure.

OpenShift Virtualization is designed and tested to work well with Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation features.



IMPORTANT

When you deploy OpenShift Virtualization with OpenShift Data Foundation, you must create a dedicated storage class for Windows virtual machine disks. See [Optimizing ODF PersistentVolumes for Windows VMs](#) for details.

You can use OpenShift Virtualization with [OVN-Kubernetes](#), [OpenShift SDN](#), or one of the other certified network plugins listed in [Certified OpenShift CNI Plug-ins](#).

You can check your OpenShift Virtualization cluster for compliance issues by installing the [Compliance Operator](#) and running a scan with the [ocp4-moderate](#) and [ocp4-moderate-node](#) profiles. The Compliance Operator uses OpenSCAP, a [NIST-certified tool](#), to scan and enforce security policies.

1.1.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization supported cluster version

OpenShift Virtualization 4.16 is supported for use on OpenShift Container Platform 4.16 clusters. To use the latest z-stream release of OpenShift Virtualization, you must first upgrade to the latest version of OpenShift Container Platform.

1.1.2. About volume and access modes for virtual machine disks

If you use the storage API with known storage providers, the volume and access modes are selected automatically. However, if you use a storage class that does not have a storage profile, you must configure the volume and access mode.

For best results, use the **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode and the **Block** volume mode. This is important for the following reasons:

- **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode is required for live migration.
- The **Block** volume mode performs significantly better than the **Filesystem** volume mode. This is because the **Filesystem** volume mode uses more storage layers, including a file system layer and a disk image file. These layers are not necessary for VM disk storage.
For example, if you use Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation, Ceph RBD volumes are preferable to CephFS volumes.



IMPORTANT

You cannot live migrate virtual machines with the following configurations:

- Storage volume with **ReadWriteOnce** (RWO) access mode
- Passthrough features such as GPUs

Set the **evictionStrategy** field to **None** for these virtual machines. The **None** strategy powers down VMs during node reboots.

1.1.3. Single-node OpenShift differences

You can install OpenShift Virtualization on single-node OpenShift.

However, you should be aware that Single-node OpenShift does not support the following features:

- High availability
- Pod disruption
- Live migration
- Virtual machines or templates that have an eviction strategy configured

1.1.4. Additional resources

- [Glossary of common terms for OpenShift Container Platform storage](#)
- [About single-node OpenShift](#)
- [Assisted installer](#)
- [Pod disruption budgets](#)
- [About live migration](#)
- [Eviction strategies](#)
- [Tuning & Scaling Guide](#)
- [Supported limits for OpenShift Virtualization 4.x](#)

1.2. SECURITY POLICIES

Learn about OpenShift Virtualization security and authorization.

Key points

- OpenShift Virtualization adheres to the **restricted Kubernetes pod security standards** profile, which aims to enforce the current best practices for pod security.
- Virtual machine (VM) workloads run as unprivileged pods.
- [Security context constraints](#) (SCCs) are defined for the **kubevirt-controller** service account.
- TLS certificates for OpenShift Virtualization components are renewed and rotated automatically.

1.2.1. About workload security

By default, virtual machine (VM) workloads do not run with root privileges in OpenShift Virtualization, and there are no supported OpenShift Virtualization features that require root privileges.

For each VM, a **virt-launcher** pod runs an instance of **libvirt** in *session mode* to manage the VM process. In session mode, the **libvirt** daemon runs as a non-root user account and only permits connections from clients that are running under the same user identifier (UID). Therefore, VMs run as unprivileged pods, adhering to the security principle of least privilege.

1.2.2. TLS certificates

TLS certificates for OpenShift Virtualization components are renewed and rotated automatically. You are not required to refresh them manually.

Automatic renewal schedules

TLS certificates are automatically deleted and replaced according to the following schedule:

- KubeVirt certificates are renewed daily.
- Containerized Data Importer controller (CDI) certificates are renewed every 15 days.
- MAC pool certificates are renewed every year.

Automatic TLS certificate rotation does not disrupt any operations. For example, the following operations continue to function without any disruption:

- Migrations
- Image uploads
- VNC and console connections

1.2.3. Authorization

OpenShift Virtualization uses [role-based access control](#) (RBAC) to define permissions for human users and service accounts. The permissions defined for service accounts control the actions that OpenShift Virtualization components can perform.

You can also use RBAC roles to manage user access to virtualization features. For example, an administrator can create an RBAC role that provides the permissions required to launch a virtual machine. The administrator can then restrict access by binding the role to specific users.

1.2.3.1. Default cluster roles for OpenShift Virtualization

By using cluster role aggregation, OpenShift Virtualization extends the default OpenShift Container Platform cluster roles to include permissions for accessing virtualization objects.

Table 1.1. OpenShift Virtualization cluster roles

Default cluster role	OpenShift Virtualization cluster role	OpenShift Virtualization cluster role description
view	kubevirt.io:view	A user that can view all OpenShift Virtualization resources in the cluster but cannot create, delete, modify, or access them. For example, the user can see that a virtual machine (VM) is running but cannot shut it down or gain access to its console.
edit	kubevirt.io:edit	A user that can modify all OpenShift Virtualization resources in the cluster. For example, the user can create VMs, access VM consoles, and delete VMs.
admin	kubevirt.io:admin	A user that has full permissions to all OpenShift Virtualization resources, including the ability to delete collections of resources. The user can also view and modify the OpenShift Virtualization runtime configuration, which is located in the HyperConverged custom resource in the openshift-cnv namespace.

1.2.3.2. RBAC roles for storage features in OpenShift Virtualization

The following permissions are granted to the Containerized Data Importer (CDI), including the **cdi-operator** and **cdi-controller** service accounts.

1.2.3.2.1. Cluster-wide RBAC roles

Table 1.2. Aggregated cluster roles for the `cdi.kubevirt.io` API group

CDI cluster role	Resources	Verbs
cdi.kubevirt.io:admin	datavolumes,uploadtokenrequests	* (all)
	datavolumes/source	create
cdi.kubevirt.io:edit	datavolumes,uploadtokenrequests	*
	datavolumes/source	create

CDI cluster role	Resources	Verbs
<code>cdi.kubevirt.io:view</code>	<code>cdiconfigs, dataimportcrons, datasources, datavolumes, objecttransfers, storageprofiles, volumeimportsources, volumeuploadsources, volumeclonesources</code>	<code>get, list, watch</code>
	<code>datavolumes/source</code>	<code>create</code>
<code>cdi.kubevirt.io:config-reader</code>	<code>cdiconfigs, storageprofiles</code>	<code>get, list, watch</code>

Table 1.3. Cluster-wide roles for thecdi-operator service account

API group	Resources	Verbs
<code>rbac.authorization.k8s.io</code>	<code>clusterrolebindings, clusterroles</code>	<code>get, list, watch, create, update, delete</code>
<code>security.openshift.io</code>	<code>securitycontextconstraints</code>	<code>get, list, watch, update, create</code>
<code>apiextensions.k8s.io</code>	<code>customresourcedefinitions, customresourcedefinitions/status</code>	<code>get, list, watch, create, update, delete</code>
<code>cdi.kubevirt.io</code>	*	*
<code>upload.cdi.kubevirt.io</code>	*	*
<code>admissionregistration.k8s.io</code>	<code>validatingwebhookconfigurations, mutatingwebhookconfigurations</code>	<code>create, list, watch</code>
<code>admissionregistration.k8s.io</code>	<code>validatingwebhookconfigurations</code> Allow list: <code>cdi-api-dataimportcron-validate, cdi-api-populator-validate, cdi-api-datavolume-validate, cdi-api-validate, objecttransfer-api-validate</code>	<code>get, update, delete</code>

API group	Resources	Verbs
admissionregistration.k8s.io	mutatingwebhookconfigurations Allow list: cdi-api-datavolume-mutate	get, update, delete
apiregistration.k8s.io	apiservices	get, list, watch, create, update, delete

Table 1.4. Cluster-wide roles for the **cdi-controller** service account

API group	Resources	Verbs
"" (core)	events	create, patch
"" (core)	persistentvolumeclaims	get, list, watch, create, update, delete, deletecollection, patch
"" (core)	persistentvolumes	get, list, watch, update
"" (core)	persistentvolumeclaims/finalizers, pods/finalizers	update
"" (core)	pods, services	get, list, watch, create, delete
"" (core)	configmaps	get, create
storage.k8s.io	storageclasses, csidrivers	get, list, watch
config.openshift.io	proxies	get, list, watch
cdi.kubevirt.io	*	*
snapshot.storage.k8s.io	volumesnapshots, volumesnapshotclasses, volumesnapshotcontents	get, list, watch, create, delete
snapshot.storage.k8s.io	volumesnapshots	update, deletecollection
apiextensions.k8s.io	customresourcedefinitions	get, list, watch

API group	Resources	Verbs
scheduling.k8s.io	priorityclasses	get, list, watch
image.openshift.io	imagestreams	get, list, watch
"" (core)	secrets	create
kubevirt.io	virtualmachines/finalizers	update

1.2.3.2.2. Namespaced RBAC roles

Table 1.5. Namespaced roles for thecdi-operator service account

API group	Resources	Verbs
rbac.authorization.k8s.io	rolebindings, roles	get, list, watch, create, update, delete
"" (core)	serviceaccounts, configmaps, events, secrets, services	get, list, watch, create, update, patch, delete
apps	deployments, deployments/finalizers	get, list, watch, create, update, delete
route.openshift.io	routes, routes/custom-host	get, list, watch, create, update
config.openshift.io	proxies	get, list, watch
monitoring.coreos.com	servicemonitors, prometheusrules	get, list, watch, create, delete, update, patch
coordination.k8s.io	leases	get, create, update

Table 1.6. Namespaced roles for thecdi-controller service account

API group	Resources	Verbs
"" (core)	configmaps	get, list, watch, create, update, delete
"" (core)	secrets	get, list, watch
batch	cronjobs	get, list, watch, create, update, delete

API group	Resources	Verbs
batch	jobs	create, delete, list, watch
coordination.k8s.io	leases	get, create, update
networking.k8s.io	ingresses	get, list, watch
route.openshift.io	routes	get, list, watch

1.2.3.3. Additional SCCs and permissions for the **kubevirt-controller** service account

Security context constraints (SCCs) control permissions for pods. These permissions include actions that a pod, a collection of containers, can perform and what resources it can access. You can use SCCs to define a set of conditions that a pod must run with to be accepted into the system.

The **virt-controller** is a cluster controller that creates the **virt-launcher** pods for virtual machines in the cluster. These pods are granted permissions by the **kubevirt-controller** service account.

The **kubevirt-controller** service account is granted additional SCCs and Linux capabilities so that it can create **virt-launcher** pods with the appropriate permissions. These extended permissions allow virtual machines to use OpenShift Virtualization features that are beyond the scope of typical pods.

The **kubevirt-controller** service account is granted the following SCCs:

- **scc.AllowHostDirVolumePlugin = true**
This allows virtual machines to use the hostpath volume plugin.
- **scc.AllowPrivilegedContainer = false**
This ensures the virt-launcher pod is not run as a privileged container.
- **scc.AllowedCapabilities = []corev1.Capability{"SYS_NICE", "NET_BIND_SERVICE"}**
 - **SYS_NICE** allows setting the CPU affinity.
 - **NET_BIND_SERVICE** allows DHCP and Slirp operations.

Viewing the SCC and RBAC definitions for the **kubevirt-controller**

You can view the **SecurityContextConstraints** definition for the **kubevirt-controller** by using the **oc** tool:

```
$ oc get scc kubevirt-controller -o yaml
```

You can view the RBAC definition for the **kubevirt-controller** clusterrole by using the **oc** tool:

```
$ oc get clusterrole kubevirt-controller -o yaml
```

1.2.4. Additional resources

- [Managing security context constraints](#)
- [Using RBAC to define and apply permissions](#)

- [Creating a cluster role](#)
- [Cluster role binding commands](#)
- [Enabling user permissions to clone data volumes across namespaces](#)

1.3. OPENSOURCE VIRTUALIZATION ARCHITECTURE

The Operator Lifecycle Manager (OLM) deploys operator pods for each component of OpenShift Virtualization:

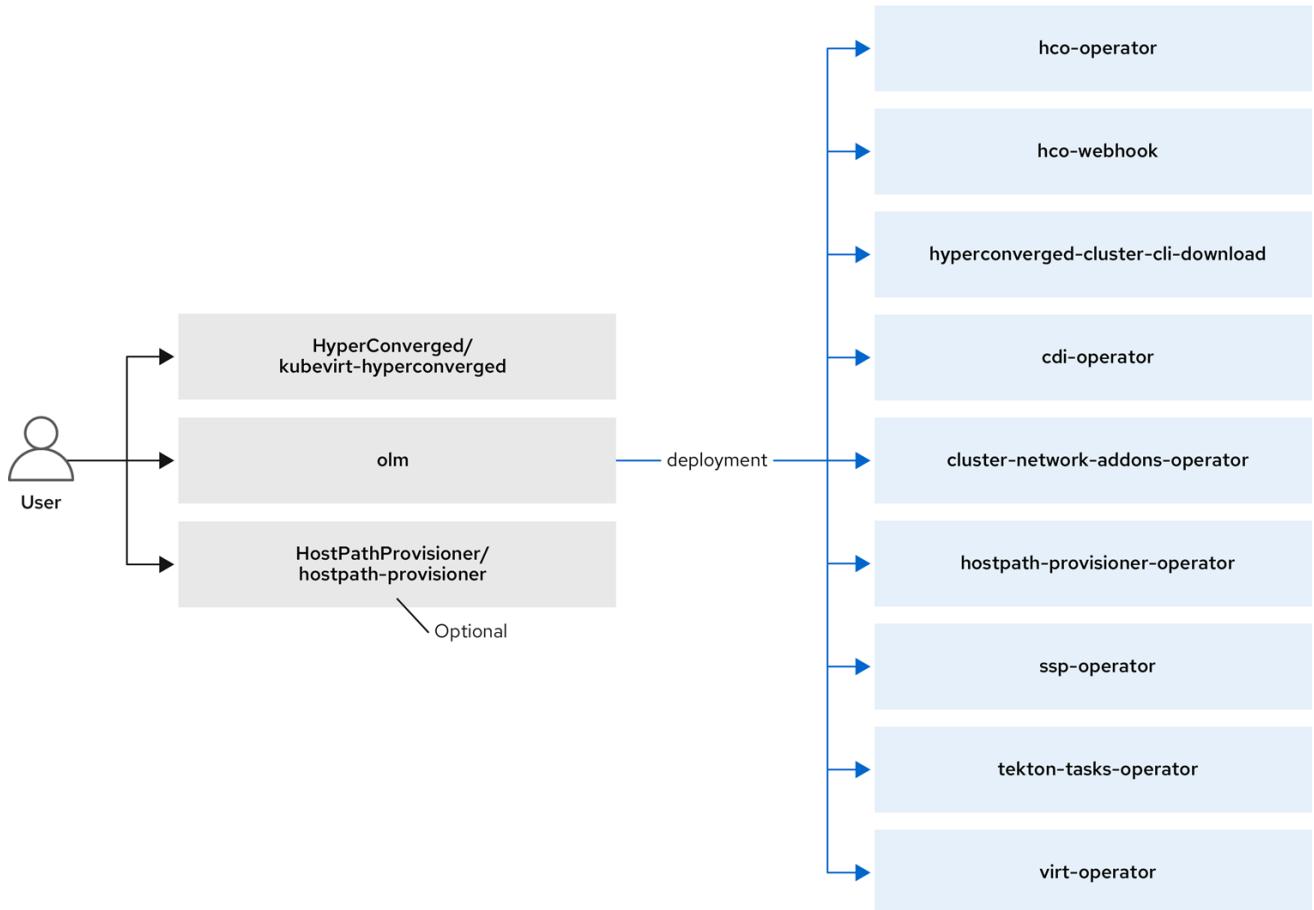
- Compute: **virt-operator**
- Storage: **cdi-operator**
- Network: **cluster-network-addons-operator**
- Scaling: **ssp-operator**

OLM also deploys the **hyperconverged-cluster-operator** pod, which is responsible for the deployment, configuration, and life cycle of other components, and several helper pods: **hco-webhook**, and **hyperconverged-cluster-cli-download**.

After all operator pods are successfully deployed, you should create the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). The configurations set in the **HyperConverged** CR serve as the single source of truth and the entrypoint for OpenShift Virtualization, and guide the behavior of the CRs.

The **HyperConverged** CR creates corresponding CRs for the operators of all other components within its reconciliation loop. Each operator then creates resources such as daemon sets, config maps, and additional components for the OpenShift Virtualization control plane. For example, when the HyperConverged Operator (HCO) creates the **KubeVirt** CR, the OpenShift Virtualization Operator reconciles it and creates additional resources such as **virt-controller**, **virt-handler**, and **virt-api**.

The OLM deploys the Hostpath Provisioner (HPP) Operator, but it is not functional until you create a **hostpath-provisioner** CR.

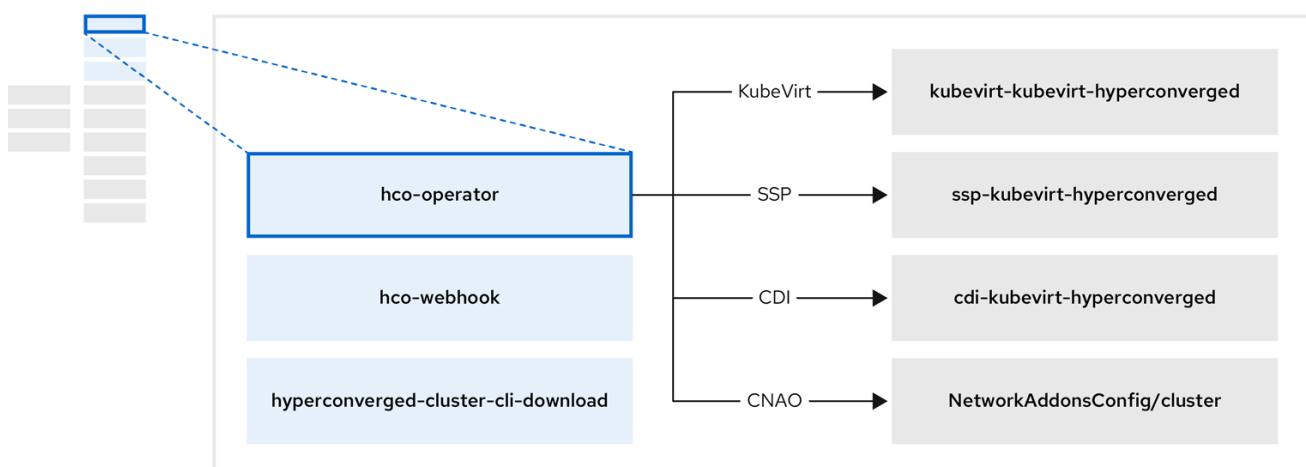


220_OpenShift_0722

- [Virtctl client commands](#)

1.3.1. About the HyperConverged Operator (HCO)

The HCO, **hco-operator**, provides a single entry point for deploying and managing OpenShift Virtualization and several helper operators with opinionated defaults. It also creates custom resources (CRs) for those operators.



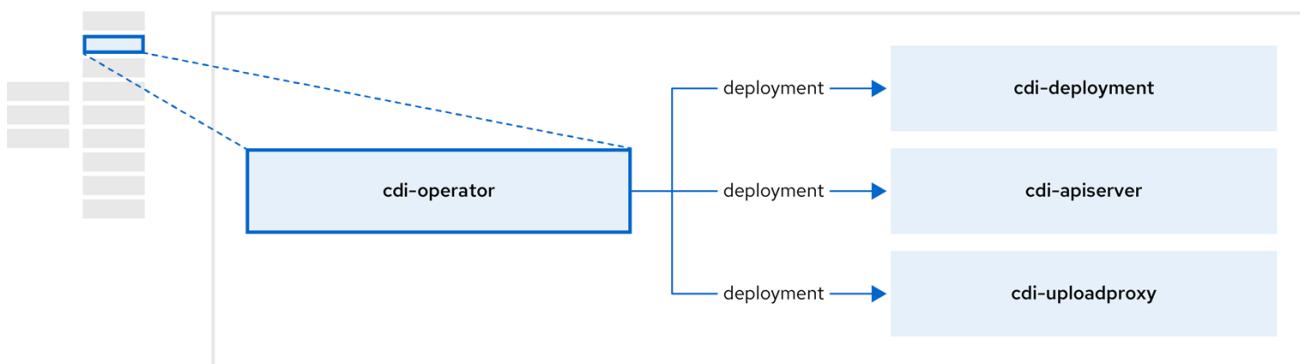
220_OpenShift_0722

Table 1.7. HyperConverged Operator components

Component	Description
deployment/hco-webhook	Validates the HyperConverged custom resource contents.
deployment/hyperconverged-cluster-cli-download	Provides the virtctl tool binaries to the cluster so that you can download them directly from the cluster.
KubeVirt/kubevirt-kubevirt-hyperconverged	Contains all operators, CRs, and objects needed by OpenShift Virtualization.
SSP/ssp-kubevirt-hyperconverged	A Scheduling, Scale, and Performance (SSP) CR. This is automatically created by the HCO.
CDI/cdi-kubevirt-hyperconverged	A Containerized Data Importer (CDI) CR. This is automatically created by the HCO.
NetworkAddonsConfig/cluster	A CR that instructs and is managed by the cluster-network-addons-operator .

1.3.2. About the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) Operator

The CDI Operator, **cdi-operator**, manages CDI and its related resources, which imports a virtual machine (VM) image into a persistent volume claim (PVC) by using a data volume.



220_OpenShift_0722

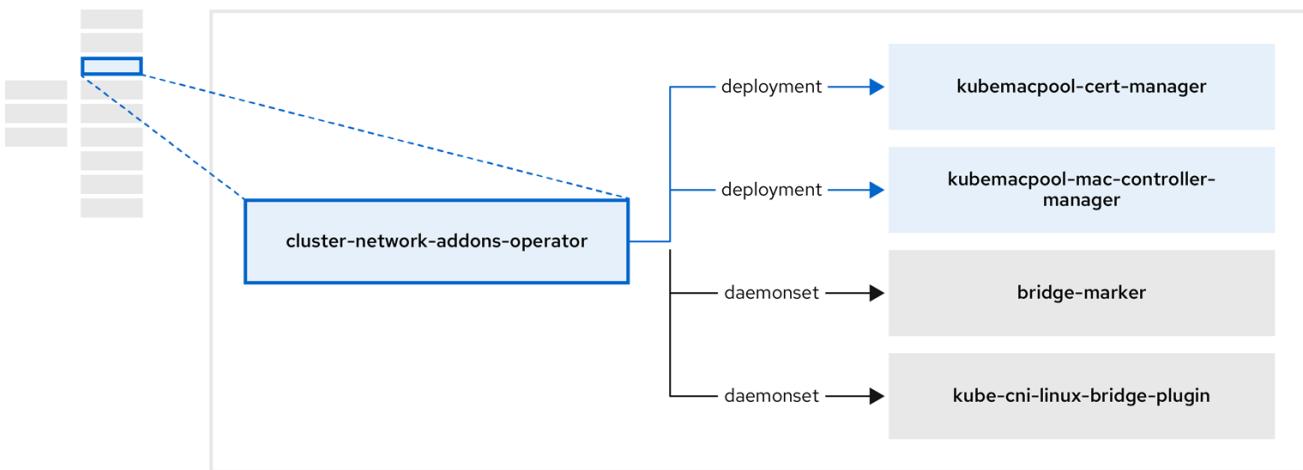
Table 1.8. CDI Operator components

Component	Description
deployment/cdi-apiserver	Manages the authorization to upload VM disks into PVCs by issuing secure upload tokens.
deployment/cdi-uploadproxy	Directs external disk upload traffic to the appropriate upload server pod so that it can be written to the correct PVC. Requires a valid upload token.

Component	Description
pod/cdi-importer	Helper pod that imports a virtual machine image into a PVC when creating a data volume.

1.3.3. About the Cluster Network Addons Operator

The Cluster Network Addons Operator, **cluster-network-addons-operator**, deploys networking components on a cluster and manages the related resources for extended network functionality.



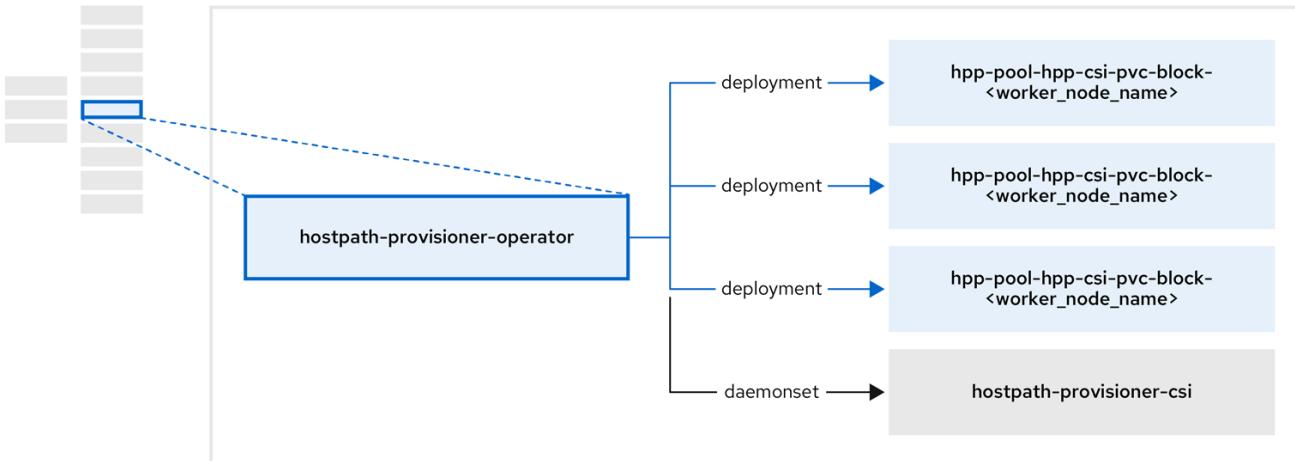
220_OpenShift_0722

Table 1.9. Cluster Network Addons Operator components

Component	Description
deployment/kubemacpool-cert-manager	Manages TLS certificates of Kubemacpool's webhooks.
deployment/kubemacpool-mac-controller-manager	Provides a MAC address pooling service for virtual machine (VM) network interface cards (NICs).
daemonset/bridge-marker	Marks network bridges available on nodes as node resources.
daemonset/kube-cni-linux-bridge-plugin	Installs Container Network Interface (CNI) plugins on cluster nodes, enabling the attachment of VMs to Linux bridges through network attachment definitions.

1.3.4. About the Hostpath Provisioner (HPP) Operator

The HPP Operator, **hostpath-provisioner-operator**, deploys and manages the multi-node HPP and related resources.



220_OpenShift_0622

Table 1.10. HPP Operator components

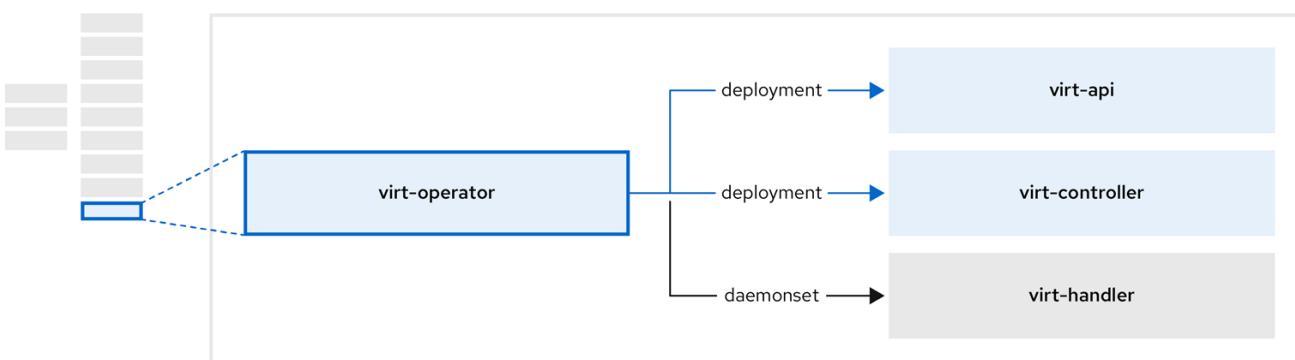
Component	Description
deployment/hpp-pool-hpp-csi-pvc-block-<worker_node_name>	Provides a worker for each node where the HPP is designated to run. The pods mount the specified backing storage on the node.
daemonset/hostpath-provisioner-csi	Implements the Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver interface of the HPP.
daemonset/hostpath-provisioner	Implements the legacy driver interface of the HPP.

1.3.5. About the Scheduling, Scale, and Performance (SSP) Operator

The SSP Operator, **ssp-operator**, deploys the common templates, the related default boot sources, the pipeline tasks, and the template validator.

1.3.6. About the OpenShift Virtualization Operator

The OpenShift Virtualization Operator, **virt-operator**, deploys, upgrades, and manages OpenShift Virtualization without disrupting current virtual machine (VM) workloads. In addition, the OpenShift Virtualization Operator deploys the common instance types and common preferences.



220_OpenShift_0622

Table 1.11. virt-operator components

Component	Description
deployment/virt-api	HTTP API server that serves as the entry point for all virtualization-related flows.
deployment/virt-controller	Observes the creation of a new VM instance object and creates a corresponding pod. When the pod is scheduled on a node, virt-controller updates the VM with the node name.
daemonset/virt-handler	Monitors any changes to a VM and instructs virt-launcher to perform the required operations. This component is node-specific.
pod/virt-launcher	Contains the VM that was created by the user as implemented by libvirt and qemu .

CHAPTER 2. RELEASE NOTES

2.1. OPENSIFT VIRTUALIZATION RELEASE NOTES

2.1.1. Providing documentation feedback

To report an error or to improve our documentation, log in to your [Red Hat Jira account](#) and submit a [Jira issue](#).

2.1.2. About Red Hat OpenShift Virtualization

With Red Hat OpenShift Virtualization, you can bring traditional virtual machines (VMs) into OpenShift Container Platform and run them alongside containers. In OpenShift Virtualization, VMs are native Kubernetes objects that you can manage by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line.



OpenShift Virtualization is represented by the  icon.

You can use OpenShift Virtualization with either the [OVN-Kubernetes](#) or the [OpenShiftSDN](#) default Container Network Interface (CNI) network provider.

Learn more about [what you can do with OpenShift Virtualization](#).

Learn more about [OpenShift Virtualization architecture and deployments](#).

[Prepare your cluster](#) for OpenShift Virtualization.

2.1.2.1. OpenShift Virtualization supported cluster version

OpenShift Virtualization 4.16 is supported for use on OpenShift Container Platform 4.16 clusters. To use the latest z-stream release of OpenShift Virtualization, you must first upgrade to the latest version of OpenShift Container Platform.

2.1.2.2. Supported guest operating systems

To view the supported guest operating systems for OpenShift Virtualization, see [Certified Guest Operating Systems in Red Hat OpenStack Platform](#), [Red Hat Virtualization](#), [OpenShift Virtualization](#) and [Red Hat Enterprise Linux with KVM](#).

2.1.2.3. Microsoft Windows SVVP certification

OpenShift Virtualization is certified in Microsoft's Windows Server Virtualization Validation Program (SVVP) to run Windows Server workloads.

The SVVP certification applies to:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS workers. In the Microsoft SVVP Catalog, they are named *Red Hat OpenShift Container Platform 4 on RHEL CoreOS 9*.
- Intel and AMD CPUs.

2.1.3. Quick starts

Quick start tours are available for several OpenShift Virtualization features. To view the tours, click the **Help** icon ? in the menu bar on the header of the OpenShift Container Platform web console and then select **Quick Starts**. You can filter the available tours by entering the keyword **virtualization** in the **Filter** field.

2.1.4. New and changed features

This release adds new features and enhancements related to the following components and concepts:

2.1.4.1. Installation and update

- After upgrading to OpenShift Virtualization 4.16, data volumes that were previously removed through garbage collection might be recreated. This behavior is expected. You can ignore the recreated data volumes because data volume garbage collection is now disabled.

2.1.4.2. Virtualization

- Windows 10 VMs now boot using UEFI with TPM.
- Enabling the **AutoResourceLimits** feature gate automatically manages CPU and memory limits of a VM.
- The KubeVirt Tekton tasks are now shipped as a part of the [OpenShift Container Platform Pipelines catalog](#).

2.1.4.3. Networking

- You can now [access a VM](#) that is connected to the default internal pod network on a stable fully qualified domain name (FQDN) by using headless services.

2.1.4.4. Web console

- Hot plugging virtual machines is now generally available. If a virtual machine cannot be hot plugged, the condition **RestartRequired** is applied to the VM. You can view this condition in the **Diagnostics** tab of the web console.
- You can now select **sysprep** options when you create a Microsoft Windows VM from an instance type. Previously, you had to set the **sysprep** options by customizing the VM after its creation.

2.1.4.5. Monitoring

- As an administrator, you can now [expose a limited set of host and virtual machine \(VM\) metrics to a guest VM through a virtio-serial port](#) for OpenShift Virtualization by enabling a **downwardMetrics** feature gate and configuring a **downwardMetrics** device. Users retrieve the metrics by using the **vm-dump-metrics** tool or from the command line.
On Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9, [use the command line](#) to view downward metrics. The **vm-dump-metrics** tool is not supported on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 platform.

2.1.4.6. Notable technical changes

- VMs require a minimum of 1 GiB of allocated memory to enable memory hotplug. If a VM has less than 1 GiB of allocated memory, then memory hotplug is disabled.

- Runbooks for OpenShift Virtualization alerts are now maintained only in the [openshift/runbooks git repository](#). [Links to the runbook source files](#) are now available in place of the removed runbooks.

2.1.5. Deprecated and removed features

2.1.5.1. Deprecated features

Deprecated features are included in the current release and remain supported. However, deprecated features will be removed in a future release and are not recommended for new deployments.

- The **tekton-tasks-operator** is deprecated and Tekton tasks and example pipelines are now deployed by the **ssp-operator**.
- The **copy-template**, **modify-vm-template**, and **create-vm-from-template** tasks are deprecated.
- Support for Windows Server 2012 R2 templates is deprecated.
- The alerts **KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedMemory** and **KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedCPU** are deprecated. You can safely [silence](#) them.

2.1.5.2. Removed features

Removed features are not supported in the current release.

2.1.6. Technology Preview features

Some features in this release are currently in Technology Preview. These experimental features are not intended for production use. Note the following scope of support on the Red Hat Customer Portal for these features:

Technology Preview Features Support Scope

- You can now configure a VM eviction strategy for the [entire cluster](#).
- You can now enable [nested virtualization on OpenShift Virtualization hosts](#).
- Cluster admins can now enable CPU resource limits on a namespace in the OpenShift Container Platform web console under **Overview** → **Settings** → **Preview features**.
- Cluster admins can now use the **wasp-agent** tool to [configure a higher VM workload density](#) in their clusters by overcommitting the amount of memory, in RAM, and assigning swap resources to VM workloads.
- OpenShift Virtualization now supports compatibility with Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation (ODF) Regional Disaster Recovery.

2.1.7. Known issues

Monitoring

- The Pod Disruption Budget (PDB) prevents pod disruptions for migratable virtual machine images. If the PDB detects pod disruption, then **openshift-monitoring** sends a **PodDisruptionBudgetAtLimit** alert every 60 minutes for virtual machine images that use the **LiveMigrate** eviction strategy. ([CNV-33834](#))

- As a workaround, [silence alerts](#).

Nodes

- Uninstalling OpenShift Virtualization does not remove the **feature.node.kubevirt.io** node labels created by OpenShift Virtualization. You must remove the labels manually. ([CNV-38543](#))

Storage

- If you use Portworx as your storage solution on AWS and create a VM disk image, the created image might be smaller than expected due to the filesystem overhead being accounted for twice. ([CNV-40217](#))
 - As a workaround, you can manually expand the persistent volume claim (PVC) to increase the available space after the initial provisioning process completes.
- In some instances, multiple virtual machines can mount the same PVC in read-write mode, which might result in data corruption. ([CNV-13500](#))
 - As a workaround, avoid using a single PVC in read-write mode with multiple VMs.
- If you clone more than 100 VMs using the **csi-clone** cloning strategy, then the Ceph CSI might not purge the clones. Manually deleting the clones might also fail. ([CNV-23501](#))
 - As a workaround, you can restart the **ceph-mgr** to purge the VM clones.

Virtualization

- VM migrations might fail on clusters with mixed CPU types. ([CNV-43195](#))
 - As a workaround, you can set the CPU model at the [VM spec level](#) or at the [cluster level](#).
- When adding a virtual Trusted Platform Module (vTPM) device to a Windows VM, the BitLocker Drive Encryption system check passes even if the vTPM device is not persistent. This is because a vTPM device that is not persistent stores and recovers encryption keys using ephemeral storage for the lifetime of the **virt-launcher** pod. When the VM migrates or is shut down and restarts, the vTPM data is lost. ([CNV-36448](#))
- OpenShift Virtualization links a service account token in use by a pod to that specific pod. OpenShift Virtualization implements a service account volume by creating a disk image that contains a token. If you migrate a VM, then the service account volume becomes invalid. ([CNV-33835](#))
 - As a workaround, use user accounts rather than service accounts because user account tokens are not bound to a specific pod.
- With the release of the [RHSA-2023:3722](#) advisory, the TLS **Extended Master Secret** (EMS) extension ([RFC 7627](#)) is mandatory for TLS 1.2 connections on FIPS-enabled Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 systems. This is in accordance with FIPS-140-3 requirements. TLS 1.3 is not affected.
Legacy OpenSSL clients that do not support EMS or TLS 1.3 now cannot connect to FIPS servers running on RHEL 9. Similarly, RHEL 9 clients in FIPS mode cannot connect to servers that only support TLS 1.2 without EMS. This in practice means that these clients cannot connect to servers on RHEL 6, RHEL 7 and non-RHEL legacy operating systems. This is because the legacy 1.0.x versions of OpenSSL do not support EMS or TLS 1.3. For more information, see [TLS Extension "Extended Master Secret" enforced with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9.2](#).

- As a workaround, update legacy OpenSSL clients to a version that supports TLS 1.3 and configure OpenShift Virtualization to use TLS 1.3, with the **Modern** TLS security profile type, for FIPS mode.

Web console

- When you first deploy an OpenShift Container Platform cluster, creating VMs from templates or instance types by using the web console, fails if you do not have **cluster-admin** permissions.
 - As a workaround, the cluster administrator must first [create a config map](#) to enable other users to use templates and instance types to create VMs. ([CNV-38284](#))
- When you create a persistent volume claim (PVC) by selecting **With Data upload** form from the **Create PersistentVolumeClaim** list in the web console, uploading data to the PVC by using the **Upload Data** field fails. ([CNV-37607](#))

CHAPTER 3. GETTING STARTED

3.1. GETTING STARTED WITH OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION

You can explore the features and functionalities of OpenShift Virtualization by installing and configuring a basic environment.



NOTE

Cluster configuration procedures require **cluster-admin** privileges.

3.1.1. Planning and installing OpenShift Virtualization

Plan and install OpenShift Virtualization on an OpenShift Container Platform cluster:

- Plan your bare metal cluster for OpenShift Virtualization .
- Prepare your cluster for OpenShift Virtualization .
- Install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator .
- Install the **virtctl** command line interface (CLI) tool .

Planning and installation resources

- About storage volumes for virtual machine disks .
- Using a CSI-enabled storage provider .
- Configuring local storage for virtual machines .
- Installing the Kubernetes NMState Operator .
- Specifying nodes for virtual machines .
- **Virtctl** commands .

3.1.2. Creating and managing virtual machines

Create a virtual machine (VM):

- Create a VM from a Red Hat image .
You can create a VM by using a Red Hat template or an [instance type](#).
- Create a VM from a custom image .
You can create a VM by importing a custom image from a container registry or a web page, by uploading an image from your local machine, or by cloning a persistent volume claim (PVC).

Connect a VM to a secondary network:

- Linux bridge network .
- Open Virtual Network (OVN)-Kubernetes secondary network .
- Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) network .

**NOTE**

VMs are connected to the pod network by default.

Connect to a VM:

- Connect to the [serial console](#) or [VNC console](#) of a VM.
- [Connect to a VM by using SSH](#) .
- [Connect to the desktop viewer for Windows VMs](#) .

Manage a VM:

- [Manage a VM by using the web console](#) .
- [Manage a VM by using the **virtctl** CLI tool](#).
- [Export a VM](#) .

3.1.3. Next steps

- [Review postinstallation configuration options](#) .
- [Configure storage options and automatic boot source updates](#) .
- [Learn about monitoring and health checks](#) .
- [Learn about live migration](#) .
- [Back up and restore VMs by using the OpenShift API for Data Protection \(OADP\)](#) .
- [Tune and scale your cluster](#) .

3.2. USING THE CLI TOOLS

You can manage OpenShift Virtualization resources by using the **virtctl** command line tool.

You can access and modify virtual machine (VM) disk images by using the **libguestfs** command line tool. You deploy **libguestfs** by using the **virtctl libguestfs** command.

3.2.1. Installing virtctl

To install **virtctl** on Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9, Linux, Windows, and MacOS operating systems, you download and install the **virtctl** binary file.

To install **virtctl** on RHEL 8, you enable the OpenShift Virtualization repository and then install the **kubevirt-virtctl** package.

3.2.1.1. Installing the virtctl binary on RHEL 9, Linux, Windows, or macOS

You can download the **virtctl** binary for your operating system from the OpenShift Container Platform web console and then install it.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Virtualization → Overview** page in the web console.
2. Click the **Download virtctl** link to download the **virtctl** binary for your operating system.
3. Install **virtctl**:

- For RHEL 9 and other Linux operating systems:

- a. Decompress the archive file:

```
$ tar -xvf <virtctl-version-distribution.arch>.tar.gz
```

- b. Run the following command to make the **virtctl** binary executable:

```
$ chmod +x <path/virtctl-file-name>
```

- c. Move the **virtctl** binary to a directory in your **PATH** environment variable.
You can check your path by running the following command:

```
$ echo $PATH
```

- d. Set the **KUBECONFIG** environment variable:

```
$ export KUBECONFIG=/home/<user>/clusters/current/auth/kubeconfig
```

- For Windows:

- a. Decompress the archive file.

- b. Navigate the extracted folder hierarchy and double-click the **virtctl** executable file to install the client.

- c. Move the **virtctl** binary to a directory in your **PATH** environment variable.
You can check your path by running the following command:

```
C:\> path
```

- For macOS:

- a. Decompress the archive file.

- b. Move the **virtctl** binary to a directory in your **PATH** environment variable.
You can check your path by running the following command:

```
echo $PATH
```

3.2.1.2. Installing the virtctl RPM on RHEL 8

You can install the **virtctl** RPM package on Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8 by enabling the OpenShift Virtualization repository and installing the **kubevirt-virtctl** package.

Prerequisites

- Each host in your cluster must be registered with Red Hat Subscription Manager (RHSM) and have an active OpenShift Container Platform subscription.

Procedure

1. Enable the OpenShift Virtualization repository by using the **subscription-manager** CLI tool to run the following command:

```
# subscription-manager repos --enable cnv-4.16-for-rhel-8-x86_64-rpms
```

2. Install the **kubevirt-virtctl** package by running the following command:

```
# yum install kubevirt-virtctl
```

3.2.2. virtctl commands

The **virtctl** client is a command-line utility for managing OpenShift Virtualization resources.



NOTE

The virtual machine (VM) commands also apply to virtual machine instances (VMIs) unless otherwise specified.

3.2.2.1. virtctl information commands

You use **virtctl** information commands to view information about the **virtctl** client.

Table 3.1. Information commands

Command	Description
virtctl version	View the virtctl client and server versions.
virtctl help	View a list of virtctl commands.
virtctl <command> -h --help	View a list of options for a specific command.
virtctl options	View a list of global command options for any virtctl command.

3.2.2.2. VM information commands

You can use **virtctl** to view information about virtual machines (VMs) and virtual machine instances (VMIs).

Table 3.2. VM information commands

Command	Description
virtctl fslist <vm_name>	View the file systems available on a guest machine.

Command	Description
virtctl guestosinfo <vm_name>	View information about the operating systems on a guest machine.
virtctl userlist <vm_name>	View the logged-in users on a guest machine.

3.2.2.3. VM manifest creation commands

You can use **virtctl create** commands to create manifests for virtual machines, instance types, and preferences.

Table 3.3. VM manifest creation commands

Command	Description
virtctl create vm	Create a VirtualMachine (VM) manifest.
virtctl create vm --name <vm_name>	Create a VM manifest, specifying a name for the VM.
virtctl create vm --instancetype <instancetype_name>	Create a VM manifest that uses an existing cluster-wide instance type.
virtctl create vm --instancetype=virtualmachineinstancetype/<instancetype_name>	Create a VM manifest that uses an existing namespaced instance type.
virtctl createinstancetype --cpu <cpu_value> --memory <memory_value> --name <instancetype_name>	Create a manifest for a cluster-wide instance type.
virtctl createinstancetype --cpu <cpu_value> --memory <memory_value> --name <instancetype_name> --namespace <namespace_value>	Create a manifest for a namespaced instance type.
virtctl create preference --name <preference_name>	Create a manifest for a cluster-wide VM preference, specifying a name for the preference.
virtctl create preference --namespace <namespace_value>	Create a manifest for a namespaced VM preference.

3.2.2.4. VM management commands

You use **virtctl** virtual machine (VM) management commands to manage and migrate virtual machines (VMs) and virtual machine instances (VMIs).

Table 3.4. VM management commands

Command	Description
virtctl start <vm_name>	Start a VM.
virtctl start --paused <vm_name>	Start a VM in a paused state. This option enables you to interrupt the boot process from the VNC console.
virtctl stop <vm_name>	Stop a VM.
virtctl stop <vm_name> --grace-period 0 --force	Force stop a VM. This option might cause data inconsistency or data loss.
virtctl pause vm <vm_name>	Pause a VM. The machine state is kept in memory.
virtctl unpause vm <vm_name>	Unpause a VM.
virtctl migrate <vm_name>	Migrate a VM.
virtctl migrate-cancel <vm_name>	Cancel a VM migration.
virtctl restart <vm_name>	Restart a VM.

3.2.2.5. VM connection commands

You use **virtctl** connection commands to expose ports and connect to virtual machines (VMs) and virtual machine instances (VMIs).

Table 3.5. VM connection commands

Command	Description
virtctl console <vm_name>	Connect to the serial console of a VM.
virtctl expose vm <vm_name> --name <service_name> --type <ClusterIP NodePort LoadBalancer> --port <port>	Create a service that forwards a designated port of a VM and expose the service on the specified port of the node. Example: virtctl expose vm rhel9_vm --name rhel9-ssh --type NodePort --port 22
virtctl scp -i <ssh_key> <file_name> <user_name>@<vm_name>	Copy a file from your machine to a VM. This command uses the private key of an SSH key pair. The VM must be configured with the public key.

Command	Description
virtctl scp -i <ssh_key> <user_name>@<vm_name>:<file_name> .	Copy a file from a VM to your machine. This command uses the private key of an SSH key pair. The VM must be configured with the public key.
virtctl ssh -i <ssh_key> <user_name>@<vm_name>	Open an SSH connection with a VM. This command uses the private key of an SSH key pair. The VM must be configured with the public key.
virtctl vnc <vm_name>	Connect to the VNC console of a VM. You must have virt-viewer installed.
virtctl vnc --proxy-only=true <vm_name>	Display the port number and connect manually to a VM by using any viewer through the VNC connection.
virtctl vnc --port=<port-number> <vm_name>	Specify a port number to run the proxy on the specified port, if that port is available. If a port number is not specified, the proxy runs on a random port.

3.2.2.6. VM export commands

Use **virtctl vmexport** commands to create, download, or delete a volume exported from a VM, VM snapshot, or persistent volume claim (PVC). Certain manifests also contain a header secret, which grants access to the endpoint to import a disk image in a format that OpenShift Virtualization can use.

Table 3.6. VM export commands

Command	Description
virtctl vmexport create <vmexport_name> --vm snapshot pvc=<object_name>	Create a VirtualMachineExport custom resource (CR) to export a volume from a VM, VM snapshot, or PVC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • --vm: Exports the PVCs of a VM. • --snapshot: Exports the PVCs contained in a VirtualMachineSnapshot CR. • --pvc: Exports a PVC. • Optional: --ttl=1h specifies the time to live. The default duration is 2 hours.
virtctl vmexport delete <vmexport_name>	Delete a VirtualMachineExport CR manually.

Command	Description
<pre>virtctl vmexport download <vmexport_name> --output= <output_file> --volume= <volume_name></pre>	<p>Download the volume defined in a VirtualMachineExport CR.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • --output specifies the file format. Example: disk.img.gz. • --volume specifies the volume to download. This flag is optional if only one volume is available. <p>Optional:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • --keep-vme retains the VirtualMachineExport CR after download. The default behavior is to delete the VirtualMachineExport CR after download. • --insecure enables an insecure HTTP connection.
<pre>virtctl vmexport download <vmexport_name> -- <vm snapshot pvc>= <object_name> --output= <output_file> --volume= <volume_name></pre>	<p>Create a VirtualMachineExport CR and then download the volume defined in the CR.</p>
<pre>virtctl vmexport download export --manifest</pre>	<p>Retrieve the manifest for an existing export. The manifest does not include the header secret.</p>
<pre>virtctl vmexport download export --manifest -- vm=example</pre>	<p>Create a VM export for a VM example, and retrieve the manifest. The manifest does not include the header secret.</p>
<pre>virtctl vmexport download export --manifest -- snap=example</pre>	<p>Create a VM export for a VM snapshot example, and retrieve the manifest. The manifest does not include the header secret.</p>
<pre>virtctl vmexport download export --manifest --include- secret</pre>	<p>Retrieve the manifest for an existing export. The manifest includes the header secret.</p>
<pre>virtctl vmexport download export --manifest --manifest- output-format=json</pre>	<p>Retrieve the manifest for an existing export in json format. The manifest does not include the header secret.</p>
<pre>virtctl vmexport download export --manifest --include- secret -- output=manifest.yaml</pre>	<p>Retrieve the manifest for an existing export. The manifest includes the header secret and writes it to the file specified.</p>

3.2.2.7. VM memory dump commands

You can use the **virtctl memory-dump** command to output a VM memory dump on a PVC. You can specify an existing PVC or use the **--create-claim** flag to create a new PVC.

Prerequisites

- The PVC volume mode must be **FileSystem**.
- The PVC must be large enough to contain the memory dump.
The formula for calculating the PVC size is **(VMMemorySize + 100Mi) * FileSystemOverhead**, where **100Mi** is the memory dump overhead.
- You must enable the hot plug feature gate in the **HyperConverged** custom resource by running the following command:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type json -p '[{"op": "add", "path": "/spec/featureGates", \
"value": "HotplugVolumes"}]'
```

Downloading the memory dump

You must use the **virtctl vmexport download** command to download the memory dump:

```
$ virtctl vmexport download <vmexport_name> --vm|pvc=<object_name> \
--volume=<volume_name> --output=<output_file>
```

Table 3.7. VM memory dump commands

Command	Description
virtctl memory-dump get <vm_name> --claim-name=<pvc_name>	<p>Save the memory dump of a VM on a PVC. The memory dump status is displayed in the status section of the VirtualMachine resource.</p> <p>Optional:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> --create-claim creates a new PVC with the appropriate size. This flag has the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> --storage-class=<storage_class>: Specify a storage class for the PVC. --access-mode=<access_mode>: Specify ReadWriteOnce or ReadWriteMany.
virtctl memory-dump get <vm_name>	<p>Rerun the virtctl memory-dump command with the same PVC. This command overwrites the previous memory dump.</p>
virtctl memory-dump remove <vm_name>	<p>Remove a memory dump.</p> <p>You must remove a memory dump manually if you want to change the target PVC.</p> <p>This command removes the association between the VM and the PVC, so that the memory dump is not displayed in the status section of the VirtualMachine resource. The PVC is not affected.</p>

3.2.2.8. Hot plug and hot unplug commands

You use **virtctl** to add or remove resources from running virtual machines (VMs) and virtual machine instances (VMIs).

Table 3.8. Hot plug and hot unplug commands

Command	Description
virtctl addvolume <code><vm_name> --volume-name=<datavolume_or_PVC> [--persist] [--serial=<label>]</code>	Hot plug a data volume or persistent volume claim (PVC). Optional: <ul style="list-style-type: none">● --persist mounts the virtual disk permanently on a VM. This flag does not apply to VMIs.● --serial=<label> adds a label to the VM. If you do not specify a label, the default label is the data volume or PVC name.
virtctl removevolume <code><vm_name> --volume-name=<virtual_disk></code>	Hot unplug a virtual disk.
virtctl addinterface <code><vm_name> --network-attachment-definition-name <net_attach_def_name> --name <interface_name></code>	Hot plug a Linux bridge network interface.
virtctl removeinterface <code><vm_name> --name <interface_name></code>	Hot unplug a Linux bridge network interface.

3.2.2.9. Image upload commands

You use the **virtctl image-upload** commands to upload a VM image to a data volume.

Table 3.9. Image upload commands

Command	Description
virtctl image-upload dv <code><datavolume_name> --image-path=</path/to/image> --no-create</code>	Upload a VM image to a data volume that already exists.
virtctl image-upload dv <code><datavolume_name> --size=<datavolume_size> --image-path=</path/to/image></code>	Upload a VM image to a new data volume of a specified requested size.

3.2.3. Deploying libguestfs by using virtctl

You can use the **virtctl guestfs** command to deploy an interactive container with **libguestfs-tools** and a persistent volume claim (PVC) attached to it.

Procedure

- To deploy a container with **libguestfs-tools**, mount the PVC, and attach a shell to it, run the following command:

```
$ virtctl guestfs -n <namespace> <pvc_name> ①
```

- The PVC name is a required argument. If you do not include it, an error message appears.

3.2.3.1. Libguestfs and virtctl guestfs commands

Libguestfs tools help you access and modify virtual machine (VM) disk images. You can use **libguestfs** tools to view and edit files in a guest, clone and build virtual machines, and format and resize disks.

You can also use the **virtctl guestfs** command and its sub-commands to modify, inspect, and debug VM disks on a PVC. To see a complete list of possible sub-commands, enter **virt-** on the command line and press the Tab key. For example:

Command	Description
virt-edit -a /dev/vda /etc/motd	Edit a file interactively in your terminal.
virt-customize -a /dev/vda --ssh-inject root:string:<public key example>	Inject an ssh key into the guest and create a login.
virt-df -a /dev/vda -h	See how much disk space is used by a VM.
virt-customize -a /dev/vda --run-command 'rpm -qa > /rpm-list'	See the full list of all RPMs installed on a guest by creating an output file containing the full list.
virt-cat -a /dev/vda /rpm-list	Display the output file list of all RPMs created using the virt-customize -a /dev/vda --run-command 'rpm -qa > /rpm-list' command in your terminal.
virt-sysprep -a /dev/vda	Seal a virtual machine disk image to be used as a template.

By default, **virtctl guestfs** creates a session with everything needed to manage a VM disk. However, the command also supports several flag options if you want to customize the behavior:

Flag Option	Description
--h or --help	Provides help for guestfs .

Flag Option	Description
-n <namespace> option with a <pvc_name> argument	<p>To use a PVC from a specific namespace.</p> <p>If you do not use the -n <namespace> option, your current project is used. To change projects, use oc project <namespace>.</p> <p>If you do not include a <pvc_name> argument, an error message appears.</p>
--image string	<p>Lists the libguestfs-tools container image.</p> <p>You can configure the container to use a custom image by using the --image option.</p>
--kvm	<p>Indicates that kvm is used by the libguestfs-tools container.</p> <p>By default, virtctl guestfs sets up kvm for the interactive container, which greatly speeds up the libguest-tools execution because it uses QEMU.</p> <p>If a cluster does not have any kvm supporting nodes, you must disable kvm by setting the option --kvm=false.</p> <p>If not set, the libguestfs-tools pod remains pending because it cannot be scheduled on any node.</p>
--pull-policy string	<p>Shows the pull policy for the libguestfs image.</p> <p>You can also overwrite the image's pull policy by setting the pull-policy option.</p>

The command also checks if a PVC is in use by another pod, in which case an error message appears. However, once the **libguestfs-tools** process starts, the setup cannot avoid a new pod using the same PVC. You must verify that there are no active **virtctl guestfs** pods before starting the VM that accesses the same PVC.



NOTE

The **virtctl guestfs** command accepts only a single PVC attached to the interactive pod.

3.2.4. Using Ansible

To use the Ansible collection for OpenShift Virtualization, see [Red Hat Ansible Automation Hub](#) (Red Hat Hybrid Cloud Console).

CHAPTER 4. INSTALLING

4.1. PREPARING YOUR CLUSTER FOR OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION

Review this section before you install OpenShift Virtualization to ensure that your cluster meets the requirements.



IMPORTANT

Installation method considerations

You can use any installation method, including user-provisioned, installer-provisioned, or assisted installer, to deploy OpenShift Container Platform. However, the installation method and the cluster topology might affect OpenShift Virtualization functionality, such as snapshots or [live migration](#).

Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation

If you deploy OpenShift Virtualization with Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation, you must create a dedicated storage class for Windows virtual machine disks. See [Optimizing ODF PersistentVolumes for Windows VMs](#) for details.

IPv6

You cannot run OpenShift Virtualization on a single-stack IPv6 cluster.

FIPS mode

If you install your cluster in [FIPS mode](#), no additional setup is required for OpenShift Virtualization.

4.1.1. Supported platforms

You can use the following platforms with OpenShift Virtualization:

- On-premise bare metal servers. See [Planning a bare metal cluster for OpenShift Virtualization](#).
- Amazon Web Services bare metal instances. See [Installing a cluster on AWS with customizations](#).
- IBM Cloud® Bare Metal Servers. See [Deploy OpenShift Virtualization on IBM Cloud® Bare Metal nodes](#).



IMPORTANT

Installing OpenShift Virtualization on IBM Cloud® Bare Metal Servers is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

Bare metal instances or servers offered by other cloud providers are not supported.

4.1.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization on AWS bare metal

You can run OpenShift Virtualization on an Amazon Web Services (AWS) bare-metal OpenShift Container Platform cluster.



NOTE

OpenShift Virtualization is also supported on Red Hat OpenShift Service on AWS (ROSA) Classic clusters, which have the same configuration requirements as AWS bare-metal clusters.

Before you set up your cluster, review the following summary of supported features and limitations:

Installing

- You can install the cluster by using installer-provisioned infrastructure, ensuring that you specify bare-metal instance types for the worker nodes. For example, you can use the **c5n.metal** type value for a machine based on x86_64 architecture. You specify bare-metal instance types by editing the **install-config.yaml** file.

For more information, see the OpenShift Container Platform documentation about installing on AWS.

Accessing virtual machines (VMs)

- There is no change to how you access VMs by using the **virtctl** CLI tool or the OpenShift Container Platform web console.
- You can expose VMs by using a **NodePort** or **LoadBalancer** service.
 - The load balancer approach is preferable because OpenShift Container Platform automatically creates the load balancer in AWS and manages its lifecycle. A security group is also created for the load balancer, and you can use annotations to attach existing security groups. When you remove the service, OpenShift Container Platform removes the load balancer and its associated resources.

Networking

- You cannot use Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) or bridge Container Network Interface (CNI) networks, including virtual LAN (VLAN). If your application requires a flat layer 2 network or control over the IP pool, consider using OVN-Kubernetes secondary overlay networks.

Storage

- You can use any storage solution that is certified by the storage vendor to work with the underlying platform.



IMPORTANT

AWS bare-metal and ROSA clusters might have different supported storage solutions. Ensure that you confirm support with your storage vendor.

- Using Amazon Elastic File System (EFS) or Amazon Elastic Block Store (EBS) with OpenShift Virtualization might cause performance and functionality limitations. Consider using CSI storage, which supports ReadWriteMany (RWX), cloning, and snapshots to enable live migration,

fast VM creation, and VM snapshots capabilities.

Hosted control planes (HCPs)

- HCPs for OpenShift Virtualization are not currently supported on AWS infrastructure.

Additional resources

- [Connecting a virtual machine to an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network](#)
- [Exposing a virtual machine by using a service](#)

4.1.2. Hardware and operating system requirements

Review the following hardware and operating system requirements for OpenShift Virtualization.

4.1.2.1. CPU requirements

- Supported by Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9.
See [Red Hat Ecosystem Catalog](#) for supported CPUs.



NOTE

If your worker nodes have different CPUs, live migration failures might occur because different CPUs have different capabilities. You can mitigate this issue by ensuring that your worker nodes have CPUs with the appropriate capacity and by configuring node affinity rules for your virtual machines.

See [Configuring a required node affinity rule](#) for details.

- Support for AMD and Intel 64-bit architectures (x86-64-v2).
- Support for Intel 64 or AMD64 CPU extensions.
- Intel VT or AMD-V hardware virtualization extensions enabled.
- NX (no execute) flag enabled.

4.1.2.2. Operating system requirements

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux CoreOS (RHCOS) installed on worker nodes.
See [About RHCOS](#) for details.



NOTE

RHEL worker nodes are not supported.

4.1.2.3. Storage requirements

- Supported by OpenShift Container Platform. See [Optimizing storage](#).
- You must create a default OpenShift Virtualization or OpenShift Container Platform storage class. The purpose of this is to address the unique storage needs of VM workloads and offer optimized performance, reliability, and user experience. If both OpenShift Virtualization and

If OpenShift Container Platform default storage classes exist, the OpenShift Virtualization class takes precedence when creating VM disks.



NOTE

To mark a storage class as the default for virtualization workloads, set the annotation **storageclass.kubevirt.io/is-default-virt-class** to "true".

- If the storage provisioner supports snapshots, you must associate a **VolumeSnapshotClass** object with the default storage class.

4.1.2.3.1. About volume and access modes for virtual machine disks

If you use the storage API with known storage providers, the volume and access modes are selected automatically. However, if you use a storage class that does not have a storage profile, you must configure the volume and access mode.

For best results, use the **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode and the **Block** volume mode. This is important for the following reasons:

- **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode is required for live migration.
- The **Block** volume mode performs significantly better than the **Filesystem** volume mode. This is because the **Filesystem** volume mode uses more storage layers, including a file system layer and a disk image file. These layers are not necessary for VM disk storage.
For example, if you use Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation, Ceph RBD volumes are preferable to CephFS volumes.



IMPORTANT

You cannot live migrate virtual machines with the following configurations:

- Storage volume with **ReadWriteOnce** (RWO) access mode
- Passthrough features such as GPUs

Set the **evictionStrategy** field to **None** for these virtual machines. The **None** strategy powers down VMs during node reboots.

4.1.3. Live migration requirements

- Shared storage with **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode.
- Sufficient RAM and network bandwidth.



NOTE

You must ensure that there is enough memory request capacity in the cluster to support node drains that result in live migrations. You can determine the approximate required spare memory by using the following calculation:

Product of (Maximum number of nodes that can drain in parallel) and (Highest total VM memory request allocations across nodes)

The default [number of migrations that can run in parallel](#) in the cluster is 5.

- If the virtual machine uses a host model CPU, the nodes must support the virtual machine's host model CPU.
- A [dedicated Multus network](#) for live migration is highly recommended. A dedicated network minimizes the effects of network saturation on tenant workloads during migration.

4.1.4. Physical resource overhead requirements

OpenShift Virtualization is an add-on to OpenShift Container Platform and imposes additional overhead that you must account for when planning a cluster. Each cluster machine must accommodate the following overhead requirements in addition to the OpenShift Container Platform requirements. Oversubscribing the physical resources in a cluster can affect performance.



IMPORTANT

The numbers noted in this documentation are based on Red Hat's test methodology and setup. These numbers can vary based on your own individual setup and environments.

Memory overhead

Calculate the memory overhead values for OpenShift Virtualization by using the equations below.

Cluster memory overhead

Memory overhead per infrastructure node $\approx 150 \text{ MiB}$

Memory overhead per worker node $\approx 360 \text{ MiB}$

Additionally, OpenShift Virtualization environment resources require a total of 2179 MiB of RAM that is spread across all infrastructure nodes.

Virtual machine memory overhead

Memory overhead per virtual machine $\approx (1.002 \times \text{requested memory}) \backslash$
 $+ 218 \text{ MiB} \backslash$ ①
 $+ 8 \text{ MiB} \times (\text{number of vCPUs}) \backslash$ ②
 $+ 16 \text{ MiB} \times (\text{number of graphics devices}) \backslash$ ③
 $+ (\text{additional memory overhead})$ ④

① Required for the processes that run in the **virt-launcher** pod.

② Number of virtual CPUs requested by the virtual machine.

- 3 Number of virtual graphics cards requested by the virtual machine.
- 4 Additional memory overhead:
 - If your environment includes a Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) network device or a Graphics Processing Unit (GPU), allocate 1 GiB additional memory overhead for each device.
 - If Secure Encrypted Virtualization (SEV) is enabled, add 256 MiB.
 - If Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is enabled, add 53 MiB.

CPU overhead

Calculate the cluster processor overhead requirements for OpenShift Virtualization by using the equation below. The CPU overhead per virtual machine depends on your individual setup.

Cluster CPU overhead

CPU overhead for infrastructure nodes ≈ 4 cores

OpenShift Virtualization increases the overall utilization of cluster level services such as logging, routing, and monitoring. To account for this workload, ensure that nodes that host infrastructure components have capacity allocated for 4 additional cores (4000 millicores) distributed across those nodes.

CPU overhead for worker nodes ≈ 2 cores + CPU overhead per virtual machine

Each worker node that hosts virtual machines must have capacity for 2 additional cores (2000 millicores) for OpenShift Virtualization management workloads in addition to the CPUs required for virtual machine workloads.

Virtual machine CPU overhead

If dedicated CPUs are requested, there is a 1:1 impact on the cluster CPU overhead requirement. Otherwise, there are no specific rules about how many CPUs a virtual machine requires.

Storage overhead

Use the guidelines below to estimate storage overhead requirements for your OpenShift Virtualization environment.

Cluster storage overhead

Aggregated storage overhead per node ≈ 10 GiB

10 GiB is the estimated on-disk storage impact for each node in the cluster when you install OpenShift Virtualization.

Virtual machine storage overhead

Storage overhead per virtual machine depends on specific requests for resource allocation within the virtual machine. The request could be for ephemeral storage on the node or storage resources hosted elsewhere in the cluster. OpenShift Virtualization does not currently allocate any additional ephemeral storage for the running container itself.

Example

As a cluster administrator, if you plan to host 10 virtual machines in the cluster, each with 1 GiB of RAM and 2 vCPUs, the memory impact across the cluster is 11.68 GiB. The estimated on-disk storage impact for each node in the cluster is 10 GiB and the CPU impact for worker nodes that host virtual machine workloads is a minimum of 2 cores.

4.1.5. Single-node OpenShift differences

You can install OpenShift Virtualization on single-node OpenShift.

However, you should be aware that Single-node OpenShift does not support the following features:

- High availability
- Pod disruption
- Live migration
- Virtual machines or templates that have an eviction strategy configured

Additional resources

- [Glossary of common terms for OpenShift Container Platform storage](#)

4.1.6. Object maximums

You must consider the following tested object maximums when planning your cluster:

- [OpenShift Container Platform object maximums](#).
- [OpenShift Virtualization object maximums](#).

4.1.7. Cluster high-availability options

You can configure one of the following high-availability (HA) options for your cluster:

- Automatic high availability for [installer-provisioned infrastructure](#) (IPI) is available by deploying [machine health checks](#).



NOTE

In OpenShift Container Platform clusters installed using installer-provisioned infrastructure and with a properly configured **MachineHealthCheck** resource, if a node fails the machine health check and becomes unavailable to the cluster, it is recycled. What happens next with VMs that ran on the failed node depends on a series of conditions. See [Run strategies](#) for more detailed information about the potential outcomes and how run strategies affect those outcomes.

- Automatic high availability for both IPI and non-IPI is available by using the **Node Health Check Operator** on the OpenShift Container Platform cluster to deploy the **NodeHealthCheck** controller. The controller identifies unhealthy nodes and uses a remediation provider, such as the Self Node Remediation Operator or Fence Agents Remediation Operator, to remediate the unhealthy nodes. For more information on remediation, fencing, and maintaining nodes, see the [Workload Availability for Red Hat OpenShift](#) documentation.

- High availability for any platform is available by using either a monitoring system or a qualified human to monitor node availability. When a node is lost, shut it down and run **oc delete node <lost_node>**.



NOTE

Without an external monitoring system or a qualified human monitoring node health, virtual machines lose high availability.

4.2. INSTALLING OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION

Install OpenShift Virtualization to add virtualization functionality to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster.



IMPORTANT

If you install OpenShift Virtualization in a restricted environment with no internet connectivity, you must [configure Operator Lifecycle Manager \(OLM\) for restricted networks](#).

If you have limited internet connectivity, you can [configure proxy support in OLM](#) to access the OperatorHub.

4.2.1. Installing the OpenShift Virtualization Operator

Install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line.

4.2.1.1. Installing the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the web console

You can deploy the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- Install OpenShift Container Platform 4.16 on your cluster.
- Log in to the OpenShift Container Platform web console as a user with **cluster-admin** permissions.

Procedure

1. From the **Administrator** perspective, click **Operators** → **OperatorHub**.
2. In the **Filter by keyword** field, type **Virtualization**.
3. Select the **OpenShift Virtualization Operator** tile with the **Red Hat** source label.
4. Read the information about the Operator and click **Install**.
5. On the **Install Operator** page:
 - a. Select **stable** from the list of available **Update Channel** options. This ensures that you install the version of OpenShift Virtualization that is compatible with your OpenShift Container Platform version.

- b. For **Installed Namespace**, ensure that the **Operator recommended namespace** option is selected. This installs the Operator in the mandatory **openshift-cnv** namespace, which is automatically created if it does not exist.



WARNING

Attempting to install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator in a namespace other than **openshift-cnv** causes the installation to fail.

- c. For **Approval Strategy**, it is highly recommended that you select **Automatic**, which is the default value, so that OpenShift Virtualization automatically updates when a new version is available in the **stable** update channel.

While it is possible to select the **Manual** approval strategy, this is inadvisable because of the high risk that it presents to the supportability and functionality of your cluster. Only select **Manual** if you fully understand these risks and cannot use **Automatic**.



WARNING

Because OpenShift Virtualization is only supported when used with the corresponding OpenShift Container Platform version, missing OpenShift Virtualization updates can cause your cluster to become unsupported.

6. Click **Install** to make the Operator available to the **openshift-cnv** namespace.
7. When the Operator installs successfully, click **Create HyperConverged**.
8. Optional: Configure **Infra** and **Workloads** node placement options for OpenShift Virtualization components.
9. Click **Create** to launch OpenShift Virtualization.

Verification

- Navigate to the **Workloads → Pods** page and monitor the OpenShift Virtualization pods until they are all **Running**. After all the pods display the **Running** state, you can use OpenShift Virtualization.

4.2.1.2. Installing the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the command line

Subscribe to the OpenShift Virtualization catalog and install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by applying manifests to your cluster.

4.2.1.2.1. Subscribing to the OpenShift Virtualization catalog by using the CLI

Before you install OpenShift Virtualization, you must subscribe to the OpenShift Virtualization catalog. Subscribing gives the **openshift-cnv** namespace access to the OpenShift Virtualization Operators.

To subscribe, configure **Namespace**, **OperatorGroup**, and **Subscription** objects by applying a single manifest to your cluster.

Prerequisites

- Install OpenShift Container Platform 4.16 on your cluster.
- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- Log in as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.

Procedure

1. Create a YAML file that contains the following manifest:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Namespace
metadata:
  name: openshift-cnv
---
apiVersion: operators.coreos.com/v1
kind: OperatorGroup
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged-group
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  targetNamespaces:
    - openshift-cnv
---
apiVersion: operators.coreos.com/v1alpha1
kind: Subscription
metadata:
  name: hco-operatorhub
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  source: redhat-operators
  sourceNamespace: openshift-marketplace
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  startingCSV: kubevirt-hyperconverged-operator.v4.16.0
  channel: "stable" ①
```

- ① Using the **stable** channel ensures that you install the version of OpenShift Virtualization that is compatible with your OpenShift Container Platform version.

2. Create the required **Namespace**, **OperatorGroup**, and **Subscription** objects for OpenShift Virtualization by running the following command:

```
$ oc apply -f <file name>.yaml
```

**NOTE**

You can [configure certificate rotation](#) parameters in the YAML file.

4.2.1.2.2. Deploying the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the CLI

You can deploy the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by using the **oc** CLI.

Prerequisites

- Subscribe to the OpenShift Virtualization catalog in the **openshift-cnv** namespace.
- Log in as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.

Procedure

1. Create a YAML file that contains the following manifest:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
```

2. Deploy the OpenShift Virtualization Operator by running the following command:

```
$ oc apply -f <file_name>.yaml
```

Verification

- Ensure that OpenShift Virtualization deployed successfully by watching the **PHASE** of the cluster service version (CSV) in the **openshift-cnv** namespace. Run the following command:

```
$ watch oc get csv -n openshift-cnv
```

The following output displays if deployment was successful:

Example output

NAME	DISPLAY	VERSION	REPLACES	PHASE
kubevirt-hyperconverged-operator.v4.16.0	OpenShift Virtualization	4.16.0		Succeeded

4.2.2. Next steps

- The [hostpath provisioner](#) is a local storage provisioner designed for OpenShift Virtualization. If you want to configure local storage for virtual machines, you must enable the hostpath provisioner first.

4.3. UNINSTALLING OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION

You uninstall OpenShift Virtualization by using the web console or the command line interface (CLI) to delete the OpenShift Virtualization workloads, the Operator, and its resources.

4.3.1. Uninstalling OpenShift Virtualization by using the web console

You uninstall OpenShift Virtualization by using the [web console](#) to perform the following tasks:

1. Delete the **HyperConverged** CR.
2. Delete the OpenShift Virtualization Operator.
3. Delete the **openshift-cnv** namespace.
4. Delete the OpenShift Virtualization custom resource definitions (CRDs).



IMPORTANT

You must first delete all [virtual machines](#), and [virtual machine instances](#).

You cannot uninstall OpenShift Virtualization while its workloads remain on the cluster.

4.3.1.1. Deleting the HyperConverged custom resource

To uninstall OpenShift Virtualization, you first delete the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

Prerequisites

- You have access to an OpenShift Container Platform cluster using an account with **cluster-admin** permissions.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Operators → Installed Operators** page.
2. Select the OpenShift Virtualization Operator.
3. Click the **OpenShift Virtualization Deployment** tab.
4. Click the Options menu  beside **kubevirt-hyperconverged** and select **Delete HyperConverged**.
5. Click **Delete** in the confirmation window.

4.3.1.2. Deleting Operators from a cluster using the web console

Cluster administrators can delete installed Operators from a selected namespace by using the web console.

Prerequisites

- You have access to an OpenShift Container Platform cluster web console using an account with **cluster-admin** permissions.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the **Operators** → **Installed Operators** page.
2. Scroll or enter a keyword into the **Filter by name** field to find the Operator that you want to remove. Then, click on it.
3. On the right side of the **Operator Details** page, select **Uninstall Operator** from the **Actions** list. An **Uninstall Operator?** dialog box is displayed.
4. Select **Uninstall** to remove the Operator, Operator deployments, and pods. Following this action, the Operator stops running and no longer receives updates.



NOTE

This action does not remove resources managed by the Operator, including custom resource definitions (CRDs) and custom resources (CRs). Dashboards and navigation items enabled by the web console and off-cluster resources that continue to run might need manual clean up. To remove these after uninstalling the Operator, you might need to manually delete the Operator CRDs.

4.3.1.3. Deleting a namespace using the web console

You can delete a namespace by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You have access to an OpenShift Container Platform cluster using an account with **cluster-admin** permissions.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Administration** → **Namespaces**.
2. Locate the namespace that you want to delete in the list of namespaces.
3. On the far right side of the namespace listing, select **Delete Namespace** from the Options menu.
menu
4. When the **Delete Namespace** pane opens, enter the name of the namespace that you want to delete in the field.
5. Click **Delete**.

4.3.1.4. Deleting OpenShift Virtualization custom resource definitions

You can delete the OpenShift Virtualization custom resource definitions (CRDs) by using the web console.

Prerequisites

- You have access to an OpenShift Container Platform cluster using an account with **cluster-admin** permissions.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Administration** → **CustomResourceDefinitions**.
2. Select the **Label** filter and enter **operators.coreos.com/kubevirt-hyperconverged.openshift-cnv** in the **Search** field to display the OpenShift Virtualization CRDs.
3. Click the Options menu  beside each CRD and select **Delete CustomResourceDefinition**.

4.3.2. Uninstalling OpenShift Virtualization by using the CLI

You can uninstall OpenShift Virtualization by using the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

Prerequisites

- You have access to an OpenShift Container Platform cluster using an account with **cluster-admin** permissions.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have deleted all virtual machines and virtual machine instances. You cannot uninstall OpenShift Virtualization while its workloads remain on the cluster.

Procedure

1. Delete the **HyperConverged** custom resource:

```
$ oc delete HyperConverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Delete the OpenShift Virtualization Operator subscription:

```
$ oc delete subscription kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

3. Delete the OpenShift Virtualization **ClusterServiceVersion** resource:

```
$ oc delete csv -n openshift-cnv -l operators.coreos.com/kubevirt-hyperconverged.openshift-cnv
```

4. Delete the OpenShift Virtualization namespace:

```
$ oc delete namespace openshift-cnv
```

5. List the OpenShift Virtualization custom resource definitions (CRDs) by running the **oc delete crd** command with the **dry-run** option:

```
$ oc delete crd --dry-run=client -l operators.coreos.com/kubevirt-hyperconverged.openshift-cnv
```

Example output

```
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io "cdis.cdi.kubevirt.io" deleted (dry run)
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io
```

```
"hostpathprovisioners.hostpathprovisioner.kubevirt.io" deleted (dry run)
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io "hyperconvergeds.hco.kubevirt.io" deleted
(dry run)
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io "kubevirtss.kubevirt.io" deleted (dry run)
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io
"networkaddonsconfigs.networkaddonsoperator.network.kubevirt.io" deleted (dry run)
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io "ssps.ssp.kubevirt.io" deleted (dry run)
customresourcedefinition.apiextensions.k8s.io "tektontasks.tektontasks.kubevirt.io" deleted
(dry run)
```

6. Delete the CRDs by running the **oc delete crd** command without the **dry-run** option:

```
$ oc delete crd -l operators.coreos.com/kubevirt-hyperconverged.openshift-cnv
```

Additional resources

- [Deleting virtual machines](#)
- [Deleting virtual machine instances](#)

CHAPTER 5. POSTINSTALLATION CONFIGURATION

5.1. POSTINSTALLATION CONFIGURATION

The following procedures are typically performed after OpenShift Virtualization is installed. You can configure the components that are relevant for your environment:

- [Node placement rules for OpenShift Virtualization Operators, workloads, and controllers](#)
- [Network configuration:](#)
 - Installing the Kubernetes NMState and SR-IOV Operators
 - Configuring a Linux bridge network for external access to virtual machines (VMs)
 - Configuring a dedicated secondary network for live migration
 - Configuring an SR-IOV network
 - Enabling the creation of load balancer services by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console
- [Storage configuration:](#)
 - Defining a default storage class for the Container Storage Interface (CSI)
 - Configuring local storage by using the Hostpath Provisioner (HPP)

5.2. SPECIFYING NODES FOR OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION COMPONENTS

The default scheduling for virtual machines (VMs) on bare metal nodes is appropriate. Optionally, you can specify the nodes where you want to deploy OpenShift Virtualization Operators, workloads, and controllers by configuring node placement rules.



NOTE

You can configure node placement rules for some components after installing OpenShift Virtualization, but virtual machines cannot be present if you want to configure node placement rules for workloads.

5.2.1. About node placement rules for OpenShift Virtualization components

You can use node placement rules for the following tasks:

- Deploy virtual machines only on nodes intended for virtualization workloads.
- Deploy Operators only on infrastructure nodes.
- Maintain separation between workloads.

Depending on the object, you can use one or more of the following rule types:

nodeSelector

Allows pods to be scheduled on nodes that are labeled with the key-value pair or pairs that you specify in this field. The node must have labels that exactly match all listed pairs.

affinity

Enables you to use more expressive syntax to set rules that match nodes with pods. Affinity also allows for more nuance in how the rules are applied. For example, you can specify that a rule is a preference, not a requirement. If a rule is a preference, pods are still scheduled when the rule is not satisfied.

tolerations

Allows pods to be scheduled on nodes that have matching taints. If a taint is applied to a node, that node only accepts pods that tolerate the taint.

5.2.2. Applying node placement rules

You can apply node placement rules by editing a **Subscription**, **HyperConverged**, or **HostPathProvisioner** object using the command line.

Prerequisites

- The **oc** CLI tool is installed.
- You are logged in with cluster administrator permissions.

Procedure

1. Edit the object in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit <resource_type> <resource_name> -n {CNVNamespace}
```

2. Save the file to apply the changes.

5.2.3. Node placement rule examples

You can specify node placement rules for a OpenShift Virtualization component by editing a **Subscription**, **HyperConverged**, or **HostPathProvisioner** object.

5.2.3.1. Subscription object node placement rule examples

To specify the nodes where OLM deploys the OpenShift Virtualization Operators, edit the **Subscription** object during OpenShift Virtualization installation.

Currently, you cannot configure node placement rules for the **Subscription** object by using the web console.

The **Subscription** object does not support the **affinity** node placement rule.

Example Subscription object with nodeSelector rule

```
apiVersion: operators.coreos.com/v1alpha1
kind: Subscription
metadata:
  name: hco-operatorhub
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
```

```

source: redhat-operators
sourceNamespace: openshift-marketplace
name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
startingCSV: kubevirt-hyperconverged-operator.v4.16.0
channel: "stable"
config:
  nodeSelector:
    example.io/example-infra-key: example-infra-value ①

```

- ① OLM deploys the OpenShift Virtualization Operators on nodes labeled **example.io/example-infra-key = example-infra-value**.

Example Subscription object with tolerations rule

```

apiVersion: operators.coreos.com/v1alpha1
kind: Subscription
metadata:
  name: hco-operatorhub
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  source: redhat-operators
  sourceNamespace: openshift-marketplace
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  startingCSV: kubevirt-hyperconverged-operator.v4.16.0
  channel: "stable"
  config:
    tolerations:
      - key: "key"
        operator: "Equal"
        value: "virtualization" ①
        effect: "NoSchedule"

```

- ① OLM deploys OpenShift Virtualization Operators on nodes labeled **key = virtualization:NoSchedule** taint. Only pods with the matching tolerations are scheduled on these nodes.

5.2.3.2. HyperConverged object node placement rule example

To specify the nodes where OpenShift Virtualization deploys its components, you can edit the **nodePlacement** object in the HyperConverged custom resource (CR) file that you create during OpenShift Virtualization installation.

Example HyperConverged object with nodeSelector rule

```

apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  infra:
    nodePlacement:

```

```

nodeSelector:
  example.io/example-infra-key: example-infra-value ①
workloads:
  nodePlacement:
    nodeSelector:
      example.io/example-workloads-key: example-workloads-value ②

```

- ① Infrastructure resources are placed on nodes labeled **example.io/example-infra-key = example-infra-value**.
- ② workloads are placed on nodes labeled **example.io/example-workloads-key = example-workloads-value**.

Example HyperConverged object with affinity rule

```

apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  infra:
    nodePlacement:
      affinity:
        nodeAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            nodeSelectorTerms:
              - matchExpressions:
                  - key: example.io/example-infra-key
                    operator: In
                    values:
                      - example-infra-value ①
  workloads:
    nodePlacement:
      affinity:
        nodeAffinity:
          requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            nodeSelectorTerms:
              - matchExpressions:
                  - key: example.io/example-workloads-key ②
                    operator: In
                    values:
                      - example-workloads-value
          preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution:
            - weight: 1
              preference:
                matchExpressions:
                  - key: example.io/num-cpus
                    operator: Gt
                    values:
                      - 8 ③

```

- ① Infrastructure resources are placed on nodes labeled **example.io/example-infra-key = example-value**.

- 2 workloads are placed on nodes labeled **example.io/example-workloads-key = example-workloads-value**.
- 3 Nodes that have more than eight CPUs are preferred for workloads, but if they are not available, pods are still scheduled.

Example HyperConverged object with **tolerations** rule

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  workloads:
    nodePlacement:
      tolerations: ①
        - key: "key"
          operator: "Equal"
          value: "virtualization"
          effect: "NoSchedule"
```

- 1 Nodes reserved for OpenShift Virtualization components are labeled with the **key = virtualization:NoSchedule** taint. Only pods with matching tolerations are scheduled on reserved nodes.

5.2.3.3. HostPathProvisioner object node placement rule example

You can edit the **HostPathProvisioner** object directly or by using the web console.



WARNING

You must schedule the hostpath provisioner and the OpenShift Virtualization components on the same nodes. Otherwise, virtualization pods that use the hostpath provisioner cannot run. You cannot run virtual machines.

After you deploy a virtual machine (VM) with the hostpath provisioner (HPP) storage class, you can remove the hostpath provisioner pod from the same node by using the node selector. However, you must first revert that change, at least for that specific node, and wait for the pod to run before trying to delete the VM.

You can configure node placement rules by specifying **nodeSelector**, **affinity**, or **tolerations** for the **spec.workload** field of the **HostPathProvisioner** object that you create when you install the hostpath provisioner.

Example HostPathProvisioner object with **nodeSelector** rule

```
apiVersion: hostpathprovisioner.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
```

```

kind: HostPathProvisioner
metadata:
  name: hostpath-provisioner
spec:
  imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  pathConfig:
    path: "</path/to/backing/directory>"
    useNamingPrefix: false
  workload:
    nodeSelector:
      example.io/example-workloads-key: example-workloads-value ①

```

- ① Workloads are placed on nodes labeled **example.io/example-workloads-key = example-workloads-value**.

5.2.4. Additional resources

- Specifying nodes for virtual machines
- Placing pods on specific nodes using node selectors
- Controlling pod placement on nodes using node affinity rules
- Controlling pod placement using node taints

5.3. POSTINSTALLATION NETWORK CONFIGURATION

By default, OpenShift Virtualization is installed with a single, internal pod network.

After you install OpenShift Virtualization, you can install networking Operators and configure additional networks.

5.3.1. Installing networking Operators

You must install the [Kubernetes NMState Operator](#) to configure a Linux bridge network for live migration or external access to virtual machines (VMs). For installation instructions, see [Installing the Kubernetes NMState Operator by using the web console](#).

You can install the [SR-IOV Operator](#) to manage SR-IOV network devices and network attachments. For installation instructions, see [Installing the SR-IOV Network Operator](#).

You can add the [MetalLB Operator](#) to manage the lifecycle for an instance of MetalLB on your cluster. For installation instructions, see [Installing the MetalLB Operator from the OperatorHub using the web console](#).

5.3.2. Configuring a Linux bridge network

After you install the Kubernetes NMState Operator, you can configure a Linux bridge network for live migration or external access to virtual machines (VMs).

5.3.2.1. Creating a Linux bridge NNCP

You can create a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** (NNCP) manifest for a Linux bridge network.

Prerequisites

- You have installed the Kubernetes NMState Operator.

Procedure

- Create the **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** manifest. This example includes sample values that you must replace with your own information.

```
apiVersion: nmstate.io/v1
kind: NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy
metadata:
  name: br1-eth1-policy 1
spec:
  desiredState:
    interfaces:
      - name: br1 2
        description: Linux bridge with eth1 as a port 3
        type: linux-bridge 4
        state: up 5
        ipv4:
          enabled: false 6
        bridge:
          options:
            stp:
              enabled: false 7
        port:
          - name: eth1 8
```

- 1** Name of the policy.
- 2** Name of the interface.
- 3** Optional: Human-readable description of the interface.
- 4** The type of interface. This example creates a bridge.
- 5** The requested state for the interface after creation.
- 6** Disables IPv4 in this example.
- 7** Disables STP in this example.
- 8** The node NIC to which the bridge is attached.

5.3.2.2. Creating a Linux bridge NAD by using the web console

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) to provide layer-2 networking to pods and virtual machines by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

A Linux bridge network attachment definition is the most efficient method for connecting a virtual machine to a VLAN.

**WARNING**

Configuring IP address management (IPAM) in a network attachment definition for virtual machines is not supported.

Procedure

1. In the web console, click **Networking** → **NetworkAttachmentDefinitions**.
2. Click **Create Network Attachment Definition**

**NOTE**

The network attachment definition must be in the same namespace as the pod or virtual machine.

3. Enter a unique **Name** and optional **Description**.
4. Select **CNV Linux bridge** from the **Network Type** list.
5. Enter the name of the bridge in the **Bridge Name** field.
6. Optional: If the resource has VLAN IDs configured, enter the ID numbers in the **VLAN Tag Number** field.
7. Optional: Select **MAC Spoof Check** to enable MAC spoof filtering. This feature provides security against a MAC spoofing attack by allowing only a single MAC address to exit the pod.
8. Click **Create**.

Next steps

- [Attaching a virtual machine \(VM\) to a Linux bridge network](#)

5.3.3. Configuring a network for live migration

After you have configured a Linux bridge network, you can configure a dedicated network for live migration. A dedicated network minimizes the effects of network saturation on tenant workloads during live migration.

5.3.3.1. Configuring a dedicated secondary network for live migration

To configure a dedicated secondary network for live migration, you must first create a bridge network attachment definition (NAD) by using the CLI. Then, you add the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object to the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

Prerequisites

- You installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

- You logged in to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.
- Each node has at least two Network Interface Cards (NICs).
- The NICs for live migration are connected to the same VLAN.

Procedure

1. Create a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** manifest according to the following example:

Example configuration file

```
apiVersion: "k8s.cni.cncf.io/v1"
kind: NetworkAttachmentDefinition
metadata:
  name: my-secondary-network 1
  namespace: openshift-cnv 2
spec:
  config: '{
    "cniVersion": "0.3.1",
    "name": "migration-bridge",
    "type": "macvlan",
    "master": "eth1", 3
    "mode": "bridge",
    "ipam": {
      "type": "whereabouts", 4
      "range": "10.200.5.0/24" 5
    }
}'
```

- 1** Specify the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.
- 2** **3** Specify the name of the NIC to be used for live migration.
- 4** Specify the name of the CNI plugin that provides the network for the NAD.
- 5** Specify an IP address range for the secondary network. This range must not overlap the IP addresses of the main network.

2. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

3. Add the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object to the **spec.liveMigrationConfig** stanza of the **HyperConverged** CR:

Example HyperConverged manifest

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
```

```

liveMigrationConfig:
  completionTimeoutPerGiB: 800
  network: <network> ①
  parallelMigrationsPerCluster: 5
  parallelOutboundMigrationsPerNode: 2
  progressTimeout: 150
# ...

```

- ① Specify the name of the Multus **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object to be used for live migrations.

4. Save your changes and exit the editor. The **virt-handler** pods restart and connect to the secondary network.

Verification

- When the node that the virtual machine runs on is placed into maintenance mode, the VM automatically migrates to another node in the cluster. You can verify that the migration occurred over the secondary network and not the default pod network by checking the target IP address in the virtual machine instance (VMI) metadata.

```
$ oc get vmi <vmi_name> -o jsonpath='{.status.migrationState.targetNodeAddress}'
```

5.3.3.2. Selecting a dedicated network by using the web console

You can select a dedicated network for live migration by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You configured a Multus network for live migration.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization > Overview** in the OpenShift Container Platform web console.
2. Click the **Settings** tab and then click **Live migration**.
3. Select the network from the **Live migration network** list.

5.3.4. Configuring an SR-IOV network

After you install the SR-IOV Operator, you can configure an SR-IOV network.

5.3.4.1. Configuring SR-IOV network devices

The SR-IOV Network Operator adds the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy.sriovnetwork.openshift.io** CustomResourceDefinition to OpenShift Container Platform. You can configure an SR-IOV network device by creating a SriovNetworkNodePolicy custom resource (CR).

**NOTE**

When applying the configuration specified in a **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object, the SR-IOV Operator might drain the nodes, and in some cases, reboot nodes.

It might take several minutes for a configuration change to apply.

Prerequisites

- You installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have access to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.
- You have installed the SR-IOV Network Operator.
- You have enough available nodes in your cluster to handle the evicted workload from drained nodes.
- You have not selected any control plane nodes for SR-IOV network device configuration.

Procedure

- 1 Create an **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object, and then save the YAML in the `<name>-sriv-node-network.yaml` file. Replace `<name>` with the name for this configuration.

```
apiVersion: sriovnetwork.openshift.io/v1
kind: SriovNetworkNodePolicy
metadata:
  name: <name> ①
  namespace: openshift-sriov-network-operator ②
spec:
  resourceName: <sriov_resource_name> ③
  nodeSelector:
    feature.node.kubernetes.io/network-sriov.capable: "true" ④
  priority: <priority> ⑤
  mtu: <mtu> ⑥
  numVfs: <num> ⑦
  nicSelector: ⑧
    vendor: "<vendor_code>" ⑨
    deviceID: "<device_id>" ⑩
    pfNames: ["<pf_name>", ...] ⑪
    rootDevices: ["<pci_bus_id>", "..."] ⑫
  deviceType: vfio-pci ⑬
  isRdma: false ⑭
```

- ① Specify a name for the CR object.
- ② Specify the namespace where the SR-IOV Operator is installed.
- ③ Specify the resource name of the SR-IOV device plugin. You can create multiple **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** objects for a resource name.
- ④ Specify the node selector to select which nodes are configured. Only SR-IOV network

- 5 Optional: Specify an integer value between **0** and **99**. A smaller number gets higher priority, so a priority of **10** is higher than a priority of **99**. The default value is **99**.
- 6 Optional: Specify a value for the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of the virtual function. The maximum MTU value can vary for different NIC models.
- 7 Specify the number of the virtual functions (VF) to create for the SR-IOV physical network device. For an Intel network interface controller (NIC), the number of VFs cannot be larger than the total VFs supported by the device. For a Mellanox NIC, the number of VFs cannot be larger than **127**.
- 8 The **nicSelector** mapping selects the Ethernet device for the Operator to configure. You do not need to specify values for all the parameters. It is recommended to identify the Ethernet adapter with enough precision to minimize the possibility of selecting an Ethernet device unintentionally. If you specify **rootDevices**, you must also specify a value for **vendor**, **deviceID**, or **pfNames**. If you specify both **pfNames** and **rootDevices** at the same time, ensure that they point to an identical device.
- 9 Optional: Specify the vendor hex code of the SR-IOV network device. The only allowed values are either **8086** or **15b3**.
- 10 Optional: Specify the device hex code of SR-IOV network device. The only allowed values are **158b**, **1015**, **1017**.
- 11 Optional: The parameter accepts an array of one or more physical function (PF) names for the Ethernet device.
- 12 The parameter accepts an array of one or more PCI bus addresses for the physical function of the Ethernet device. Provide the address in the following format: **0000:02:00.1**.
- 13 The **vfio-pci** driver type is required for virtual functions in OpenShift Virtualization.
- 14 Optional: Specify whether to enable remote direct memory access (RDMA) mode. For a Mellanox card, set **isRdma** to **false**. The default value is **false**.



NOTE

If **isRDMA** flag is set to **true**, you can continue to use the RDMA enabled VF as a normal network device. A device can be used in either mode.

2. Optional: Label the SR-IOV capable cluster nodes with **SriovNetworkNodePolicy.Spec.NodeSelector** if they are not already labeled. For more information about labeling nodes, see "Understanding how to update labels on nodes".
3. Create the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object:

```
$ oc create -f <name>-sriov-node-network.yaml
```

where **<name>** specifies the name for this configuration.

After applying the configuration update, all the pods in **sriov-network-operator** namespace transition to the **Running** status.

- To verify that the SR-IOV network device is configured, enter the following command. Replace **<node_name>** with the name of a node with the SR-IOV network device that you just configured.

```
$ oc get sriovnetworknodes -n openshift-sriov-network-operator <node_name> -o jsonpath='{.status.syncStatus}'
```

Next steps

- [Attaching a virtual machine \(VM\) to an SR-IOV network](#)

5.3.5. Enabling load balancer service creation by using the web console

You can enable the creation of load balancer services for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You have configured a load balancer for the cluster.
- You are logged in as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.

Procedure

- Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Overview**.
- On the **Settings** tab, click **Cluster**.
- Expand **General settings** and **SSH configuration**.
- Set **SSH over LoadBalancer service** to on.

5.4. POSTINSTALLATION STORAGE CONFIGURATION

The following storage configuration tasks are mandatory:

- You must configure a [default storage class](#) for your cluster. Otherwise, the cluster cannot receive automated boot source updates.
- You must configure [storage profiles](#) if your storage provider is not recognized by CDI. A storage profile provides recommended storage settings based on the associated storage class.

Optional: You can configure local storage by using the hostpath provisioner (HPP).

See the [storage configuration overview](#) for more options, including configuring the Containerized Data Importer (CDI), data volumes, and automatic boot source updates.

5.4.1. Configuring local storage by using the HPP

When you install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator, the Hostpath Provisioner (HPP) Operator is automatically installed. The HPP Operator creates the HPP provisioner.

The HPP is a local storage provisioner designed for OpenShift Virtualization. To use the HPP, you must create an HPP custom resource (CR).



IMPORTANT

HPP storage pools must not be in the same partition as the operating system. Otherwise, the storage pools might fill the operating system partition. If the operating system partition is full, performance can be effected or the node can become unstable or unusable.

5.4.1.1. Creating a storage class for the CSI driver with the storagePools stanza

To use the hostpath provisioner (HPP) you must create an associated storage class for the Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver.

When you create a storage class, you set parameters that affect the dynamic provisioning of persistent volumes (PVs) that belong to that storage class. You cannot update a **StorageClass** object's parameters after you create it.



NOTE

Virtual machines use data volumes that are based on local PVs. Local PVs are bound to specific nodes. While a disk image is prepared for consumption by the virtual machine, it is possible that the virtual machine cannot be scheduled to the node where the local storage PV was previously pinned.

To solve this problem, use the Kubernetes pod scheduler to bind the persistent volume claim (PVC) to a PV on the correct node. By using the **StorageClass** value with **volumeBindingMode** parameter set to **WaitForFirstConsumer**, the binding and provisioning of the PV is delayed until a pod is created using the PVC.

Procedure

- 1 Create a **storageclass_csi.yaml** file to define the storage class:

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: hostpath-csi
provisioner: kubevirt.io.hostpath-provisioner
reclaimPolicy: Delete ①
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer ②
parameters:
  storagePool: my-storage-pool ③
```

- 1 The two possible **reclaimPolicy** values are **Delete** and **Retain**. If you do not specify a value, the default value is **Delete**.
- 2 The **volumeBindingMode** parameter determines when dynamic provisioning and volume binding occur. Specify **WaitForFirstConsumer** to delay the binding and provisioning of a persistent volume (PV) until after a pod that uses the persistent volume claim (PVC) is created. This ensures that the PV meets the pod's scheduling requirements.
- 3 Specify the name of the storage pool defined in the HPP CR.

- 2 Save the file and exit.

3. Create the **StorageClass** object by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f storageclass_csi.yaml
```

5.5. CONFIGURING HIGHER VM WORKLOAD DENSITY

To increase the number of virtual machines (VMs), you can configure a higher VM workload density in your cluster by overcommitting the amount of memory (RAM).



IMPORTANT

Configuring higher workload density is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

The following workloads are especially suited for higher workload density:

- Many similar workloads
- Underused workloads



NOTE

While overcommitted memory can lead to a higher workload density, it can also lower workload performance of a highly utilized system.

5.5.1. Using wasp-agent to configure higher VM workload density

The **wasp-agent** component enables an OpenShift Container Platform cluster to assign swap resources to virtual machine (VM) workloads. Swap usage is only supported on worker nodes.



IMPORTANT

Swap resources can be only assigned to virtual machine workloads (VM pods) of the **Burstable** Quality of Service (QoS) class. VM pods of the **Guaranteed** QoS class and pods of any QoS class that do not belong to VMs cannot swap resources.

For descriptions of QoS classes, see [Configure Quality of Service for Pods](#) (Kubernetes documentation).

Prerequisites

- The **oc** tool is available.
- You are logged into the cluster with the cluster-admin role.
- A memory over-commit ratio is defined.

- The node belongs to a worker pool.

Procedure

1. Create a privileged service account by entering the following commands:

```
$ oc adm new-project wasp  
$ oc create sa -n wasp wasp  
$ oc create clusterrolebinding wasp --clusterrole=cluster-admin --serviceaccount=wasp:wasp  
$ oc adm policy add-scc-to-user -n wasp privileged -z wasp
```



NOTE

The **wasp-agent** component deploys an OCI hook to enable swap usage for containers on the node level. The low-level nature requires the **DaemonSet** object to be privileged.

2. Deploy **wasp-agent** by creating a **DaemonSet** object as follows:

```
kind: DaemonSet  
apiVersion: apps/v1  
metadata:  
  name: wasp-agent  
  namespace: wasp  
  labels:  
    app: wasp  
    tier: node  
spec:  
  selector:  
    matchLabels:  
      name: wasp  
  template:  
    metadata:  
      annotations:  
        description: >-  
          Configures swap for workloads  
      labels:  
        name: wasp  
    spec:  
      serviceAccountName: wasp  
      hostPID: true  
      hostUsers: true  
      terminationGracePeriodSeconds: 5  
      containers:  
        - name: wasp-agent  
          image: >-  
            registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/wasp-agent-rhel9:v4.16  
          imagePullPolicy: Always  
          env:  
            - name: "FSROOT"
```

```

    value: "/host"
resources:
  requests:
    cpu: 100m
    memory: 50M
  securityContext:
    privileged: true
  volumeMounts:
    - name: host
      mountPath: "/host"
  volumes:
    - name: host
      hostPath:
        path: "/"
  priorityClassName: system-node-critical
updateStrategy:
  type: RollingUpdate
  rollingUpdate:
    maxUnavailable: 10%
    maxSurge: 0
status: {}

```

3. Configure the **kubelet** service to permit swap:

- a. Create a **KubeletConfiguration** file as shown in the example:

Example of a KubeletConfiguration file

```

apiVersion: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/v1
kind: KubeletConfig
metadata:
  name: custom-config
spec:
  machineConfigPoolSelector:
    matchLabels:
      pools.operator.machineconfiguration.openshift.io/worker: " # MCP
      #machine.openshift.io/cluster-api-machine-role: worker # machine
      #node-role.kubernetes.io/worker: " # node
  kubeletConfig:
    failSwapOn: false
    evictionSoft:
      memory.available: "1Gi"
    evictionSoftGracePeriod:
      memory.available: "10s"

```

If the cluster is already using an existing **KubeletConfiguration** file, add the following to the **spec** section:

```

apiVersion: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/v1
kind: KubeletConfig
metadata:
  name: custom-config
# ...
spec
# ...

```

```

kubeletConfig:
  evictionSoft:
    memory.available: 1Gi
  evictionSoftGracePeriod:
    memory.available: 1m30s
  failSwapOn: false

```

- b. Run the following command:

```
$ oc wait mcp worker --for condition=Updated=True
```

4. Create a **MachineConfig** object to provision swap as follows:

```

apiVersion: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/v1
kind: MachineConfig
metadata:
  labels:
    machineconfiguration.openshift.io/role: worker
  name: 90-worker-swap
spec:
  config:
    ignition:
      version: 3.4.0
    systemd:
      units:
        - contents: |
            [Unit]
            Description=Provision and enable swap
            ConditionFirstBoot=no

            [Service]
            Type=oneshot
            Environment=SWAP_SIZE_MB=5000
            ExecStart=/bin/sh -c "sudo dd if=/dev/zero of=/var/tmp/swapfile
            count=${SWAP_SIZE_MB} bs=1M && \
            sudo chmod 600 /var/tmp/swapfile && \
            sudo mkswap /var/tmp/swapfile && \
            sudo swapon /var/tmp/swapfile && \
            free -h && \
            sudo systemctl set-property --runtime system.slice MemorySwapMax=0
            IODeviceLatencyTargetSec=\"/ 50ms\""

            [Install]
            RequiredBy=kubelet-dependencies.target
            enabled: true
            name: swap-provision.service

```

To have enough swap space for the worst-case scenario, make sure to have at least as much swap space provisioned as overcommitted RAM. Calculate the amount of swap space to be provisioned on a node using the following formula:

```
NODE_SWAP_SPACE = NODE_RAM * (MEMORY_OVER_COMMIT_PERCENT / 100% - 1)
```

Example:

```

NODE_SWAP_SPACE = 16 GB * (150% / 100% - 1)
= 16 GB * (1.5 - 1)
= 16 GB * (0.5)
= 8 GB

```

5. Deploy alerting rules as follows:

```

apiVersion: monitoring.openshift.io/v1
kind: AlertingRule
metadata:
  name: wasp-alerts
  namespace: openshift-monitoring
spec:
  groups:
    - name: wasp.rules
      rules:
        - alert: NodeSwapping
          annotations:
            description: Node {{ $labels.instance }} is swapping at a rate of {{ printf "%.2f" $value }} MB/s
            runbook_url: https://github.com/openshift-virtualization/wasp-agent/tree/main/runbooks/alerts/NodeSwapping.md
            summary: A node is swapping memory pages
          expr: |
            # In MB/s
            irate(node_memory_SwapFree_bytes{job="node-exporter"}[5m]) / 1024^2 > 0
          for: 1m
          labels:
            severity: critical

```

6. Configure OpenShift Virtualization to use memory overcommit either by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or by editing the HyperConverged custom resource (CR) file as shown in the following example.

Example:

```

apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
  higherWorkloadDensity:
    memoryOvercommitPercentage: 150

```

7. Apply all the configurations to compute nodes in your cluster by entering the following command:

```

$ oc patch --type=merge \
-f ../../manifests/hco-set-memory-overcommit.yaml \
--patch-file ../../manifests/hco-set-memory-overcommit.yaml

```

**NOTE**

After applying all configurations, the swap feature is fully available only after all **MachineConfigPool** rollouts are complete.

Verification

1. To verify the deployment of **wasp-agent**, run the following command:

```
$ oc rollout status ds wasp-agent -n wasp
```

If the deployment is successful, the following message is displayed:

```
daemon set "wasp-agent" successfully rolled out
```

2. To verify that swap is correctly provisioned, do the following:

- a. Run the following command:

```
$ oc get nodes -l node-role.kubernetes.io/worker
```

- b. Select a node from the provided list and run the following command:

```
$ oc debug node/<selected-node> -- free -m
```

If swap is provisioned correctly, an amount greater than zero is displayed, similar to the following:

	total	used	free	shared	buff/cache	available
Mem:	31846	23155	1044	6014	14483	8690
Swap:	8191	2337	5854			

3. Verify the OpenShift Virtualization memory overcommitment configuration by running the following command:

```
$ oc get -n openshift-cnv HyperConverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -o jsonpath=".spec.higherWorkloadDensity.memoryOvercommitPercentage"}"
```

150

The returned value, for example **150**, must match the value you had previously configured.

CHAPTER 6. UPDATING

6.1. UPDATING OPENSHIFT VIRTUALIZATION

Learn how Operator Lifecycle Manager (OLM) delivers z-stream and minor version updates for OpenShift Virtualization.

6.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization on RHEL 9

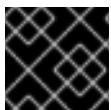
OpenShift Virtualization 4.16 is based on Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9. You can update to OpenShift Virtualization 4.16 from a version that was based on RHEL 8 by following the standard OpenShift Virtualization update procedure. No additional steps are required.

As in previous versions, you can perform the update without disrupting running workloads. OpenShift Virtualization 4.16 supports live migration from RHEL 8 nodes to RHEL 9 nodes.

6.1.1.1. RHEL 9 machine type

All VM templates that are included with OpenShift Virtualization now use the RHEL 9 machine type by default: **machineType: pc-q35-rhel9.<y>.0**, where <y> is a single digit corresponding to the latest minor version of RHEL 9. For example, the value **pc-q35-rhel9.2.0** is used for RHEL 9.2.

Updating OpenShift Virtualization does not change the **machineType** value of any existing VMs. These VMs continue to function as they did before the update. You can optionally change a VM's machine type so that it can benefit from RHEL 9 improvements.



IMPORTANT

Before you change a VM's **machineType** value, you must shut down the VM.

6.1.2. About updating OpenShift Virtualization

- Operator Lifecycle Manager (OLM) manages the lifecycle of the OpenShift Virtualization Operator. The Marketplace Operator, which is deployed during OpenShift Container Platform installation, makes external Operators available to your cluster.
- OLM provides z-stream and minor version updates for OpenShift Virtualization. Minor version updates become available when you update OpenShift Container Platform to the next minor version. You cannot update OpenShift Virtualization to the next minor version without first updating OpenShift Container Platform.
- OpenShift Virtualization subscriptions use a single update channel that is named **stable**. The **stable** channel ensures that your OpenShift Virtualization and OpenShift Container Platform versions are compatible.
- If your subscription's approval strategy is set to **Automatic**, the update process starts as soon as a new version of the Operator is available in the **stable** channel. It is highly recommended to use the **Automatic** approval strategy to maintain a supportable environment. Each minor version of OpenShift Virtualization is only supported if you run the corresponding OpenShift Container Platform version. For example, you must run OpenShift Virtualization 4.16 on OpenShift Container Platform 4.16.
 - Though it is possible to select the **Manual** approval strategy, this is not recommended because it risks the supportability and functionality of your cluster. With the **Manual**

approval strategy, you must manually approve every pending update. If OpenShift Container Platform and OpenShift Virtualization updates are out of sync, your cluster becomes unsupported.

- The amount of time an update takes to complete depends on your network connection. Most automatic updates complete within fifteen minutes.
- Updating OpenShift Virtualization does not interrupt network connections.
- Data volumes and their associated persistent volume claims are preserved during update.



IMPORTANT

If you have virtual machines running that use hostpath provisioner storage, they cannot be live migrated and might block an OpenShift Container Platform cluster update.

As a workaround, you can reconfigure the virtual machines so that they can be powered off automatically during a cluster update. Set the **evictionStrategy** field to **None** and the **runStrategy** field to **Always**.

6.1.2.1. About workload updates

When you update OpenShift Virtualization, virtual machine workloads, including **libvirt**, **virt-launcher**, and **qemu**, update automatically if they support live migration.



NOTE

Each virtual machine has a **virt-launcher** pod that runs the virtual machine instance (VMI). The **virt-launcher** pod runs an instance of **libvirt**, which is used to manage the virtual machine (VM) process.

You can configure how workloads are updated by editing the **spec.workloadUpdateStrategy** stanza of the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). There are two available workload update methods: **LiveMigrate** and **Evict**.

Because the **Evict** method shuts down VMI pods, only the **LiveMigrate** update strategy is enabled by default.

When **LiveMigrate** is the only update strategy enabled:

- VMIs that support live migration are migrated during the update process. The VM guest moves into a new pod with the updated components enabled.
- VMIs that do not support live migration are not disrupted or updated.
 - If a VMI has the **LiveMigrate** eviction strategy but does not support live migration, it is not updated.

If you enable both **LiveMigrate** and **Evict**:

- VMIs that support live migration use the **LiveMigrate** update strategy.
- VMIs that do not support live migration use the **Evict** update strategy. If a VMI is controlled by a **VirtualMachine** object that has **runStrategy: Always** set, a new VMI is created in a new pod with updated components.

Migration attempts and timeouts

When updating workloads, live migration fails if a pod is in the **Pending** state for the following periods:

5 minutes

If the pod is pending because it is **Unschedulable**.

15 minutes

If the pod is stuck in the pending state for any reason.

When a VMI fails to migrate, the **virt-controller** tries to migrate it again. It repeats this process until all migratable VMIs are running on new **virt-launcher** pods. If a VMI is improperly configured, however, these attempts can repeat indefinitely.



NOTE

Each attempt corresponds to a migration object. Only the five most recent attempts are held in a buffer. This prevents migration objects from accumulating on the system while retaining information for debugging.

6.1.2.2. About EUS-to-EUS updates

Every even-numbered minor version of OpenShift Container Platform, including 4.10 and 4.12, is an Extended Update Support (EUS) version. However, because Kubernetes design mandates serial minor version updates, you cannot directly update from one EUS version to the next.

After you update from the source EUS version to the next odd-numbered minor version, you must sequentially update OpenShift Virtualization to all z-stream releases of that minor version that are on your update path. When you have upgraded to the latest applicable z-stream version, you can then update OpenShift Container Platform to the target EUS minor version.

When the OpenShift Container Platform update succeeds, the corresponding update for OpenShift Virtualization becomes available. You can now update OpenShift Virtualization to the target EUS version.

6.1.2.2.1. Preparing to update

Before beginning an EUS-to-EUS update, you must:

- Pause worker nodes' machine config pools before you start an EUS-to-EUS update so that the workers are not rebooted twice.
- Disable automatic workload updates before you begin the update process. This is to prevent OpenShift Virtualization from migrating or evicting your virtual machines (VMs) until you update to your target EUS version.



NOTE

By default, OpenShift Virtualization automatically updates workloads, such as the **virt-launcher** pod, when you update the OpenShift Virtualization Operator. You can configure this behavior in the **spec.workloadUpdateStrategy** stanza of the **HyperConverged** custom resource.

Learn more about [performing an EUS-to-EUS update](#).

6.1.3. Preventing workload updates during an EUS-to-EUS update

When you update from one Extended Update Support (EUS) version to the next, you must manually disable automatic workload updates to prevent OpenShift Virtualization from migrating or evicting workloads during the update process.

Prerequisites

- You are running an EUS version of OpenShift Container Platform and want to update to the next EUS version. You have not yet updated to the odd-numbered version in between.
- You read "Preparing to perform an EUS-to-EUS update" and learned the caveats and requirements that pertain to your OpenShift Container Platform cluster.
- You paused the worker nodes' machine config pools as directed by the OpenShift Container Platform documentation.
- It is recommended that you use the default **Automatic** approval strategy. If you use the **Manual** approval strategy, you must approve all pending updates in the web console. For more details, refer to the "Manually approving a pending Operator update" section.

Procedure

1. Run the following command and record the **workloadUpdateMethods** configuration:

```
$ oc get kv kubevirt-kubevirt-hyperconverged \
-n openshift-cnv -o jsonpath='{.spec.workloadUpdateStrategy.workloadUpdateMethods}'
```

2. Turn off all workload update methods by running the following command:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type json -p
'[{"op":"replace","path":"/spec/workloadUpdateStrategy/workloadUpdateMethods", "value":[]}]'
```

Example output

```
hyperconverged.hco.kubevirt.io/kubevirt-hyperconverged patched
```

3. Ensure that the **HyperConverged** Operator is **Upgradeable** before you continue. Enter the following command and monitor the output:

```
$ oc get hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv -o json | jq
".status.conditions"
```

Example 6.1. Example output

```
[  
 {  
   "lastTransitionTime": "2022-12-09T16:29:11Z",  
   "message": "Reconcile completed successfully",  
   "observedGeneration": 3,  
   "reason": "ReconcileCompleted",  
   "status": "True",  
   "type": "ReconcileComplete"
```

```

},
{
  "lastTransitionTime": "2022-12-09T20:30:10Z",
  "message": "Reconcile completed successfully",
  "observedGeneration": 3,
  "reason": "ReconcileCompleted",
  "status": "True",
  "type": "Available"
},
{
  "lastTransitionTime": "2022-12-09T20:30:10Z",
  "message": "Reconcile completed successfully",
  "observedGeneration": 3,
  "reason": "ReconcileCompleted",
  "status": "False",
  "type": "Progressing"
},
{
  "lastTransitionTime": "2022-12-09T16:39:11Z",
  "message": "Reconcile completed successfully",
  "observedGeneration": 3,
  "reason": "ReconcileCompleted",
  "status": "False",
  "type": "Degraded"
},
{
  "lastTransitionTime": "2022-12-09T20:30:10Z",
  "message": "Reconcile completed successfully",
  "observedGeneration": 3,
  "reason": "ReconcileCompleted",
  "status": "True",
  "type": "Upgradeable" ①
}
]

```

① The OpenShift Virtualization Operator has the **Upgradeable** status.

- Manually update your cluster from the source EUS version to the next minor version of OpenShift Container Platform:

```
$ oc adm upgrade
```

Verification

- Check the current version by running the following command:

```
$ oc get clusterversion
```

**NOTE**

Updating OpenShift Container Platform to the next version is a prerequisite for updating OpenShift Virtualization. For more details, refer to the "Updating clusters" section of the OpenShift Container Platform documentation.

5. Update OpenShift Virtualization.

- With the default **Automatic** approval strategy, OpenShift Virtualization automatically updates to the corresponding version after you update OpenShift Container Platform.
- If you use the **Manual** approval strategy, approve the pending updates by using the web console.

6. Monitor the OpenShift Virtualization update by running the following command:

```
$ oc get csv -n openshift-cnv
```

7. Update OpenShift Virtualization to every z-stream version that is available for the non-EUS minor version, monitoring each update by running the command shown in the previous step.
8. Confirm that OpenShift Virtualization successfully updated to the latest z-stream release of the non-EUS version by running the following command:

```
$ oc get hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv -o json | jq ".status.versions"
```

Example output

```
[  
  {  
    "name": "operator",  
    "version": "4.16.0"  
  }  
]
```

9. Wait until the **HyperConverged** Operator has the **Upgradeable** status before you perform the next update. Enter the following command and monitor the output:

```
$ oc get hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv -o json | jq ".status.conditions"
```

10. Update OpenShift Container Platform to the target EUS version.

11. Confirm that the update succeeded by checking the cluster version:

```
$ oc get clusterversion
```

12. Update OpenShift Virtualization to the target EUS version.

- With the default **Automatic** approval strategy, OpenShift Virtualization automatically updates to the corresponding version after you update OpenShift Container Platform.

- If you use the **Manual** approval strategy, approve the pending updates by using the web console.
13. Monitor the OpenShift Virtualization update by running the following command:

```
$ oc get csv -n openshift-cnv
```

The update completes when the **VERSION** field matches the target EUS version and the **PHASE** field reads **Succeeded**.

14. Restore the **workloadUpdateMethods** configuration that you recorded from step 1 with the following command:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv --type json -p \
"[{"op":"add","path":"/spec/workloadUpdateStrategy/workloadUpdateMethods",
"value":{WorkloadUpdateMethodConfig}}]"
```

Example output

```
hyperconverged.hco.kubevirt.io/kubevirt-hyperconverged patched
```

Verification

- Check the status of VM migration by running the following command:

```
$ oc get vmi -A
```

Next steps

- You can now unpause the worker nodes' machine config pools.

6.1.4. Configuring workload update methods

You can configure workload update methods by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

Prerequisites

- To use live migration as an update method, you must first enable live migration in the cluster.



NOTE

If a **VirtualMachineInstance** CR contains **evictionStrategy: LiveMigrate** and the virtual machine instance (VMI) does not support live migration, the VMI will not update.

Procedure

1. To open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor, run the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Edit the **workloadUpdateStrategy** stanza of the **HyperConverged** CR. For example:

```

apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
  workloadUpdateStrategy:
    workloadUpdateMethods: ①
      - LiveMigrate ②
      - Evict ③
    batchEvictionSize: 10 ④
    batchEvictionInterval: "1m0s" ⑤
# ...

```

- ① The methods that can be used to perform automated workload updates. The available values are **LiveMigrate** and **Evict**. If you enable both options as shown in this example, updates use **LiveMigrate** for VMIs that support live migration and **Evict** for any VMIs that do not support live migration. To disable automatic workload updates, you can either remove the **workloadUpdateStrategy** stanza or set **workloadUpdateMethods: []** to leave the array empty.
- ② The least disruptive update method. VMIs that support live migration are updated by migrating the virtual machine (VM) guest into a new pod with the updated components enabled. If **LiveMigrate** is the only workload update method listed, VMIs that do not support live migration are not disrupted or updated.
- ③ A disruptive method that shuts down VMI pods during upgrade. **Evict** is the only update method available if live migration is not enabled in the cluster. If a VMI is controlled by a **VirtualMachine** object that has **runStrategy: Always** configured, a new VMI is created in a new pod with updated components.
- ④ The number of VMIs that can be forced to be updated at a time by using the **Evict** method. This does not apply to the **LiveMigrate** method.
- ⑤ The interval to wait before evicting the next batch of workloads. This does not apply to the **LiveMigrate** method.



NOTE

You can configure live migration limits and timeouts by editing the **spec.liveMigrationConfig** stanza of the **HyperConverged** CR.

3. To apply your changes, save and exit the editor.

6.1.5. Approving pending Operator updates

6.1.5.1. Manually approving a pending Operator update

If an installed Operator has the approval strategy in its subscription set to **Manual**, when new updates are released in its current update channel, the update must be manually approved before installation can begin.

Prerequisites

- An Operator previously installed using Operator Lifecycle Manager (OLM).

Procedure

1. In the **Administrator** perspective of the OpenShift Container Platform web console, navigate to **Operators → Installed Operators**.
2. Operators that have a pending update display a status with **Upgrade available**. Click the name of the Operator you want to update.
3. Click the **Subscription** tab. Any updates requiring approval are displayed next to **Upgrade status**. For example, it might display **1 requires approval**.
4. Click **1 requires approval**, then click **Preview Install Plan**.
5. Review the resources that are listed as available for update. When satisfied, click **Approve**.
6. Navigate back to the **Operators → Installed Operators** page to monitor the progress of the update. When complete, the status changes to **Succeeded** and **Up to date**.

6.1.6. Monitoring update status

6.1.6.1. Monitoring OpenShift Virtualization upgrade status

To monitor the status of a OpenShift Virtualization Operator upgrade, watch the cluster service version (CSV) **PHASE**. You can also monitor the CSV conditions in the web console or by running the command provided here.



NOTE

The **PHASE** and conditions values are approximations that are based on available information.

Prerequisites

- Log in to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.
- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

Procedure

1. Run the following command:

```
$ oc get csv -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Review the output, checking the **PHASE** field. For example:

Example output

VERSION	REPLACES	PHASE
4.9.0	kubevirt-hyperconverged-operator.v4.8.2	Installing
4.9.0	kubevirt-hyperconverged-operator.v4.9.0	Replacing

3. Optional: Monitor the aggregated status of all OpenShift Virtualization component conditions by running the following command:

```
$ oc get hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
-o=jsonpath='{range .status.conditions[*]}{.type}{"\t"}{.status}{"\t"}{.message}{"\n"}{end}'
```

A successful upgrade results in the following output:

Example output

ReconcileComplete	True	Reconcile completed successfully
Available	True	Reconcile completed successfully
Progressing	False	Reconcile completed successfully
Degraded	False	Reconcile completed successfully
Upgradeable	True	Reconcile completed successfully

6.1.6.2. Viewing outdated OpenShift Virtualization workloads

You can view a list of outdated workloads by using the CLI.



NOTE

If there are outdated virtualization pods in your cluster, the **OutdatedVirtualMachineInstanceWorkloads** alert fires.

Procedure

- To view a list of outdated virtual machine instances (VMIs), run the following command:

```
$ oc get vmi -l kubevirt.io/outdatedLauncherImage --all-namespaces
```



NOTE

Configure workload updates to ensure that VMIs update automatically.

6.1.7. Additional resources

- [Performing an EUS-to-EUS update](#)
- [What are Operators?](#)
- [Operator Lifecycle Manager concepts and resources](#)
- [Cluster service versions \(CSVs\)](#)
- [About live migration](#)
- [Configuring eviction strategies](#)
- [Configuring live migration limits and timeouts](#)

CHAPTER 7. VIRTUAL MACHINES

7.1. CREATING VMs FROM RED HAT IMAGES

7.1.1. Creating virtual machines from Red Hat images overview

Red Hat images are [golden images](#). They are published as container disks in a secure registry. The Containerized Data Importer (CDI) polls and imports the container disks into your cluster and stores them in the **openshift-virtualization-os-images** project as snapshots or persistent volume claims (PVCs).

Red Hat images are automatically updated. You can disable and re-enable automatic updates for these images. See [Managing Red Hat boot source updates](#).

Cluster administrators can enable automatic subscription for Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) virtual machines in the OpenShift Virtualization [web console](#).

You can create virtual machines (VMs) from operating system images provided by Red Hat by using one of the following methods:

- [Creating a VM from a template by using the web console](#)
- [Creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console](#)
- [Creating a VM from a **VirtualMachine** manifest by using the command line](#)



IMPORTANT

Do not create VMs in the default **openshift-*** namespaces. Instead, create a new namespace or use an existing namespace without the **openshift** prefix.

7.1.1.1. About golden images

A golden image is a preconfigured snapshot of a virtual machine (VM) that you can use as a resource to deploy new VMs. For example, you can use golden images to provision the same system environment consistently and deploy systems more quickly and efficiently.

7.1.1.1.1. How do golden images work?

Golden images are created by installing and configuring an operating system and software applications on a reference machine or virtual machine. This includes setting up the system, installing required drivers, applying patches and updates, and configuring specific options and preferences.

After the golden image is created, it is saved as a template or image file that can be replicated and deployed across multiple clusters. The golden image can be updated by its maintainer periodically to incorporate necessary software updates and patches, ensuring that the image remains up to date and secure, and newly created VMs are based on this updated image.

7.1.1.1.2. Red Hat implementation of golden images

Red Hat publishes golden images as container disks in the registry for versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL). Container disks are virtual machine images that are stored as a container image in a container image registry. Any published image will automatically be made available in connected clusters

after the installation of OpenShift Virtualization. After the images are available in a cluster, they are ready to use to create VMs.

7.1.1.2. About VM boot sources

Virtual machines (VMs) consist of a VM definition and one or more disks that are backed by data volumes. VM templates enable you to create VMs using predefined specifications.

Every template requires a boot source, which is a fully configured disk image including configured drivers. Each template contains a VM definition with a pointer to the boot source. Each boot source has a predefined name and namespace. For some operating systems, a boot source is automatically provided. If it is not provided, then an administrator must prepare a custom boot source.

Provided boot sources are updated automatically to the latest version of the operating system. For auto-updated boot sources, persistent volume claims (PVCs) and volume snapshots are created with the cluster's default storage class. If you select a different default storage class after configuration, you must delete the existing boot sources in the cluster namespace that are configured with the previous default storage class.

7.1.2. Creating virtual machines from instance types

You can simplify virtual machine (VM) creation by using instance types, whether you use the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the CLI to create VMs.

7.1.2.1. About instance types

An instance type is a reusable object where you can define resources and characteristics to apply to new VMs. You can define custom instance types or use the variety that are included when you install OpenShift Virtualization.

To create a new instance type, you must first create a manifest, either manually or by using the `virtctl` CLI tool. You then create the instance type object by applying the manifest to your cluster.

OpenShift Virtualization provides two CRDs for configuring instance types:

- A namespaced object: **VirtualMachineInstancetype**
- A cluster-wide object: **VirtualMachineClusterInstancetype**

These objects use the same **VirtualMachineInstancetypeSpec**.

7.1.2.1.1. Required attributes

When you configure an instance type, you must define the **cpu** and **memory** attributes. Other attributes are optional.



NOTE

When you create a VM from an instance type, you cannot override any parameters defined in the instance type.

Because instance types require defined CPU and memory attributes, OpenShift Virtualization always rejects additional requests for these resources when creating a VM from an instance type.

You can manually create an instance type manifest. For example:

Example YAML file with required fields

```
apiVersion:instancetype.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: VirtualMachineInstancetype
metadata:
  name: example-instancetype
spec:
  cpu:
    guest: 1 1
  memory:
    guest: 128Mi 2
```

- 1** Required. Specifies the number of vCPUs to allocate to the guest.
- 2** Required. Specifies an amount of memory to allocate to the guest.

You can create an instance type manifest by using the **virtctl** CLI utility. For example:

Example virtctl command with required fields

```
$ virtctl createinstancetype --cpu 2 --memory 256Mi
```

where:

--cpu <value>

Specifies the number of vCPUs to allocate to the guest. Required.

--memory <value>

Specifies an amount of memory to allocate to the guest. Required.

TIP

You can immediately create the object from the new manifest by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl createinstancetype --cpu 2 --memory 256Mi | oc apply -f -
```

7.1.2.1.2. Optional attributes

In addition to the required **cpu** and **memory** attributes, you can include the following optional attributes in the **VirtualMachineInstancetypeSpec**:

annotations

List annotations to apply to the VM.

gpus

List vGPUs for passthrough.

hostDevices

List host devices for passthrough.

ioThreadsPolicy

Define an IO threads policy for managing dedicated disk access.

launchSecurity

Configure Secure Encrypted Virtualization (SEV).

nodeSelector

Specify node selectors to control the nodes where this VM is scheduled.

schedulerName

Define a custom scheduler to use for this VM instead of the default scheduler.

7.1.2.2. Pre-defined instance types

OpenShift Virtualization includes a set of pre-defined instance types called **common-instancetypes**. Some are specialized for specific workloads and others are workload-agnostic.

These instance type resources are named according to their series, version, and size. The size value follows the `.` delimiter and ranges from **nano** to **8xlarge**.

Table 7.1. common-instancetypes series comparison

Use case	Series	Characteristics	vCPU to memory ratio	Example resource
Universal	U	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Burstable CPU performance 	1:4	u1.medium <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 vCPUs 4 Gi memory
Overcommitted	O	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Overcommitted memory Burstable CPU performance 	1:4	o1.small <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 vCPU 2Gi memory
Compute-exclusive	CX	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hugepages Dedicated CPU Isolated emulator threads vNUMA 	1:2	cx1.2xlarge <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8 vCPUs 16Gi memory

Use case	Series	Characteristics	vCPU to memory ratio	Example resource
NVIDIA GPU	GN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For VMs that use GPUs provided by the NVIDIA GPU Operator Has predefined GPUs Burstable CPU performance 	1:4	gn1.8xlarge <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 32 vCPUs 128Gi memory
Memory-intensive	M	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hugepages Burstable CPU performance 	1:8	m1.large <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 vCPUs 16Gi memory
Network-intensive	N	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hugepages Dedicated CPU Isolated emulator threads Requires nodes capable of running DPDK workloads 	1:2	n1.medium <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4 vCPUs 4Gi memory

7.1.2.3. Creating manifests by using the `virtctl` tool

You can use the **virtctl** CLI utility to simplify creating manifests for VMs, VM instance types, and VM preferences. For more information, see [VM manifest creation commands](#).

If you have a **VirtualMachine** manifest, you can create a VM from the [command line](#).

7.1.2.4. Creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from an instance type by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. You can also use the web console to create a VM by copying an existing snapshot or to clone a VM.

You can create a VM from a list of available bootable volumes. You can add Linux- or Windows-based volumes to the list.

Procedure

1. In the web console, navigate to **Virtualization → Catalog**.
The **InstanceTypes** tab opens by default.
2. Select either of the following options:
 - Select a suitable bootable volume from the list. If the list is truncated, click the **Show all** button to display the entire list.



NOTE

The bootable volume table lists only those volumes in the **openshift-virtualization-os-images** namespace that have the **instancetype.kubevirt.io/default-preference** label.

- Optional: Click the star icon to designate a bootable volume as a favorite. Starred bootable volumes appear first in the volume list.
- Click **Add volume** to upload a new volume or to use an existing persistent volume claim (PVC), a volume snapshot, or a **containerDisk** volume. Click **Save**.
Logos of operating systems that are not available in the cluster are shown at the bottom of the list. You can add a volume for the required operating system by clicking the **Add volume** link.

In addition, there is a link to the **Create a Windows boot source** quick start. The same link appears in a popover if you hover the pointer over the question mark icon next to the **Select volume to boot from** line.

Immediately after you install the environment or when the environment is disconnected, the list of volumes to boot from is empty. In that case, three operating system logos are displayed: Windows, RHEL, and Linux. You can add a new volume that meets your requirements by clicking the **Add volume** button.

3. Click an instance type tile and select the resource size appropriate for your workload.
4. Optional: Choose the virtual machine details, including the VM's name, that apply to the volume you are booting from:
 - For a Linux-based volume, follow these steps to configure SSH:
 - a. If you have not already added a public SSH key to your project, click the edit icon beside **Authorized SSH key** in the **VirtualMachine details** section.
 - b. Select one of the following options:
 - **Use existing:** Select a secret from the secrets list.
 - **Add new:** Follow these steps:
 - i. Browse to the public SSH key file or paste the file in the key field.
 - ii. Enter the secret name.
 - iii. Optional: Select **Automatically apply this key to any new VirtualMachine you create in this project**.

- c. Click **Save**.
 - For a Windows volume, follow either of these set of steps to configure sysprep options:
 - If you have not already added sysprep options for the Windows volume, follow these steps:
 - i. Click the edit icon beside **Sysprep** in the **VirtualMachine details** section.
 - ii. Add the **Autoattend.xml** answer file.
 - iii. Add the **Unattend.xml** answer file.
 - iv. Click **Save**.
 - If you want to use existing sysprep options for the Windows volume, follow these steps:
 - i. Click **Attach existing sysprep**.
 - ii. Enter the name of the existing sysprep **Unattend.xml** answer file.
 - iii. Click **Save**.
 5. Optional: If you are creating a Windows VM, you can mount a Windows driver disk:
 - a. Click the **Customize VirtualMachine** button.
 - b. On the **VirtualMachine details** page, click **Storage**.
 - c. Select the **Mount Windows drivers disk** checkbox.
 6. Optional: Click **View YAML & CLI** to view the YAML file. Click **CLI** to view the CLI commands. You can also download or copy either the YAML file contents or the CLI commands.
 7. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

After the VM is created, you can monitor the status on the **VirtualMachine details** page.

7.1.3. Creating virtual machines from templates

You can create virtual machines (VMs) from Red Hat templates by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

7.1.3.1. About VM templates

Boot sources

You can expedite VM creation by using templates that have an available boot source. Templates with a boot source are labeled **Available boot source** if they do not have a custom label.

Templates without a boot source are labeled **Boot source required**. See [Creating virtual machines from custom images](#).

Customization

You can customize the disk source and VM parameters before you start the VM.

See [storage volume types](#) and [storage fields](#) for details about disk source settings.



NOTE

If you copy a VM template with all its labels and annotations, your version of the template is marked as deprecated when a new version of the Scheduling, Scale, and Performance (SSP) Operator is deployed. You can remove this designation. See [Customizing a VM template by using the web console](#).

Single-node OpenShift

Due to differences in storage behavior, some templates are incompatible with single-node OpenShift. To ensure compatibility, do not set the **evictionStrategy** field for templates or VMs that use data volumes or storage profiles.

7.1.3.2. Creating a VM from a template

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from a template with an available boot source by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Optional: You can customize template or VM parameters, such as data sources, cloud-init, or SSH keys, before you start the VM.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog** in the web console.
2. Click **Boot source available** to filter templates with boot sources.
The catalog displays the default templates. Click **All Items** to view all available templates for your filters.
3. Click a template tile to view its details.
4. Optional: If you are using a Windows template, you can mount a Windows driver disk by selecting the **Mount Windows drivers disk** checkbox.
5. If you do not need to customize the template or VM parameters, click **Quick create VirtualMachine** to create a VM from the template.
If you need to customize the template or VM parameters, do the following:
 - a. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
 - b. Expand **Storage** or **Optional parameters** to edit data source settings.
 - c. Click **Customize VirtualMachine parameters**.
The **Customize and create VirtualMachine** pane displays the **Overview**, **YAML**, **Scheduling**, **Environment**, **Network interfaces**, **Disks**, **Scripts**, and **Metadata** tabs.
 - d. Edit the parameters that must be set before the VM boots, such as cloud-init or a static SSH key.
 - e. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.
The **VirtualMachine details** page displays the provisioning status.

7.1.3.2.1. Storage volume types

Table 7.2. Storage volume types

Type	Description
ephemeral	A local copy-on-write (COW) image that uses a network volume as a read-only backing store. The backing volume must be a PersistentVolumeClaim . The ephemeral image is created when the virtual machine starts and stores all writes locally. The ephemeral image is discarded when the virtual machine is stopped, restarted, or deleted. The backing volume (PVC) is not mutated in any way.
persistentVolumeClaim	Attaches an available PV to a virtual machine. Attaching a PV allows for the virtual machine data to persist between sessions. Importing an existing virtual machine disk into a PVC by using CDI and attaching the PVC to a virtual machine instance is the recommended method for importing existing virtual machines into OpenShift Container Platform. There are some requirements for the disk to be used within a PVC.
dataVolume	Data volumes build on the persistentVolumeClaim disk type by managing the process of preparing the virtual machine disk via an import, clone, or upload operation. VMs that use this volume type are guaranteed not to start until the volume is ready. Specify type: dataVolume or type: "" . If you specify any other value for type , such as persistentVolumeClaim , a warning is displayed, and the virtual machine does not start.
cloudInitNoCloud	Attaches a disk that contains the referenced cloud-init NoCloud data source, providing user data and metadata to the virtual machine. A cloud-init installation is required inside the virtual machine disk.
containerDisk	References an image, such as a virtual machine disk, that is stored in the container image registry. The image is pulled from the registry and attached to the virtual machine as a disk when the virtual machine is launched. A containerDisk volume is not limited to a single virtual machine and is useful for creating large numbers of virtual machine clones that do not require persistent storage. Only RAW and QCOW2 formats are supported disk types for the container image registry. QCOW2 is recommended for reduced image size.



NOTE

A **containerDisk** volume is ephemeral. It is discarded when the virtual machine is stopped, restarted, or deleted. A **containerDisk** volume is useful for read-only file systems such as CD-ROMs or for disposable virtual machines.

Type	Description
emptyDisk	<p>Creates an additional sparse QCOW2 disk that is tied to the life-cycle of the virtual machine interface. The data survives guest-initiated reboots in the virtual machine but is discarded when the virtual machine stops or is restarted from the web console. The empty disk is used to store application dependencies and data that otherwise exceeds the limited temporary file system of an ephemeral disk.</p> <p>The disk capacity size must also be provided.</p>

7.1.3.2.2. Storage fields

Field	Description
Blank (creates PVC)	Create an empty disk.
Import via URL (creates PVC)	Import content via URL (HTTP or HTTPS endpoint).
Use an existing PVC	Use a PVC that is already available in the cluster.
Clone existing PVC (creates PVC)	Select an existing PVC available in the cluster and clone it.
Import via Registry (creates PVC)	Import content via container registry.
Container (ephemeral)	Upload content from a container located in a registry accessible from the cluster. The container disk should be used only for read-only filesystems such as CD-ROMs or temporary virtual machines.
Name	Name of the disk. The name can contain lowercase letters (a-z), numbers (0-9), hyphens (-), and periods (.), up to a maximum of 253 characters. The first and last characters must be alphanumeric. The name must not contain uppercase letters, spaces, or special characters.
Size	Size of the disk in GiB.
Type	Type of disk. Example: Disk or CD-ROM
Interface	Type of disk device. Supported interfaces are virtIO , SATA , and SCSI .
Storage Class	The storage class that is used to create the disk.

Advanced storage settings

The following advanced storage settings are optional and available for **Blank**, **Import via URL**, and **Clone existing PVC** disks.

If you do not specify these parameters, the system uses the default storage profile values.

Parameter	Option	Parameter description
Volume Mode	Filesystem	Stores the virtual disk on a file system-based volume.
	Block	Stores the virtual disk directly on the block volume. Only use Block if the underlying storage supports it.
Access Mode	ReadWriteOnce (RWO)	Volume can be mounted as read-write by a single node.
	ReadWriteMany (RWX)	Volume can be mounted as read-write by many nodes at one time.  NOTE This mode is required for live migration.

7.1.3.2.3. Customizing a VM template by using the web console

You can customize an existing virtual machine (VM) template by modifying the VM or template parameters, such as data sources, cloud-init, or SSH keys, before you start the VM. If you customize a template by copying it and including all of its labels and annotations, the customized template is marked as deprecated when a new version of the Scheduling, Scale, and Performance (SSP) Operator is deployed.

You can remove the deprecated designation from the customized template.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization → Templates** in the web console.
2. From the list of VM templates, click the template marked as deprecated.
3. Click **Edit** next to the pencil icon beside **Labels**.
4. Remove the following two labels:
 - **template.kubevirt.io/type: "base"**
 - **template.kubevirt.io/version: "version"**
5. Click **Save**.
6. Click the pencil icon beside the number of existing **Annotations**.
7. Remove the following annotation:
 - **template.kubevirt.io/deprecated**
8. Click **Save**.

7.1.4. Creating virtual machines from the command line

You can create virtual machines (VMs) from the command line by editing or creating a **VirtualMachine** manifest. You can simplify VM configuration by using an [instance type](#) in your VM manifest.



NOTE

You can also [create VMs from instance types by using the web console](#).

7.1.4.1. Creating manifests by using the virtctl tool

You can use the **virtctl** CLI utility to simplify creating manifests for VMs, VM instance types, and VM preferences. For more information, see [VM manifest creation commands](#).

7.1.4.2. Creating a VM from a VirtualMachine manifest

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from a **VirtualMachine** manifest.

Procedure

- 1 Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest for your VM. The following example configures a Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) VM:



NOTE

This example manifest does not configure VM authentication.

Example manifest for a RHEL VM

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  name: rhel-9-minimal
spec:
  dataVolumeTemplates:
    - metadata:
        name: rhel-9-minimal-volume
      spec:
        sourceRef:
          kind: DataSource
          name: rhel9 1
        namespace: openshift-virtualization-os-images 2
        storage: {}
   instancetype:
      name: u1.medium 3
    preference:
      name: rhel.9 4
    running: true
    template:
      spec:
        domain:
          devices: {}
          volumes:
```

```

    - dataVolume:
      name: rhel-9-minimal-volume
      name: rootdisk
  
```

- 1 The **rhel9** golden image is used to install RHEL 9 as the guest operating system.
- 2 Golden images are stored in the **openshift-virtualization-os-images** namespace.
- 3 The **u1.medium** instance type requests 1 vCPU and 4Gi memory for the VM. These resource values cannot be overridden within the VM.
- 4 The **rhel.9** preference specifies additional attributes that support the RHEL 9 guest operating system.

2. Create a virtual machine by using the manifest file:

```
$ oc create -f <vm_manifest_file>.yaml
```

3. Optional: Start the virtual machine:

```
$ virtctl start <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

Next steps

- [Configuring SSH access to virtual machines](#)

7.2. CREATING VMs FROM CUSTOM IMAGES

7.2.1. Creating virtual machines from custom images overview

You can create virtual machines (VMs) from custom operating system images by using one of the following methods:

- [Importing the image as a container disk from a registry](#) .
Optional: You can enable auto updates for your container disks. See [Managing automatic boot source updates](#) for details.
- [Importing the image from a web page](#) .
- [Uploading the image from a local machine](#) .
- [Cloning a persistent volume claim \(PVC\) that contains the image](#) .

The Containerized Data Importer (CDI) imports the image into a PVC by using a data volume. You add the PVC to the VM by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or command line.



IMPORTANT

You must install the [QEMU guest agent](#) on VMs created from operating system images that are not provided by Red Hat.

You must also install [VirtIO drivers](#) on Windows VMs.

The QEMU guest agent is included with Red Hat images.

7.2.2. Creating VMs by using container disks

You can create virtual machines (VMs) by using container disks built from operating system images.

You can enable auto updates for your container disks. See [Managing automatic boot source updates](#) for details.



IMPORTANT

If the container disks are large, the I/O traffic might increase and cause worker nodes to be unavailable. You can perform the following tasks to resolve this issue:

- [Pruning DeploymentConfig objects](#).
- [Configuring garbage collection](#).

You create a VM from a container disk by performing the following steps:

1. [Build an operating system image into a container disk and upload it to your container registry](#) .
2. If your container registry does not have TLS, [configure your environment to disable TLS for your registry](#).
3. Create a VM with the container disk as the disk source by using the [web console](#) or the [command line](#).



IMPORTANT

You must install the [QEMU guest agent](#) on VMs created from operating system images that are not provided by Red Hat.

7.2.2.1. Building and uploading a container disk

You can build a virtual machine (VM) image into a container disk and upload it to a registry.

The size of a container disk is limited by the maximum layer size of the registry where the container disk is hosted.



NOTE

For [Red Hat Quay](#), you can change the maximum layer size by editing the YAML configuration file that is created when Red Hat Quay is first deployed.

Prerequisites

- You must have **podman** installed.

- You must have a QCOW2 or RAW image file.

Procedure

1. Create a Dockerfile to build the VM image into a container image. The VM image must be owned by QEMU, which has a UID of **107**, and placed in the **/disk/** directory inside the container. Permissions for the **/disk/** directory must then be set to **0440**.

The following example uses the Red Hat Universal Base Image (UBI) to handle these configuration changes in the first stage, and uses the minimal **scratch** image in the second stage to store the result:

```
$ cat > Dockerfile << EOF
FROM registry.access.redhat.com/ubi8/ubi:latest AS builder
ADD --chown=107:107 <vm_image>.qcow2 /disk/ \①
RUN chmod 0440 /disk/*

FROM scratch
COPY --from=builder /disk/* /disk/
EOF
```

- ① Where **<vm_image>** is the image in either QCOW2 or RAW format. If you use a remote image, replace **<vm_image>.qcow2** with the complete URL.

2. Build and tag the container:

```
$ podman build -t <registry>/<container_disk_name>:latest .
```

3. Push the container image to the registry:

```
$ podman push <registry>/<container_disk_name>:latest
```

7.2.2.2. Disabling TLS for a container registry

You can disable TLS (transport layer security) for one or more container registries by editing the **insecureRegistries** field of the **HyperConverged** custom resource.

Prerequisites

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Add a list of insecure registries to the **spec.storageImport.insecureRegistries** field.

Example HyperConverged custom resource

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
  name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
  namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
```

```

storageImport:
  insecureRegistries: ①
    - "private-registry-example-1:5000"
    - "private-registry-example-2:5000"
  
```

- ① Replace the examples in this list with valid registry hostnames.

7.2.2.3. Creating a VM from a container disk by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) by importing a container disk from a container registry by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog** in the web console.
2. Click a template tile without an available boot source.
3. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
4. On the **Customize template parameters** page, expand **Storage** and select **Registry (creates PVC)** from the **Disk source** list.
5. Enter the container image URL. Example:
https://mirror.arizona.edu/fedora/linux/releases/38/Cloud/x86_64/images/Fedora-Cloud-Base-38-1.6.x86_64.qcow2
6. Set the disk size.
7. Click **Next**.
8. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

7.2.2.4. Creating a VM from a container disk by using the command line

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from a container disk by using the command line.

When the virtual machine (VM) is created, the data volume with the container disk is imported into persistent storage.

Prerequisites

- You must have access credentials for the container registry that contains the container disk.

Procedure

1. If the container registry requires authentication, create a **Secret** manifest, specifying the credentials, and save it as a **data-source-secret.yaml** file:

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: data-source-secret
  labels: 
```

```
app: containerized-data-importer
type: Opaque
data:
  accessKeyId: "" ①
  secretKey: "" ②
```

- ① Specify the Base64-encoded key ID or user name.
- ② Specify the Base64-encoded secret key or password.

2. Apply the **Secret** manifest by running the following command:

```
$ oc apply -f data-source-secret.yaml
```

3. If the VM must communicate with servers that use self-signed certificates or certificates that are not signed by the system CA bundle, create a config map in the same namespace as the VM:

```
$ oc create configmap tls-certs ①
--from-file=</path/to/file/ca.pem> ②
```

- ① Specify the config map name.
- ② Specify the path to the CA certificate.

4. Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest and save it as a **vm-fedora-datavolume.yaml** file:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: null
  labels:
    kubevirt.io/vm: vm-fedora-datavolume
  name: vm-fedora-datavolume ①
spec:
  dataVolumeTemplates:
  - metadata:
      creationTimestamp: null
      name: fedora-dv ②
    spec:
      storage:
        resources:
          requests:
            storage: 10Gi ③
      storageClassName: <storage_class> ④
    source:
      registry:
        url: "docker://kubevirt/fedora-cloud-container-disk-demo:latest" ⑤
      secretRef: data-source-secret ⑥
      certConfigMap: tls-certs ⑦
  status: {}
  running: true
  template:
```

```

metadata:
  creationTimestamp: null
  labels:
    kubevirt.io/vm: vm-fedora-datavolume
spec:
  domain:
    devices:
      disks:
        - disk:
            bus: virtio
            name: datavolumedisk1
  machine:
    type: ""
  resources:
    requests:
      memory: 1.5Gi
  terminationGracePeriodSeconds: 180
  volumes:
    - dataVolume:
        name: fedora-dv
        name: datavolumedisk1
status: {}

```

- 1** Specify the name of the VM.
 - 2** Specify the name of the data volume.
 - 3** Specify the size of the storage requested for the data volume.
 - 4** Optional: If you do not specify a storage class, the default storage class is used.
 - 5** Specify the URL of the container registry.
 - 6** Optional: Specify the secret name if you created a secret for the container registry access credentials.
 - 7** Optional: Specify a CA certificate config map.
5. Create the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f vm-fedora-datavolume.yaml
```

The **oc create** command creates the data volume and the VM. The CDI controller creates an underlying PVC with the correct annotation and the import process begins. When the import is complete, the data volume status changes to **Succeeded**. You can start the VM.

Data volume provisioning happens in the background, so there is no need to monitor the process.

Verification

1. The importer pod downloads the container disk from the specified URL and stores it on the provisioned persistent volume. View the status of the importer pod by running the following command:

```
$ oc get pods
```

- Monitor the data volume until its status is **Succeeded** by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe dv fedora-dv 1
```

- Specify the data volume name that you defined in the **VirtualMachine** manifest.

- Verify that provisioning is complete and that the VM has started by accessing its serial console:

```
$ virtctl console vm-fedora-datavolume
```

7.2.3. Creating VMs by importing images from web pages

You can create virtual machines (VMs) by importing operating system images from web pages.



IMPORTANT

You must install the [QEMU guest agent](#) on VMs created from operating system images that are not provided by Red Hat.

7.2.3.1. Creating a VM from an image on a web page by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) by importing an image from a web page by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You must have access to the web page that contains the image.

Procedure

- Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog** in the web console.
- Click a template tile without an available boot source.
- Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
- On the **Customize template parameters** page, expand **Storage** and select **URL (creates PVC)** from the **Disk source** list.
- Enter the image URL. Example: https://access.redhat.com/downloads/content/69/ver=/rhel--7/7.9/x86_64/product-software
- Enter the container image URL. Example:
https://mirror.arizona.edu/fedora/linux/releases/38/Cloud/x86_64/images/Fedora-Cloud-Base-38-1.6.x86_64.qcow2
- Set the disk size.
- Click **Next**.
- Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

7.2.3.2. Creating a VM from an image on a web page by using the command line

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from an image on a web page by using the command line.

When the virtual machine (VM) is created, the data volume with the image is imported into persistent storage.

Prerequisites

- You must have access credentials for the web page that contains the image.

Procedure

- 1 If the web page requires authentication, create a **Secret** manifest, specifying the credentials, and save it as a **data-source-secret.yaml** file:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: data-source-secret
  labels:
    app: containerized-data-importer
  type: Opaque
data:
  accessKeyId: "" 1
  secretKey: "" 2
```

- 1** Specify the Base64-encoded key ID or user name.
- 2** Specify the Base64-encoded secret key or password.

- 2 Apply the **Secret** manifest by running the following command:

```
$ oc apply -f data-source-secret.yaml
```

- 3 If the VM must communicate with servers that use self-signed certificates or certificates that are not signed by the system CA bundle, create a config map in the same namespace as the VM:

```
$ oc create configmap tls-certs 1
--from-file=</path/to/file/ca.pem> 2
```

- 1** Specify the config map name.
- 2** Specify the path to the CA certificate.

- 4 Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest and save it as a **vm-fedora-datavolume.yaml** file:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  creationTimestamp: null
  labels:
    kubevirt.io/vm: vm-fedora-datavolume
```

```

name: vm-fedora-datavolume ①
spec:
  dataVolumeTemplates:
    - metadata:
        creationTimestamp: null
        name: fedora-dv ②
    spec:
      storage:
        resources:
          requests:
            storage: 10Gi ③
      storageClassName: <storage_class> ④
    source:
      http:
        url: "https://mirror.arizona.edu/fedora/linux/releases/35/Cloud/x86_64/images/Fedora-Cloud-Base-35-1.2.x86_64.qcow2" ⑤
      registry:
        url: "docker://kubevirt/fedora-cloud-container-disk-demo:latest" ⑥
        secretRef: data-source-secret ⑦
        certConfigMap: tls-certs ⑧
    status: {}
running: true
template:
  metadata:
    creationTimestamp: null
    labels:
      kubevirt.io/vm: vm-fedora-datavolume
  spec:
    domain:
      devices:
        disks:
          - disk:
              bus: virtio
              name: datavolumedisk1
    machine:
      type: ""
    resources:
      requests:
        memory: 1.5Gi
    terminationGracePeriodSeconds: 180
    volumes:
      - dataVolume:
          name: fedora-dv
          name: datavolumedisk1
status: {}

```

- ① Specify the name of the VM.
- ② Specify the name of the data volume.
- ③ Specify the size of the storage requested for the data volume.
- ④ Optional: If you do not specify a storage class, the default storage class is used.
- ⑤ ⑥ Specify the URL of the web page.

- 7 Optional: Specify the secret name if you created a secret for the web page access credentials.
- 8 Optional: Specify a CA certificate config map.

5. Create the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f vm-fedora-datavolume.yaml
```

The **oc create** command creates the data volume and the VM. The CDI controller creates an underlying PVC with the correct annotation and the import process begins. When the import is complete, the data volume status changes to **Succeeded**. You can start the VM.

Data volume provisioning happens in the background, so there is no need to monitor the process.

Verification

1. The importer pod downloads the image from the specified URL and stores it on the provisioned persistent volume. View the status of the importer pod by running the following command:

```
$ oc get pods
```

2. Monitor the data volume until its status is **Succeeded** by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe dv fedora-dv 1
```

- 1 Specify the data volume name that you defined in the **VirtualMachine** manifest.

3. Verify that provisioning is complete and that the VM has started by accessing its serial console:

```
$ virtctl console vm-fedora-datavolume
```

7.2.4. Creating VMs by uploading images

You can create virtual machines (VMs) by uploading operating system images from your local machine.

You can create a Windows VM by uploading a Windows image to a PVC. Then you clone the PVC when you create the VM.



IMPORTANT

You must install the [QEMU guest agent](#) on VMs created from operating system images that are not provided by Red Hat.

You must also install [VirtIO drivers](#) on Windows VMs.

7.2.4.1. Creating a VM from an uploaded image by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from an uploaded operating system image by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You must have an **IMG**, **ISO**, or **QCOW2** image file.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog** in the web console.
2. Click a template tile without an available boot source.
3. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
4. On the **Customize template parameters** page, expand **Storage** and select **Upload (Upload a new file to a PVC)** from the **Disk source** list.
5. Browse to the image on your local machine and set the disk size.
6. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
7. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

7.2.4.2. Creating a Windows VM

You can create a Windows virtual machine (VM) by uploading a Windows image to a persistent volume claim (PVC) and then cloning the PVC when you create a VM by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You created a Windows installation DVD or USB with the Windows Media Creation Tool. See [Create Windows 10 installation media](#) in the Microsoft documentation.
- You created an **autounattend.xml** answer file. See [Answer files \(unattend.xml\)](#) in the Microsoft documentation.

Procedure

1. Upload the Windows image as a new PVC:
 - a. Navigate to **Storage** → **PersistentVolumeClaims** in the web console.
 - b. Click **Create PersistentVolumeClaim** → **With Data upload form**
 - c. Browse to the Windows image and select it.
 - d. Enter the PVC name, select the storage class and size and then click **Upload**.
The Windows image is uploaded to a PVC.
2. Configure a new VM by cloning the uploaded PVC:
 - a. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog**.
 - b. Select a Windows template tile and click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
 - c. Select **Clone (clone PVC)** from the **Disk source** list.
 - d. Select the PVC project, the Windows image PVC, and the disk size.

3. Apply the answer file to the VM:
 - a. Click **Customize VirtualMachine parameters**.
 - b. On the **Sysprep** section of the **Scripts** tab, click **Edit**.
 - c. Browse to the **autounattend.xml** answer file and click **Save**.
4. Set the run strategy of the VM:
 - a. Clear **Start this VirtualMachine after creation** so that the VM does not start immediately.
 - b. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.
 - c. On the **YAML** tab, replace **running:false** with **runStrategy: RerunOnFailure** and click **Save**.



5. Click the options menu and select **Start**.

The VM boots from the **sysprep** disk containing the **autounattend.xml** answer file.

7.2.4.2.1. Generalizing a Windows VM image

You can generalize a Windows operating system image to remove all system-specific configuration data before you use the image to create a new virtual machine (VM).

Before generalizing the VM, you must ensure the **sysprep** tool cannot detect an answer file after the unattended Windows installation.

Prerequisites

- A running Windows VM with the QEMU guest agent installed.

Procedure

1. In the OpenShift Container Platform console, click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines**.
2. Select a Windows VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click **Configuration** → **Disks**.



4. Click the Options menu beside the **sysprep** disk and select **Detach**.

5. Click **Detach**.

6. Rename **C:\Windows\Panther\unattend.xml** to avoid detection by the **sysprep** tool.

7. Start the **sysprep** program by running the following command:

```
%WINDIR%\System32\Sysprep\sysprep.exe /generalize /shutdown /oobe /mode:vm
```

8. After the **sysprep** tool completes, the Windows VM shuts down. The disk image of the VM is now available to use as an installation image for Windows VMs.

You can now specialize the VM.

7.2.4.2.2. Specializing a Windows VM image

Specializing a Windows virtual machine (VM) configures the computer-specific information from a generalized Windows image onto the VM.

Prerequisites

- You must have a generalized Windows disk image.
- You must create an **unattend.xml** answer file. See the [Microsoft documentation](#) for details.

Procedure

1. In the OpenShift Container Platform console, click **Virtualization** → **Catalog**.
2. Select a Windows template and click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
3. Select **PVC (clone PVC)** from the **Disk source** list.
4. Select the PVC project and PVC name of the generalized Windows image.
5. Click **Customize VirtualMachine parameters**.
6. Click the **Scripts** tab.
7. In the **Sysprep** section, click **Edit**, browse to the **unattend.xml** answer file, and click **Save**.
8. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

During the initial boot, Windows uses the **unattend.xml** answer file to specialize the VM. The VM is now ready to use.

Additional resources for creating Windows VMs

- [Microsoft, Sysprep \(Generalize\) a Windows installation](#)
- [Microsoft, generalize](#)
- [Microsoft, specialize](#)

7.2.4.3. Creating a VM from an uploaded image by using the command line

You can upload an operating system image by using the **virtctl** command line tool. You can use an existing data volume or create a new data volume for the image.

Prerequisites

- You must have an **ISO**, **IMG**, or **QCOW2** operating system image file.
- For best performance, compress the image file by using the **virt-sparsify** tool or the **xz** or **gzip** utilities.
- You must have **virtctl** installed.

- The client machine must be configured to trust the OpenShift Container Platform router's certificate.

Procedure

1. Upload the image by running the **virtctl image-upload** command:

```
$ virtctl image-upload dv <datavolume_name> \ ①  
--size=<datavolume_size> \ ②  
--image-path=</path/to/image> \ ③
```

- ① The name of the data volume.
- ② The size of the data volume. For example: **--size=500Mi**, **--size=1G**
- ③ The file path of the image.



NOTE

- If you do not want to create a new data volume, omit the **--size** parameter and include the **--no-create** flag.
- When uploading a disk image to a PVC, the PVC size must be larger than the size of the uncompressed virtual disk.
- To allow insecure server connections when using HTTPS, use the **--insecure** parameter. When you use the **--insecure** flag, the authenticity of the upload endpoint is **not** verified.

2. Optional. To verify that a data volume was created, view all data volumes by running the following command:

```
$ oc get dvs
```

7.2.5. Installing the QEMU guest agent and VirtIO drivers

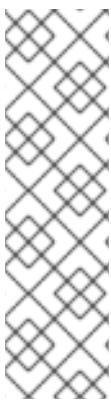
The QEMU guest agent is a daemon that runs on the virtual machine (VM) and passes information to the host about the VM, users, file systems, and secondary networks.

You must install the QEMU guest agent on VMs created from operating system images that are not provided by Red Hat.

7.2.5.1. Installing the QEMU guest agent

7.2.5.1.1. Installing the QEMU guest agent on a Linux VM

The **qemu-guest-agent** is widely available and available by default in Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) virtual machines (VMs). Install the agent and start the service.



NOTE

To create snapshots of an online (Running state) VM with the highest integrity, install the QEMU guest agent.

The QEMU guest agent takes a consistent snapshot by attempting to quiesce the VM file system as much as possible, depending on the system workload. This ensures that in-flight I/O is written to the disk before the snapshot is taken. If the guest agent is not present, quiescing is not possible and a best-effort snapshot is taken. The conditions under which the snapshot was taken are reflected in the snapshot indications that are displayed in the web console or CLI.

Procedure

1. Log in to the VM by using a console or SSH.
2. Install the QEMU guest agent by running the following command:

```
$ yum install -y qemu-guest-agent
```

3. Ensure the service is persistent and start it:

```
$ systemctl enable --now qemu-guest-agent
```

Verification

- Run the following command to verify that **AgentConnected** is listed in the VM spec:

```
$ oc get vm <vm_name>
```

7.2.5.1.2. Installing the QEMU guest agent on a Windows VM

For Windows virtual machines (VMs), the QEMU guest agent is included in the VirtIO drivers. You can install the drivers during a Windows installation or on an existing Windows VM.



NOTE

To create snapshots of an online (Running state) VM with the highest integrity, install the QEMU guest agent.

The QEMU guest agent takes a consistent snapshot by attempting to quiesce the VM file system as much as possible, depending on the system workload. This ensures that in-flight I/O is written to the disk before the snapshot is taken. If the guest agent is not present, quiescing is not possible and a best-effort snapshot is taken. The conditions under which the snapshot was taken are reflected in the snapshot indications that are displayed in the web console or CLI.

Procedure

1. In the Windows guest operating system, use the **File Explorer** to navigate to the **guest-agent** directory in the **virtio-win** CD drive.
2. Run the **qemu-ga-x86_64.msi** installer.

Verification

1. Obtain a list of network services by running the following command:

```
$ net start
```

2. Verify that the output contains the **QEMU Guest Agent**.

7.2.5.2. Installing VirtIO drivers on Windows VMs

VirtIO drivers are paravirtualized device drivers required for Microsoft Windows virtual machines (VMs) to run in OpenShift Virtualization. The drivers are shipped with the rest of the images and do not require a separate download.

The **container-native-virtualization/virtio-win** container disk must be attached to the VM as a SATA CD drive to enable driver installation. You can install VirtIO drivers during Windows installation or added to an existing Windows installation.

After the drivers are installed, the **container-native-virtualization/virtio-win** container disk can be removed from the VM.

Table 7.3. Supported drivers

Driver name	Hardware ID	Description
viostor	VEN_1AF4&DEV_1001 VEN_1AF4&DEV_1042	The block driver. Sometimes labeled as an SCSI Controller in the Other devices group.
viorng	VEN_1AF4&DEV_1005 VEN_1AF4&DEV_1044	The entropy source driver. Sometimes labeled as a PCI Device in the Other devices group.
NetKVM	VEN_1AF4&DEV_1000 VEN_1AF4&DEV_1041	The network driver. Sometimes labeled as an Ethernet Controller in the Other devices group. Available only if a VirtIO NIC is configured.

7.2.5.2.1. Attaching VirtIO container disk to Windows VMs during installation

You must attach the VirtIO container disk to the Windows VM to install the necessary Windows drivers. This can be done during creation of the VM.

Procedure

1. When creating a Windows VM from a template, click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
2. Select **Mount Windows drivers disk**.
3. Click the **Customize VirtualMachine** parameters.
4. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

After the VM is created, the **virtio-win** SATA CD disk will be attached to the VM.

7.2.5.2.2. Attaching VirtIO container disk to an existing Windows VM

You must attach the VirtIO container disk to the Windows VM to install the necessary Windows drivers. This can be done to an existing VM.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the existing Windows VM, and click **Actions** → **Stop**.
2. Go to **VM Details** → **Configuration** → **Disk**s and click **Add disk**.
3. Add **windows-driver-disk** from container source, set the **Type** to **CD-ROM**, and then set the **Interface** to **SATA**.
4. Click **Save**.
5. Start the VM, and connect to a graphical console.

7.2.5.2.3. Installing VirtIO drivers during Windows installation

You can install the VirtIO drivers while installing Windows on a virtual machine (VM).



NOTE

This procedure uses a generic approach to the Windows installation and the installation method might differ between versions of Windows. See the documentation for the version of Windows that you are installing.

Prerequisites

- A storage device containing the **virtio** drivers must be attached to the VM.

Procedure

1. In the Windows operating system, use the **File Explorer** to navigate to the **virtio-win** CD drive.
2. Double-click the drive to run the appropriate installer for your VM.
For a 64-bit vCPU, select the **virtio-win-gt-x64** installer. 32-bit vCPUs are no longer supported.
3. Optional: During the **Custom Setup** step of the installer, select the device drivers you want to install. The recommended driver set is selected by default.
4. After the installation is complete, select **Finish**.
5. Reboot the VM.

Verification

1. Open the system disk on the PC. This is typically **C:**.
2. Navigate to **Program Files** → **Virtio-Win**.

If the **Virtio-Win** directory is present and contains a sub-directory for each driver, the installation was successful.

7.2.5.2.4. Installing VirtIO drivers from a SATA CD drive on an existing Windows VM

You can install the VirtIO drivers from a SATA CD drive on an existing Windows virtual machine (VM).



NOTE

This procedure uses a generic approach to adding drivers to Windows. See the installation documentation for your version of Windows for specific installation steps.

Prerequisites

- A storage device containing the virtio drivers must be attached to the VM as a SATA CD drive.

Procedure

1. Start the VM and connect to a graphical console.
2. Log in to a Windows user session.
3. Open **Device Manager** and expand **Other devices** to list any **Unknown device**.
 - a. Open the **Device Properties** to identify the unknown device.
 - b. Right-click the device and select **Properties**.
 - c. Click the **Details** tab and select **Hardware IDs** in the **Property** list.
 - d. Compare the **Value** for the **Hardware IDs** with the supported VirtIO drivers.
4. Right-click the device and select **Update Driver Software**.
5. Click **Browse my computer for driver software** and browse to the attached SATA CD drive, where the VirtIO drivers are located. The drivers are arranged hierarchically according to their driver type, operating system, and CPU architecture.
6. Click **Next** to install the driver.
7. Repeat this process for all the necessary VirtIO drivers.
8. After the driver installs, click **Close** to close the window.
9. Reboot the VM to complete the driver installation.

7.2.5.2.5. Installing VirtIO drivers from a container disk added as a SATA CD drive

You can install VirtIO drivers from a container disk that you add to a Windows virtual machine (VM) as a SATA CD drive.

TIP

Downloading the **container-native-virtualization/virtio-win** container disk from the [Red Hat Ecosystem Catalog](#) is not mandatory, because the container disk is downloaded from the Red Hat registry if it is not already present in the cluster. However, downloading reduces the installation time.

Prerequisites

- You must have access to the Red Hat registry or to the downloaded **container-native-virtualization/virtio-win** container disk in a restricted environment.

Procedure

1. Add the **container-native-virtualization/virtio-win** container disk as a CD drive by editing the **VirtualMachine** manifest:

```
# ...
spec:
  domain:
    devices:
      disks:
        - name: virtiocontainerdisk
          bootOrder: 2 1
        cdrom:
          bus: sata
  volumes:
    - containerDisk:
      image: container-native-virtualization/virtio-win
      name: virtiocontainerdisk
```

- 1 OpenShift Virtualization boots the VM disks in the order defined in the **VirtualMachine** manifest. You can either define other VM disks that boot before the **container-native-virtualization/virtio-win** container disk or use the optional **bootOrder** parameter to ensure the VM boots from the correct disk. If you configure the boot order for a disk, you must configure the boot order for the other disks.

2. Apply the changes:

- If the VM is not running, run the following command:

```
$ virtctl start <vm> -n <namespace>
```

- If the VM is running, reboot the VM or run the following command:

```
$ oc apply -f <vm.yaml>
```

3. After the VM has started, install the VirtIO drivers from the SATA CD drive.

7.2.5.3. Updating VirtIO drivers

7.2.5.3.1. Updating VirtIO drivers on a Windows VM

Update the **virtio** drivers on a Windows virtual machine (VM) by using the Windows Update service.

Prerequisites

- The cluster must be connected to the internet. Disconnected clusters cannot reach the Windows Update service.

Procedure

1. In the Windows Guest operating system, click the **Windows** key and select **Settings**.
2. Navigate to **Windows Update** → **Advanced Options** → **Optional Updates**.
3. Install all updates from **Red Hat, Inc.**.
4. Reboot the VM.

Verification

1. On the Windows VM, navigate to the **Device Manager**.
2. Select a device.
3. Select the **Driver** tab.
4. Click **Driver Details** and confirm that the **virtio** driver details displays the correct version.

7.2.6. Cloning VMs

You can clone virtual machines (VMs) or create new VMs from snapshots.

7.2.6.1. Cloning a VM by using the web console

You can clone an existing VM by using the web console.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click **Actions**.
4. Select **Clone**.
5. On the **Clone VirtualMachine** page, enter the name of the new VM.
6. (Optional) Select the **Start cloned VM** checkbox to start the cloned VM.
7. Click **Clone**.

7.2.6.2. Creating a VM from an existing snapshot by using the web console

You can create a new VM by copying an existing snapshot.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Snapshots** tab.

4. Click the actions menu  for the snapshot you want to copy.
5. Select **Create VirtualMachine**.
6. Enter the name of the virtual machine.
7. (Optional) Select the **Start this VirtualMachine after creation** checkbox to start the new virtual machine.
8. Click **Create**.

7.2.6.3. Additional resources

- [Creating VMs by cloning PVCs](#)

7.2.7. Creating VMs by cloning PVCs

You can create virtual machines (VMs) by cloning existing persistent volume claims (PVCs) with custom images.

You must install the [QEMU guest agent](#) on VMs created from operating system images that are not provided by Red Hat.

You clone a PVC by creating a data volume that references a source PVC.

7.2.7.1. About cloning

When cloning a data volume, the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) chooses one of the following Container Storage Interface (CSI) clone methods:

- CSI volume cloning
- Smart cloning

Both CSI volume cloning and smart cloning methods are efficient, but they have certain requirements for use. If the requirements are not met, the CDI uses host-assisted cloning. Host-assisted cloning is the slowest and least efficient method of cloning, but it has fewer requirements than either of the other two cloning methods.

7.2.7.1.1. CSI volume cloning

Container Storage Interface (CSI) cloning uses CSI driver features to more efficiently clone a source data volume.

CSI volume cloning has the following requirements:

- The CSI driver that backs the storage class of the persistent volume claim (PVC) must support volume cloning.
- For provisioners not recognized by the CDI, the corresponding storage profile must have the **cloneStrategy** set to CSI Volume Cloning.
- The source and target PVCs must have the same storage class and volume mode.

- If you create the data volume, you must have permission to create the **datavolumes/source** resource in the source namespace.
- The source volume must not be in use.

7.2.7.1.2. Smart cloning

When a Container Storage Interface (CSI) plugin with snapshot capabilities is available, the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) creates a persistent volume claim (PVC) from a snapshot, which then allows efficient cloning of additional PVCs.

Smart cloning has the following requirements:

- A snapshot class associated with the storage class must exist.
- The source and target PVCs must have the same storage class and volume mode.
- If you create the data volume, you must have permission to create the **datavolumes/source** resource in the source namespace.
- The source volume must not be in use.

7.2.7.1.3. Host-assisted cloning

When the requirements for neither Container Storage Interface (CSI) volume cloning nor smart cloning have been met, host-assisted cloning is used as a fallback method. Host-assisted cloning is less efficient than either of the two other cloning methods.

Host-assisted cloning uses a source pod and a target pod to copy data from the source volume to the target volume. The target persistent volume claim (PVC) is annotated with the fallback reason that explains why host-assisted cloning has been used, and an event is created.

Example PVC target annotation

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
  annotations:
    cdi.kubevirt.io/cloneFallbackReason: The volume modes of source and target are incompatible
    cdi.kubevirt.io/clonePhase: Succeeded
    cdi.kubevirt.io/cloneType: copy
```

Example event

NAMESPACE	LAST SEEN	TYPE	REASON	OBJECT	MESSAGE
test-ns	0s	Warning	IncompatibleVolumeModes	persistentvolumeclaim/test-target	The volume modes of source and target are incompatible

7.2.7.2. Creating a VM from a PVC by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) by importing an image from a web page by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. You can create a virtual machine (VM) by cloning a persistent volume claim (PVC) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You must have access to the web page that contains the image.
- You must have access to the namespace that contains the source PVC.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog** in the web console.
2. Click a template tile without an available boot source.
3. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
4. On the **Customize template parameters** page, expand **Storage** and select **PVC (clone PVC)** from the **Disk source** list.
5. Enter the image URL. Example: **https://access.redhat.com/downloads/content/69/ver=/rhel--7/7.9/x86_64/product-software**
6. Enter the container image URL. Example:
https://mirror.arizona.edu/fedora/linux/releases/38/Cloud/x86_64/images/Fedora-Cloud-Base-38-1.6.x86_64.qcow2
7. Select the PVC project and the PVC name.
8. Set the disk size.
9. Click **Next**.
10. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

7.2.7.3. Creating a VM from a PVC by using the command line

You can create a virtual machine (VM) by cloning the persistent volume claim (PVC) of an existing VM by using the command line.

You can clone a PVC by using one of the following options:

- Cloning a PVC to a new data volume.
This method creates a data volume whose lifecycle is independent of the original VM. Deleting the original VM does not affect the new data volume or its associated PVC.
- Cloning a PVC by creating a **VirtualMachine** manifest with a **dataVolumeTemplates** stanza.
This method creates a data volume whose lifecycle is dependent on the original VM. Deleting the original VM deletes the cloned data volume and its associated PVC.

7.2.7.3.1. Cloning a PVC to a data volume

You can clone the persistent volume claim (PVC) of an existing virtual machine (VM) disk to a data volume by using the command line.

You create a data volume that references the original source PVC. The lifecycle of the new data volume is independent of the original VM. Deleting the original VM does not affect the new data volume or its associated PVC.

Cloning between different volume modes is supported for host-assisted cloning, such as cloning from a block persistent volume (PV) to a file system PV, as long as the source and target PVs belong to the **kubevirt** content type.



NOTE

Smart-cloning is faster and more efficient than host-assisted cloning because it uses snapshots to clone PVCs. Smart-cloning is supported by storage providers that support snapshots, such as Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation.

Cloning between different volume modes is not supported for smart-cloning.

Prerequisites

- The VM with the source PVC must be powered down.
- If you clone a PVC to a different namespace, you must have permissions to create resources in the target namespace.
- Additional prerequisites for smart-cloning:
 - Your storage provider must support snapshots.
 - The source and target PVCs must have the same storage provider and volume mode.
 - The value of the **driver** key of the **VolumeSnapshotClass** object must match the value of the **provisioner** key of the **StorageClass** object as shown in the following example:

Example VolumeSnapshotClass object

```
kind: VolumeSnapshotClass
apiVersion: snapshot.storage.k8s.io/v1
driver: openshift-storage.rbd.csi.ceph.com
# ...
```

Example StorageClass object

```
kind: StorageClass
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
# ...
provisioner: openshift-storage.rbd.csi.ceph.com
```

Procedure

1. Create a **DataVolume** manifest as shown in the following example:

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: DataVolume
metadata:
  name: <datavolume> ①
spec:
  source:
    pvc:
```

```

namespace: "<source_namespace>" 2
name: "<my_vm_disk>" 3
storage: {}

```

- 1** Specify the name of the new data volume.
- 2** Specify the namespace of the source PVC.
- 3** Specify the name of the source PVC.

2. Create the data volume by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <datavolume>.yaml
```



NOTE

Data volumes prevent a VM from starting before the PVC is prepared. You can create a VM that references the new data volume while the PVC is being cloned.

7.2.7.3.2. Creating a VM from a cloned PVC by using a data volume template

You can create a virtual machine (VM) that clones the persistent volume claim (PVC) of an existing VM by using a data volume template.

This method creates a data volume whose lifecycle is dependent on the original VM. Deleting the original VM deletes the cloned data volume and its associated PVC.

Prerequisites

- The VM with the source PVC must be powered down.

Procedure

1. Create a **VirtualMachine** manifest as shown in the following example:

```

apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  labels:
    kubevirt.io/vm: vm-dv-clone
  name: vm-dv-clone 1
spec:
  running: false
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        kubevirt.io/vm: vm-dv-clone
    spec:
      domain:
        devices:
          disks:
            - disk:
                bus: virtio

```

```
        name: root-disk
      resources:
        requests:
          memory: 64M
      volumes:
        - dataVolume:
            name: favorite-clone
            name: root-disk
      dataVolumeTemplates:
        - metadata:
            name: favorite-clone
      spec:
        storage:
          accessModes:
            - ReadWriteOnce
          resources:
            requests:
              storage: 2Gi
          source:
            pvc:
              namespace: <source_namespace> ②
              name: "<source_pvc>" ③
```

- ① Specify the name of the VM.
- ② Specify the namespace of the source PVC.
- ③ Specify the name of the source PVC.

2. Create the virtual machine with the PVC-cloned data volume:

```
$ oc create -f <vm-clone-datavolumetemplate>.yaml
```

7.3. CONNECTING TO VIRTUAL MACHINE CONSOLES

You can connect to the following consoles to access running virtual machines (VMs):

- [VNC console](#)
- [Serial console](#)
- [Desktop viewer for Windows VMs](#)

7.3.1. Connecting to the VNC console

You can connect to the VNC console of a virtual machine by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the **virtctl** command line tool.

7.3.1.1. Connecting to the VNC console by using the web console

You can connect to the VNC console of a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

**NOTE**

If you connect to a Windows VM with a vGPU assigned as a mediated device, you can switch between the default display and the vGPU display.

Procedure

1. On the **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** page, click a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
2. Click the **Console** tab. The VNC console session starts automatically.
3. Optional: To switch to the vGPU display of a Windows VM, select **Ctl + Alt + 2** from the **Send key** list.
 - Select **Ctl + Alt + 1** from the **Send key** list to restore the default display.
4. To end the console session, click outside the console pane and then click **Disconnect**.

7.3.1.2. Connecting to the VNC console by using virtctl

You can use the **virtctl** command line tool to connect to the VNC console of a running virtual machine.

**NOTE**

If you run the **virtctl vnc** command on a remote machine over an SSH connection, you must forward the X session to your local machine by running the **ssh** command with the **-X** or **-Y** flags.

Prerequisites

- You must install the **virt-viewer** package.

Procedure

1. Run the following command to start the console session:

```
$ virtctl vnc <vm_name>
```

2. If the connection fails, run the following command to collect troubleshooting information:

```
$ virtctl vnc <vm_name> -v 4
```

7.3.1.3. Generating a temporary token for the VNC console

To access the VNC of a virtual machine (VM), generate a temporary authentication bearer token for the Kubernetes API.

**NOTE**

Kubernetes also supports authentication using client certificates, instead of a bearer token, by modifying the curl command.

Prerequisites

- A running VM with OpenShift Virtualization 4.14 or later and [ssp-operator](#) 4.14 or later

Procedure

1. Enable the feature gate in the HyperConverged (**HCO**) custom resource (CR):

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv --type json -p '[{"op": "replace", "path": "/spec/featureGates/deployVmConsoleProxy", "value": true}]'
```

2. Generate a token by entering the following command:

```
$ curl --header "Authorization: Bearer ${TOKEN}" \  
  "https://api.<cluster_fqdn>/apis/token.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/<namespace>/virtualmachines/<vm_name>/vnc?duration=<duration>"
```

The **<duration>** parameter can be set in hours and minutes, with a minimum duration of 10 minutes. For example: **5h30m**. If this parameter is not set, the token is valid for 10 minutes by default.

Sample output:

```
{ "token": "eyJhb... }
```

3. Optional: Use the token provided in the output to create a variable:

```
$ export VNC_TOKEN=<token>
```

You can now use the token to access the VNC console of a VM.

Verification

1. Log in to the cluster by entering the following command:

```
$ oc login --token ${VNC_TOKEN}
```

2. Test access to the VNC console of the VM by using the **virtctl** command:

```
$ virtctl vnc <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

**WARNING**

It is currently not possible to revoke a specific token.

To revoke a token, you must delete the service account that was used to create it. However, this also revokes all other tokens that were created by using the service account. Use the following command with caution:

```
$ virtctl delete serviceaccount --namespace "<namespace>" "<vm_name>-vnc-access"
```

7.3.1.3.1. Granting token generation permission for the VNC console by using the cluster role

As a cluster administrator, you can install a cluster role and bind it to a user or service account to allow access to the endpoint that generates tokens for the VNC console.

Procedure

- Choose to bind the cluster role to either a user or service account.
 - Run the following command to bind the cluster role to a user:

```
$ kubectl create rolebinding "${ROLE_BINDING_NAME}" --clusterrole="token.kubevirt.io:generate" --user="${USER_NAME}"
```

- Run the following command to bind the cluster role to a service account:

```
$ kubectl create rolebinding "${ROLE_BINDING_NAME}" --clusterrole="token.kubevirt.io:generate" --serviceaccount="${SERVICE_ACCOUNT_NAME}"
```

7.3.2. Connecting to the serial console

You can connect to the serial console of a virtual machine by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the **virtctl** command line tool.

**NOTE**

Running concurrent VNC connections to a single virtual machine is not currently supported.

7.3.2.1. Connecting to the serial console by using the web console

You can connect to the serial console of a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Procedure

1. On the **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** page, click a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
2. Click the **Console** tab. The VNC console session starts automatically.
3. Click **Disconnect** to end the VNC console session. Otherwise, the VNC console session continues to run in the background.
4. Select **Serial console** from the console list.
5. To end the console session, click outside the console pane and then click **Disconnect**.

7.3.2.2. Connecting to the serial console by using virtctl

You can use the **virtctl** command line tool to connect to the serial console of a running virtual machine.

Procedure

1. Run the following command to start the console session:

```
$ virtctl console <vm_name>
```

2. Press **Ctrl+]** to end the console session.

7.3.3. Connecting to the desktop viewer

You can connect to a Windows virtual machine (VM) by using the desktop viewer and the Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP).

7.3.3.1. Connecting to the desktop viewer by using the web console

You can connect to the desktop viewer of a Windows virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You installed the QEMU guest agent on the Windows VM.
- You have an RDP client installed.

Procedure

1. On the **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** page, click a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
2. Click the **Console** tab. The VNC console session starts automatically.
3. Click **Disconnect** to end the VNC console session. Otherwise, the VNC console session continues to run in the background.
4. Select **Desktop viewer** from the console list.
5. Click **Create RDP Service** to open the **RDP Service** dialog.
6. Select **Expose RDP Service** and click **Save** to create a node port service.

7. Click **Launch Remote Desktop** to download an **.rdp** file and launch the desktop viewer.

7.4. CONFIGURING SSH ACCESS TO VIRTUAL MACHINES

You can configure SSH access to virtual machines (VMs) by using the following methods:

- **[virtctl ssh](#) command**

You create an SSH key pair, add the public key to a VM, and connect to the VM by running the **virtctl ssh** command with the private key.

You can add public SSH keys to Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 VMs at runtime or at first boot to VMs with guest operating systems that can be configured by using a cloud-init data source.

- **[virtctl port-forward](#) command**

You add the **virtctl port-forward** command to your **.ssh/config** file and connect to the VM by using OpenSSH.

- **[Service](#)**

You create a service, associate the service with the VM, and connect to the IP address and port exposed by the service.

- **[Secondary network](#)**

You configure a secondary network, attach a virtual machine (VM) to the secondary network interface, and connect to the DHCP-allocated IP address.

7.4.1. Access configuration considerations

Each method for configuring access to a virtual machine (VM) has advantages and limitations, depending on the traffic load and client requirements.

Services provide excellent performance and are recommended for applications that are accessed from outside the cluster.

If the internal cluster network cannot handle the traffic load, you can configure a secondary network.

[virtctl ssh](#) and [virtctl port-forwarding](#) commands

- Simple to configure.
- Recommended for troubleshooting VMs.
- **virtctl port-forwarding** recommended for automated configuration of VMs with Ansible.
- Dynamic public SSH keys can be used to provision VMs with Ansible.
- Not recommended for high-traffic applications like Rsync or Remote Desktop Protocol because of the burden on the API server.
- The API server must be able to handle the traffic load.
- The clients must be able to access the API server.
- The clients must have access credentials for the cluster.

Cluster IP service

- The internal cluster network must be able to handle the traffic load.
- The clients must be able to access an internal cluster IP address.

Node port service

- The internal cluster network must be able to handle the traffic load.
- The clients must be able to access at least one node.

Load balancer service

- A load balancer must be configured.
- Each node must be able to handle the traffic load of one or more load balancer services.

Secondary network

- Excellent performance because traffic does not go through the internal cluster network.
- Allows a flexible approach to network topology.
- Guest operating system must be configured with appropriate security because the VM is exposed directly to the secondary network. If a VM is compromised, an intruder could gain access to the secondary network.

7.4.2. Using `virtctl ssh`

You can add a public SSH key to a virtual machine (VM) and connect to the VM by running the **`virtctl ssh`** command.

This method is simple to configure. However, it is not recommended for high traffic loads because it places a burden on the API server.

7.4.2.1. About static and dynamic SSH key management

You can add public SSH keys to virtual machines (VMs) statically at first boot or dynamically at runtime.



NOTE

Only Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 supports dynamic key injection.

Static SSH key management

You can add a statically managed SSH key to a VM with a guest operating system that supports configuration by using a cloud-init data source. The key is added to the virtual machine (VM) at first boot.

You can add the key by using one of the following methods:

- Add a key to a single VM when you create it by using the web console or the command line.
- Add a key to a project by using the web console. Afterwards, the key is automatically added to the VMs that you create in this project.

Use cases

- As a VM owner, you can provision all your newly created VMs with a single key.

Dynamic SSH key management

You can enable dynamic SSH key management for a VM with Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 installed. Afterwards, you can update the key during runtime. The key is added by the QEMU guest agent, which is installed with Red Hat boot sources.

You can disable dynamic key management for security reasons. Then, the VM inherits the key management setting of the image from which it was created.

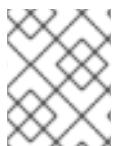
Use cases

- Granting or revoking access to VMs: As a cluster administrator, you can grant or revoke remote VM access by adding or removing the keys of individual users from a **Secret** object that is applied to all VMs in a namespace.
- User access: You can add your access credentials to all VMs that you create and manage.
- Ansible provisioning:
 - As an operations team member, you can create a single secret that contains all the keys used for Ansible provisioning.
 - As a VM owner, you can create a VM and attach the keys used for Ansible provisioning.
- Key rotation:
 - As a cluster administrator, you can rotate the Ansible provisioner keys used by VMs in a namespace.
 - As a workload owner, you can rotate the key for the VMs that you manage.

7.4.2.2. Static key management

You can add a statically managed public SSH key when you create a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line. The key is added as a cloud-init data source when the VM boots for the first time.

You can also add a public SSH key to a project when you create a VM by using the web console. The key is saved as a secret and is added automatically to all VMs that you create.



NOTE

If you add a secret to a project and then delete the VM, the secret is retained because it is a namespace resource. You must delete the secret manually.

7.4.2.2.1. Adding a key when creating a VM from a template

You can add a statically managed public SSH key when you create a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. The key is added to the VM as a cloud-init data source at first boot. This method does not affect cloud-init user data.

Optional: You can add a key to a project. Afterwards, this key is added automatically to VMs that you create in the project.

Prerequisites

- You generated an SSH key pair by running the **ssh-keygen** command.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization → Catalog** in the web console.
2. Click a template tile.
The guest operating system must support configuration from a cloud-init data source.
3. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Click the **Scripts** tab.
6. If you have not already added a public SSH key to your project, click the edit icon beside **Authorized SSH key** and select one of the following options:
 - **Use existing:** Select a secret from the secrets list.
 - **Add new:**
 - a. Browse to the SSH key file or paste the file in the key field.
 - b. Enter the secret name.
 - c. Optional: Select **Automatically apply this key to any new VirtualMachine you create in this project**.
7. Click **Save**.
8. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.
The **VirtualMachine details** page displays the progress of the VM creation.

Verification

- Click the **Scripts** tab on the **Configuration** tab.
The secret name is displayed in the **Authorized SSH key** section.

7.4.2.2. Adding a key when creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from an instance type by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. You can also use the web console to create a VM by copying an existing snapshot or to clone a VM.

You can create a VM from a list of available bootable volumes. You can add Linux- or Windows-based volumes to the list.

You can add a statically managed SSH key when you create a virtual machine (VM) from an instance type by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. The key is added to the VM as a cloud-init data source at first boot. This method does not affect cloud-init user data.

Procedure

1. In the web console, navigate to **Virtualization → Catalog**.

The **InstanceTypes** tab opens by default.

2. Select either of the following options:

- Select a suitable bootable volume from the list. If the list is truncated, click the **Show all** button to display the entire list.



NOTE

The bootable volume table lists only those volumes in the **openshift-virtualization-os-images** namespace that have the **instancetype.kubevirt.io/default-preference** label.

- Optional: Click the star icon to designate a bootable volume as a favorite. Starred bootable volumes appear first in the volume list.
- Click **Add volume** to upload a new volume or to use an existing persistent volume claim (PVC), a volume snapshot, or a **containerDisk** volume. Click **Save**. Logos of operating systems that are not available in the cluster are shown at the bottom of the list. You can add a volume for the required operating system by clicking the **Add volume** link.

In addition, there is a link to the [Create a Windows boot source](#) quick start. The same link appears in a popover if you hover the pointer over the question mark icon next to the *Select volume to boot from* line.

Immediately after you install the environment or when the environment is disconnected, the list of volumes to boot from is empty. In that case, three operating system logos are displayed: Windows, RHEL, and Linux. You can add a new volume that meets your requirements by clicking the **Add volume** button.

3. Click an instance type tile and select the resource size appropriate for your workload.
4. Optional: Choose the virtual machine details, including the VM's name, that apply to the volume you are booting from:
 - For a Linux-based volume, follow these steps to configure SSH:
 - a. If you have not already added a public SSH key to your project, click the edit icon beside **Authorized SSH key** in the **VirtualMachine details** section.
 - b. Select one of the following options:
 - **Use existing:** Select a secret from the secrets list.
 - **Add new:** Follow these steps:
 - i. Browse to the public SSH key file or paste the file in the key field.
 - ii. Enter the secret name.
 - iii. Optional: Select **Automatically apply this key to any new VirtualMachine you create in this project**.
 - c. Click **Save**.
 - For a Windows volume, follow either of these set of steps to configure sysprep options:

- If you have not already added sysprep options for the Windows volume, follow these steps:
 - i. Click the edit icon beside **Sysprep** in the **VirtualMachine details** section.
 - ii. Add the **Autoattend.xml** answer file.
 - iii. Add the **Unattend.xml** answer file.
 - iv. Click **Save**.
 - If you want to use existing sysprep options for the Windows volume, follow these steps:
 - i. Click **Attach existing sysprep**.
 - ii. Enter the name of the existing sysprep **Unattend.xml** answer file.
 - iii. Click **Save**.
5. Optional: If you are creating a Windows VM, you can mount a Windows driver disk:
- a. Click the **Customize VirtualMachine** button.
 - b. On the **VirtualMachine details** page, click **Storage**.
 - c. Select the **Mount Windows drivers disk** checkbox.
6. Optional: Click **View YAML & CLI** to view the YAML file. Click **CLI** to view the CLI commands. You can also download or copy either the YAML file contents or the CLI commands.
7. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

After the VM is created, you can monitor the status on the **VirtualMachine details** page.

7.4.2.2.3. Adding a key when creating a VM by using the command line

You can add a statically managed public SSH key when you create a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line. The key is added to the VM at first boot.

The key is added to the VM as a cloud-init data source. This method separates the access credentials from the application data in the cloud-init user data. This method does not affect cloud-init user data.

Prerequisites

- You generated an SSH key pair by running the **ssh-keygen** command.

Procedure

1. Create a manifest file for a **VirtualMachine** object and a **Secret** object:

Example manifest

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  name: example-vm
  namespace: example-namespace
```

```

spec:
  dataVolumeTemplates:
    - metadata:
        name: example-vm-volume
      spec:
        sourceRef:
          kind: DataSource
          name: rhel9
        namespace: openshift-virtualization-os-images
      storage:
        resources: {}
 instancetype:
    name: u1.medium
  preference:
    name: rhel.9
  running: true
  template:
    spec:
      domain:
        devices: {}
      volumes:
        - dataVolume:
            name: example-vm-volume
            name: rootdisk
        - cloudInitNoCloud: 1
          userData: |-  

#cloud-config  

          user: cloud-user
          name: cloudinitdisk
  accessCredentials:
    - sshPublicKey:
        propagationMethod:
          noCloud: {}
        source:
          secret:
            secretName: authorized-keys 2
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: authorized-keys
data:
  key: c3NoLXJzYSB... 3

```

- 1 Specify the **cloudInitNoCloud** data source.
- 2 Specify the **Secret** object name.
- 3 Paste the public SSH key.

2. Create the **VirtualMachine** and **Secret** objects by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <manifest_file>.yaml
```

3. Start the VM by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl start vm example-vm -n example-namespace
```

Verification

- Get the VM configuration:

```
$ oc describe vm example-vm -n example-namespace
```

Example output

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  name: example-vm
  namespace: example-namespace
spec:
  template:
    spec:
      accessCredentials:
        - sshPublicKey:
            propagationMethod:
              noCloud: {}
            source:
              secret:
                secretName: authorized-keys
# ...
```

7.4.2.3. Dynamic key management

You can enable dynamic key injection for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line. Then, you can update the key at runtime.



NOTE

Only Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 supports dynamic key injection.

If you disable dynamic key injection, the VM inherits the key management method of the image from which it was created.

7.4.2.3.1. Enabling dynamic key injection when creating a VM from a template

You can enable dynamic public SSH key injection when you create a virtual machine (VM) from a template by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. Then, you can update the key at runtime.



NOTE

Only Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 supports dynamic key injection.

The key is added to the VM by the QEMU guest agent, which is installed with RHEL 9.

Prerequisites

- You generated an SSH key pair by running the **ssh-keygen** command.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization → Catalog** in the web console.
2. Click the **Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 VMtile**.
3. Click **Customize VirtualMachine**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Click the **Scripts** tab.
6. If you have not already added a public SSH key to your project, click the edit icon beside **Authorized SSH key** and select one of the following options:
 - **Use existing:** Select a secret from the secrets list.
 - **Add new:**
 - a. Browse to the SSH key file or paste the file in the key field.
 - b. Enter the secret name.
 - c. Optional: Select **Automatically apply this key to any new VirtualMachine you create in this project**.
7. Set **Dynamic SSH key injection** to on.
8. Click **Save**.
9. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.
The **VirtualMachine details** page displays the progress of the VM creation.

Verification

- Click the **Scripts** tab on the **Configuration** tab.
The secret name is displayed in the **Authorized SSH key** section.

7.4.2.3.2. Enabling dynamic key injection when creating a VM from an instance type by using the web console

You can create a virtual machine (VM) from an instance type by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. You can also use the web console to create a VM by copying an existing snapshot or to clone a VM.

You can create a VM from a list of available bootable volumes. You can add Linux- or Windows-based volumes to the list.

You can enable dynamic SSH key injection when you create a virtual machine (VM) from an instance type by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. Then, you can add or revoke the key at runtime.

**NOTE**

Only Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 supports dynamic key injection.

The key is added to the VM by the QEMU guest agent, which is installed with RHEL 9.

Procedure

1. In the web console, navigate to **Virtualization** → **Catalog**.
The **InstanceTypes** tab opens by default.
2. Select either of the following options:
 - Select a suitable bootable volume from the list. If the list is truncated, click the **Show all** button to display the entire list.

**NOTE**

The bootable volume table lists only those volumes in the **openshift-virtualization-os-images** namespace that have the **instancetype.kubevirt.io/default-preference** label.

- Optional: Click the star icon to designate a bootable volume as a favorite. Starred bootable volumes appear first in the volume list.
- Click **Add volume** to upload a new volume or to use an existing persistent volume claim (PVC), a volume snapshot, or a **containerDisk** volume. Click **Save**.
Logos of operating systems that are not available in the cluster are shown at the bottom of the list. You can add a volume for the required operating system by clicking the **Add volume** link.

In addition, there is a link to the **Create a Windows boot source** quick start. The same link appears in a popover if you hover the pointer over the question mark icon next to the *Select volume to boot from* line.

Immediately after you install the environment or when the environment is disconnected, the list of volumes to boot from is empty. In that case, three operating system logos are displayed: Windows, RHEL, and Linux. You can add a new volume that meets your requirements by clicking the **Add volume** button.

3. Click an instance type tile and select the resource size appropriate for your workload.
4. Click the **Red Hat Enterprise Linux 9 VM** tile.
5. Optional: Choose the virtual machine details, including the VM's name, that apply to the volume you are booting from:
 - For a Linux-based volume, follow these steps to configure SSH:
 - a. If you have not already added a public SSH key to your project, click the edit icon beside **Authorized SSH key** in the **VirtualMachine details** section.
 - b. Select one of the following options:
 - **Use existing**: Select a secret from the secrets list.

- **Add new:** Follow these steps:
 - i. Browse to the public SSH key file or paste the file in the key field.
 - ii. Enter the secret name.
 - iii. Optional: Select **Automatically apply this key to any new VirtualMachine you create in this project.**
 - c. Click **Save**.
- For a Windows volume, follow either of these set of steps to configure sysprep options:
 - If you have not already added sysprep options for the Windows volume, follow these steps:
 - i. Click the edit icon beside **Sysprep** in the **VirtualMachine details** section.
 - ii. Add the **Autoattend.xml** answer file.
 - iii. Add the **Unattend.xml** answer file.
 - iv. Click **Save**.
 - If you want to use existing sysprep options for the Windows volume, follow these steps:
 - i. Click **Attach existing sysprep**.
 - ii. Enter the name of the existing sysprep **Unattend.xml** answer file.
 - iii. Click **Save**.
6. Set **Dynamic SSH key injection** in the **VirtualMachine details** section to on.
7. Optional: If you are creating a Windows VM, you can mount a Windows driver disk:
- a. Click the **Customize VirtualMachine** button.
 - b. On the **VirtualMachine details** page, click **Storage**.
 - c. Select the **Mount Windows drivers disk** checkbox.
8. Optional: Click **View YAML & CLI** to view the YAML file. Click **CLI** to view the CLI commands. You can also download or copy either the YAML file contents or the CLI commands.
9. Click **Create VirtualMachine**.

After the VM is created, you can monitor the status on the **VirtualMachine details** page.

7.4.2.3.3. Enabling dynamic SSH key injection by using the web console

You can enable dynamic key injection for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. Then, you can update the public SSH key at runtime.

The key is added to the VM by the QEMU guest agent, which is installed with Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9.

Prerequisites

- The guest operating system is RHEL 9.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Configuration** tab, click **Scripts**.
4. If you have not already added a public SSH key to your project, click the edit icon beside **Authorized SSH key** and select one of the following options:
 - **Use existing:** Select a secret from the secrets list.
 - **Add new:**
 - a. Browse to the SSH key file or paste the file in the key field.
 - b. Enter the secret name.
 - c. Optional: Select **Automatically apply this key to any new VirtualMachine you create in this project.**
5. Set **Dynamic SSH key injection** to on.
6. Click **Save**.

7.4.2.3.4. Enabling dynamic key injection by using the command line

You can enable dynamic key injection for a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line. Then, you can update the public SSH key at runtime.



NOTE

Only Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 supports dynamic key injection.

The key is added to the VM by the QEMU guest agent, which is installed automatically with RHEL 9.

Prerequisites

- You generated an SSH key pair by running the **ssh-keygen** command.

Procedure

1. Create a manifest file for a **VirtualMachine** object and a **Secret** object:

Example manifest

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  name: example-vm
  namespace: example-namespace
spec:
```

```

dataVolumeTemplates:
  - metadata:
      name: example-vm-volume
    spec:
      sourceRef:
        kind: DataSource
        name: rhel9
      namespace: openshift-virtualization-os-images
      storage:
        resources: {}
 instancetype:
    name: u1.medium
  preference:
    name: rhel.9
  running: true
  template:
    spec:
      domain:
        devices: {}
      volumes:
        - dataVolume:
            name: example-vm-volume
            name: rootdisk
        - cloudInitNoCloud: ①
          userData: |-  

#cloud-config  

runcmd:  

- [ setsebool, -P, virt_qemu_ga_manage_ssh, on ]  

name: cloudinitdisk
  accessCredentials:
    - sshPublicKey:
        propagationMethod:
          qemuGuestAgent:
            users: ["cloud-user"]
        source:
          secret:
            secretName: authorized-keys ②
---
apiVersion: v1
kind: Secret
metadata:
  name: authorized-keys
data:
  key: c3NoLXJzYSB... ③

```

- ① Specify the **cloudInitNoCloud** data source.
- ② Specify the **Secret** object name.
- ③ Paste the public SSH key.

2. Create the **VirtualMachine** and **Secret** objects by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <manifest_file>.yaml
```

3. Start the VM by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl start vm example-vm -n example-namespace
```

Verification

- Get the VM configuration:

```
$ oc describe vm example-vm -n example-namespace
```

Example output

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  name: example-vm
  namespace: example-namespace
spec:
  template:
    spec:
      accessCredentials:
        - sshPublicKey:
            propagationMethod:
              qemuGuestAgent:
                users: ["cloud-user"]
      source:
        secret:
          secretName: authorized-keys
# ...
```

7.4.2.4. Using the **virtctl ssh** command

You can access a running virtual machine (VM) by using the **virtctl ssh** command.

Prerequisites

- You installed the **virtctl** command line tool.
- You added a public SSH key to the VM.
- You have an SSH client installed.
- The environment where you installed the **virtctl** tool has the cluster permissions required to access the VM. For example, you ran **oc login** or you set the **KUBECONFIG** environment variable.

Procedure

- Run the **virtctl ssh** command:

```
$ virtctl -n <namespace> ssh <username>@example-vm -i <ssh_key> 1
```

- 1** Specify the namespace, user name, and the SSH private key. The default SSH key location is **/home/user/.ssh**. If you save the key in a different location, you must specify the path.

Example

```
$ virtctl -n my-namespace ssh cloud-user@example-vm -i my-key
```

TIP

You can copy the **virtctl ssh** command in the web console by selecting **Copy SSH command** from the

options  menu beside a VM on the **VirtualMachines** page.

7.4.3. Using the **virtctl port-forward** command

You can use your local OpenSSH client and the **virtctl port-forward** command to connect to a running virtual machine (VM). You can use this method with Ansible to automate the configuration of VMs.

This method is recommended for low-traffic applications because port-forwarding traffic is sent over the control plane. This method is not recommended for high-traffic applications such as Rsync or Remote Desktop Protocol because it places a heavy burden on the API server.

Prerequisites

- You have installed the **virtctl** client.
- The virtual machine you want to access is running.
- The environment where you installed the **virtctl** tool has the cluster permissions required to access the VM. For example, you ran **oc login** or you set the **KUBECONFIG** environment variable.

Procedure

1. Add the following text to the **~/.ssh/config** file on your client machine:

```
Host vm/*
  ProxyCommand virtctl port-forward --stdio=true %h %p
```

2. Connect to the VM by running the following command:

```
$ ssh <user>@vm/<vm_name>.<namespace>
```

7.4.4. Using a service for SSH access

You can create a service for a virtual machine (VM) and connect to the IP address and port exposed by the service.

Services provide excellent performance and are recommended for applications that are accessed from outside the cluster or within the cluster. Ingress traffic is protected by firewalls.

If the cluster network cannot handle the traffic load, consider using a secondary network for VM access.

7.4.4.1. About services

A Kubernetes service exposes network access for clients to an application running on a set of pods. Services offer abstraction, load balancing, and, in the case of the **NodePort** and **LoadBalancer** types, exposure to the outside world.

ClusterIP

Exposes the service on an internal IP address and as a DNS name to other applications within the cluster. A single service can map to multiple virtual machines. When a client tries to connect to the service, the client's request is load balanced among available backends. **ClusterIP** is the default service type.

NodePort

Exposes the service on the same port of each selected node in the cluster. **NodePort** makes a port accessible from outside the cluster, as long as the node itself is externally accessible to the client.

LoadBalancer

Creates an external load balancer in the current cloud (if supported) and assigns a fixed, external IP address to the service.



NOTE

For on-premise clusters, you can configure a load-balancing service by deploying the MetalLB Operator.

7.4.4.2. Creating a service

You can create a service to expose a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console, **virtctl** command line tool, or a YAML file.

7.4.4.2.1. Enabling load balancer service creation by using the web console

You can enable the creation of load balancer services for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You have configured a load balancer for the cluster.
- You are logged in as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Overview**.
2. On the **Settings** tab, click **Cluster**.
3. Expand **General settings** and **SSH configuration**.
4. Set **SSH over LoadBalancer service** to on.

7.4.4.2.2. Creating a service by using the web console

You can create a node port or load balancer service for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

Prerequisites

- You configured the cluster network to support either a load balancer or a node port.
- To create a load balancer service, you enabled the creation of load balancer services.

Procedure

1. Navigate to **VirtualMachines** and select a virtual machine to view the **VirtualMachine details** page.
2. On the **Details** tab, select **SSH over LoadBalancer** from the **SSH service type** list.
3. Optional: Click the copy icon to copy the **SSH** command to your clipboard.

Verification

- Check the **Services** pane on the **Details** tab to view the new service.

7.4.4.2.3. Creating a service by using virtctl

You can create a service for a virtual machine (VM) by using the **virtctl** command line tool.

Prerequisites

- You installed the **virtctl** command line tool.
- You configured the cluster network to support the service.
- The environment where you installed **virtctl** has the cluster permissions required to access the VM. For example, you ran **oc login** or you set the **KUBECONFIG** environment variable.

Procedure

- Create a service by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl expose vm <vm_name> --name <service_name> --type <service_type> --port <port>
```

1 Specify the **ClusterIP**, **NodePort**, or **LoadBalancer** service type.

Example

```
$ virtctl expose vm example-vm --name example-service --type NodePort --port 22
```

Verification

- Verify the service by running the following command:

```
$ oc get service
```

Next steps

After you create a service with **virtctl**, you must add **special: key** to the **spec.template.metadata.labels** stanza of the **VirtualMachine** manifest. See [Creating a service by using the command line](#).

7.4.4.2.4. Creating a service by using the command line

You can create a service and associate it with a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line.

Prerequisites

- You configured the cluster network to support the service.

Procedure

- 1 Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest to add the label for service creation:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
  name: example-vm
  namespace: example-namespace
spec:
  running: false
  template:
    metadata:
      labels:
        special: key ①
# ...
```

- 1 Add **special: key** to the **spec.template.metadata.labels** stanza.



NOTE

Labels on a virtual machine are passed through to the pod. The **special: key** label must match the label in the **spec.selector** attribute of the **Service** manifest.

- 2 Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest file to apply your changes.

- 3 Create a **Service** manifest to expose the VM:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
  name: example-service
  namespace: example-namespace
spec:
# ...
  selector:
    special: key ①
  type: NodePort ②
  ports: ③
    protocol: TCP
```

```
port: 80
targetPort: 9376
nodePort: 30000
```

- 1 Specify the label that you added to the **spec.template.metadata.labels** stanza of the **VirtualMachine** manifest.
- 2 Specify **ClusterIP**, **NodePort**, or **LoadBalancer**.
- 3 Specifies a collection of network ports and protocols that you want to expose from the virtual machine.

4. Save the **Service** manifest file.
 5. Create the service by running the following command:
- ```
$ oc create -f example-service.yaml
```
6. Restart the VM to apply the changes.

## Verification

- Query the **Service** object to verify that it is available:

```
$ oc get service -n example-namespace
```

### 7.4.4.3. Connecting to a VM exposed by a service by using SSH

You can connect to a virtual machine (VM) that is exposed by a service by using SSH.

#### Prerequisites

- You created a service to expose the VM.
- You have an SSH client installed.
- You are logged in to the cluster.

#### Procedure

- Run the following command to access the VM:

```
$ ssh <user_name>@<ip_address> -p <port> ①
```

- 1 Specify the cluster IP for a cluster IP service, the node IP for a node port service, or the external IP address for a load balancer service.

### 7.4.5. Using a secondary network for SSH access

You can configure a secondary network, attach a virtual machine (VM) to the secondary network interface, and connect to the DHCP-allocated IP address by using SSH.



## IMPORTANT

Secondary networks provide excellent performance because the traffic is not handled by the cluster network stack. However, the VMs are exposed directly to the secondary network and are not protected by firewalls. If a VM is compromised, an intruder could gain access to the secondary network. You must configure appropriate security within the operating system of the VM if you use this method.

See the [Multus](#) and [SR-IOV](#) documentation in the [OpenShift Virtualization Tuning & Scaling Guide](#) for additional information about networking options.

### Prerequisites

- You configured a secondary network such as [Linux bridge](#) or [SR-IOV](#).
- You created a network attachment definition for a [Linux bridge network](#) or the SR-IOV Network Operator created a [network attachment definition](#) when you created an **SriovNetwork** object.

#### 7.4.5.1. Configuring a VM network interface by using the web console

You can configure a network interface for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

### Prerequisites

- You created a network attachment definition for the network.

### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines**.
2. Click a VM to view the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Configuration** tab, click the **Network interfaces** tab.
4. Click **Add network interface**.
5. Enter the interface name and select the network attachment definition from the **Network** list.
6. Click **Save**.
7. Restart the VM to apply the changes.

#### 7.4.5.2. Connecting to a VM attached to a secondary network by using SSH

You can connect to a virtual machine (VM) attached to a secondary network by using SSH.

### Prerequisites

- You attached a VM to a secondary network with a DHCP server.
- You have an SSH client installed.

### Procedure

- Obtain the IP address of the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe vm <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

#### Example output

```
...
Interfaces:
Interface Name: eth0
Ip Address: 10.244.0.37/24
Ip Addresses:
10.244.0.37/24
fe80::858:aff:fef4:25/64
Mac: 0a:58:0a:f4:00:25
Name: default
...
```

- Connect to the VM by running the following command:

```
$ ssh <user_name>@<ip_address> -i <ssh_key>
```

#### Example

```
$ ssh cloud-user@10.244.0.37 -i ~/.ssh/id_rsa_cloud-user
```



#### NOTE

You can also [access a VM attached to a secondary network interface by using the cluster FQDN](#).

## 7.5. EDITING VIRTUAL MACHINES

You can update a virtual machine (VM) configuration by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console. You can update the YAML file or the **VirtualMachine details** page.

You can also edit a VM by using the command line.

To edit a VM to configure disk sharing by using virtual disks or LUN, see [Configuring shared volumes for virtual machines](#).

### 7.5.1. Editing a virtual machine by using the command line

You can edit a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line.

#### Prerequisites

- You installed the **oc** CLI.

#### Procedure

- Obtain the virtual machine configuration by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name>
```

2. Edit the YAML configuration.
3. If you edit a running virtual machine, you need to do one of the following:
  - Restart the virtual machine.
  - Run the following command for the new configuration to take effect:

```
$ oc apply vm <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

### 7.5.2. Adding a disk to a virtual machine

You can add a virtual disk to a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Disk** tab, click **Add disk**.
4. Specify the **Source**, **Name**, **Size**, **Type**, **Interface**, and **Storage Class**.
  - a. Optional: You can enable preallocation if you use a blank disk source and require maximum write performance when creating data volumes. To do so, select the **Enable preallocation** checkbox.
  - b. Optional: You can clear **Apply optimized StorageProfile settings** to change the **Volume Mode** and **Access Mode** for the virtual disk. If you do not specify these parameters, the system uses the default values from the **kubevirt-storage-class-defaults** config map.
5. Click **Add**.



#### NOTE

If the VM is running, you must restart the VM to apply the change.

### 7.5.2.1. Storage fields

| Field                        | Description                                         |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Blank (creates PVC)          | Create an empty disk.                               |
| Import via URL (creates PVC) | Import content via URL (HTTP or HTTPS endpoint).    |
| Use an existing PVC          | Use a PVC that is already available in the cluster. |

| Field                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Clone existing PVC<br>(creates PVC)  | Select an existing PVC available in the cluster and clone it.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Import via Registry<br>(creates PVC) | Import content via container registry.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Container (ephemeral)                | Upload content from a container located in a registry accessible from the cluster. The container disk should be used only for read-only filesystems such as CD-ROMs or temporary virtual machines.                                                                                                |
| Name                                 | Name of the disk. The name can contain lowercase letters ( <b>a-z</b> ), numbers ( <b>0-9</b> ), hyphens (-), and periods (.), up to a maximum of 253 characters. The first and last characters must be alphanumeric. The name must not contain uppercase letters, spaces, or special characters. |
| Size                                 | Size of the disk in GiB.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Type                                 | Type of disk. Example: Disk or CD-ROM                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Interface                            | Type of disk device. Supported interfaces are <b>virtIO</b> , <b>SATA</b> , and <b>SCSI</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Storage Class                        | The storage class that is used to create the disk.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

### Advanced storage settings

The following advanced storage settings are optional and available for **Blank**, **Import via URL**, and **Clone existing PVC** disks.

If you do not specify these parameters, the system uses the default storage profile values.

| Parameter   | Option                 | Parameter description                                                                                              |
|-------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Volume Mode | Filesystem             | Stores the virtual disk on a file system-based volume.                                                             |
|             | Block                  | Stores the virtual disk directly on the block volume. Only use <b>Block</b> if the underlying storage supports it. |
| Access Mode | ReadWriteOnce<br>(RWO) | Volume can be mounted as read-write by a single node.                                                              |

| Parameter | Option              | Parameter description                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | ReadWriteMany (RWX) | <p>Volume can be mounted as read-write by many nodes at one time.</p>  <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>This mode is required for live migration.</p> |

### 7.5.3. Mounting a Windows driver disk on a virtual machine

You can mount a Windows driver disk on a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines**.
2. Select the required VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Configuration** tab, click **Storage**.
4. Select the **Mount Windows drivers disk** checkbox.  
The Windows driver disk is displayed in the list of mounted disks.

### 7.5.4. Adding a secret, config map, or service account to a virtual machine

You add a secret, config map, or service account to a virtual machine by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

These resources are added to the virtual machine as disks. You then mount the secret, config map, or service account as you would mount any other disk.

If the virtual machine is running, changes do not take effect until you restart the virtual machine. The newly added resources are marked as pending changes at the top of the page.

#### Prerequisites

- The secret, config map, or service account that you want to add must exist in the same namespace as the target virtual machine.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click **Configuration** → **Environment**.
4. Click **Add Config Map, Secret or Service Account**
5. Click **Select a resource** and select a resource from the list. A six character serial number is automatically generated for the selected resource.

6. Optional: Click **Reload** to revert the environment to its last saved state.
7. Click **Save**.

## Verification

1. On the **VirtualMachine details** page, click **Configuration → Disks** and verify that the resource is displayed in the list of disks.
2. Restart the virtual machine by clicking **Actions → Restart**.

You can now mount the secret, config map, or service account as you would mount any other disk.

## Additional resources for config maps, secrets, and service accounts

- [Understanding config maps](#)
- [Providing sensitive data to pods](#)
- [Understanding and creating service accounts](#)

## 7.6. EDITING BOOT ORDER

You can update the values for a boot order list by using the web console or the CLI.

With **Boot Order** in the **Virtual Machine Overview** page, you can:

- Select a disk or network interface controller (NIC) and add it to the boot order list.
- Edit the order of the disks or NICs in the boot order list.
- Remove a disk or NIC from the boot order list, and return it back to the inventory of bootable sources.

### 7.6.1. Adding items to a boot order list in the web console

Add items to a boot order list by using the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Details** tab.
4. Click the pencil icon that is located on the right side of **Boot Order**. If a YAML configuration does not exist, or if this is the first time that you are creating a boot order list, the following message displays: **No resource selected. VM will attempt to boot from disks by order of appearance in YAML file.**
5. Click **Add Source** and select a bootable disk or network interface controller (NIC) for the virtual machine.
6. Add any additional disks or NICs to the boot order list.

7. Click **Save**.



#### NOTE

If the virtual machine is running, changes to **Boot Order** will not take effect until you restart the virtual machine.

You can view pending changes by clicking **View Pending Changes** on the right side of the **Boot Order** field. The **Pending Changes** banner at the top of the page displays a list of all changes that will be applied when the virtual machine restarts.

### 7.6.2. Editing a boot order list in the web console

Edit the boot order list in the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Details** tab.
4. Click the pencil icon that is located on the right side of **Boot Order**.
5. Choose the appropriate method to move the item in the boot order list:
  - If you do not use a screen reader, hover over the arrow icon next to the item that you want to move, drag the item up or down, and drop it in a location of your choice.
  - If you use a screen reader, press the Up Arrow key or Down Arrow key to move the item in the boot order list. Then, press the **Tab** key to drop the item in a location of your choice.
6. Click **Save**.



#### NOTE

If the virtual machine is running, changes to the boot order list will not take effect until you restart the virtual machine.

You can view pending changes by clicking **View Pending Changes** on the right side of the **Boot Order** field. The **Pending Changes** banner at the top of the page displays a list of all changes that will be applied when the virtual machine restarts.

### 7.6.3. Editing a boot order list in the YAML configuration file

Edit the boot order list in a YAML configuration file by using the CLI.

#### Procedure

1. Open the YAML configuration file for the virtual machine by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

2. Edit the YAML file and modify the values for the boot order associated with a disk or network interface controller (NIC). For example:

```

disks:
 - bootOrder: 1 ①
 disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: containerdisk
 - disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: cloudinitdisk
 - cdrom:
 bus: virtio
 name: cd-drive-1
interfaces:
 - boot Order: 2 ②
 macAddress: '02:96:c4:00:00'
 masquerade: {}
 name: default

```

- ① The boot order value specified for the disk.  
 ② The boot order value specified for the network interface controller.

3. Save the YAML file.

#### 7.6.4. Removing items from a boot order list in the web console

Remove items from a boot order list by using the web console.

##### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Details** tab.
4. Click the pencil icon that is located on the right side of **Boot Order**.
5. Click the **Remove** icon  next to the item. The item is removed from the boot order list and saved in the list of available boot sources. If you remove all items from the boot order list, the following message displays: **No resource selected. VM will attempt to boot from disks by order of appearance in YAML file.**



##### NOTE

If the virtual machine is running, changes to **Boot Order** will not take effect until you restart the virtual machine.

You can view pending changes by clicking **View Pending Changes** on the right side of the **Boot Order** field. The **Pending Changes** banner at the top of the page displays a list of all changes that will be applied when the virtual machine restarts.

## 7.7. DELETING VIRTUAL MACHINES

You can delete a virtual machine from the web console or by using the **oc** command line interface.

### 7.7.1. Deleting a virtual machine using the web console

Deleting a virtual machine permanently removes it from the cluster.

#### Procedure

1. In the OpenShift Container Platform console, click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Click the Options menu  beside a virtual machine and select **Delete**. Alternatively, click the virtual machine name to open the **VirtualMachine details** page and click **Actions** → **Delete**.
3. Optional: Select **With grace period** or clear **Delete disks**.
4. Click **Delete** to permanently delete the virtual machine.

### 7.7.2. Deleting a virtual machine by using the CLI

You can delete a virtual machine by using the **oc** command line interface (CLI). The **oc** client enables you to perform actions on multiple virtual machines.

#### Prerequisites

- Identify the name of the virtual machine that you want to delete.

#### Procedure

- Delete the virtual machine by running the following command:

```
$ oc delete vm <vm_name>
```



#### NOTE

This command only deletes a VM in the current project. Specify the **-n <project\_name>** option if the VM you want to delete is in a different project or namespace.

## 7.8. EXPORTING VIRTUAL MACHINES

You can export a virtual machine (VM) and its associated disks in order to import a VM into another cluster or to analyze the volume for forensic purposes.

You create a **VirtualMachineExport** custom resource (CR) by using the command line interface.

Alternatively, you can use the **virtctl vmexport** command to create a **VirtualMachineExport** CR and to download exported volumes.



## NOTE

You can migrate virtual machines between OpenShift Virtualization clusters by using the [Migration Toolkit for Virtualization](#).

### 7.8.1. Creating a `VirtualMachineExport` custom resource

You can create a **VirtualMachineExport** custom resource (CR) to export the following objects:

- Virtual machine (VM): Exports the persistent volume claims (PVCs) of a specified VM.
- VM snapshot: Exports PVCs contained in a **VirtualMachineSnapshot** CR.
- PVC: Exports a PVC. If the PVC is used by another pod, such as the **virt-launcher** pod, the export remains in a **Pending** state until the PVC is no longer in use.

The **VirtualMachineExport** CR creates internal and external links for the exported volumes. Internal links are valid within the cluster. External links can be accessed by using an **Ingress** or **Route**.

The export server supports the following file formats:

- **raw**: Raw disk image file.
- **gzip**: Compressed disk image file.
- **dir**: PVC directory and files.
- **tar.gz**: Compressed PVC file.

#### Prerequisites

- The VM must be shut down for a VM export.

#### Procedure

- 1 Create a **VirtualMachineExport** manifest to export a volume from a **VirtualMachine**, **VirtualMachineSnapshot**, or **PersistentVolumeClaim** CR according to the following example and save it as `example-export.yaml`:

#### **VirtualMachineExport** example

```
apiVersion: export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineExport
metadata:
 name: example-export
spec:
 source:
 apiGroup: "kubevirt.io" ①
 kind: VirtualMachine ②
 name: example-vm
 ttlDuration: 1h ③
```

- 1 Specify the appropriate API group:

- "`kubevirt.io`" for **VirtualMachine**.

- "snapshot.kubevirt.io" for **VirtualMachineSnapshot**.
  - "" for **PersistentVolumeClaim**.
- 2** Specify **VirtualMachine**, **VirtualMachineSnapshot**, or **PersistentVolumeClaim**.
- 3** Optional. The default duration is 2 hours.

2. Create the **VirtualMachineExport** CR:

```
$ oc create -f example-export.yaml
```

3. Get the **VirtualMachineExport** CR:

```
$ oc get vmexport example-export -o yaml
```

The internal and external links for the exported volumes are displayed in the **status** stanza:

### Output example

```
apiVersion: export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineExport
metadata:
 name: example-export
 namespace: example
spec:
 source:
 apiGroup: ""
 kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
 name: example-pvc
 tokenSecretRef: example-token
status:
 conditions:
 - lastProbeTime: null
 lastTransitionTime: "2022-06-21T14:10:09Z"
 reason: podReady
 status: "True"
 type: Ready
 - lastProbeTime: null
 lastTransitionTime: "2022-06-21T14:09:02Z"
 reason: pvcBound
 status: "True"
 type: PVCReady
 links:
 external: 1
 cert: |-
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
...
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
volumes:
- formats:
 - format: raw
 url: https://vmexport-
proxy.test.net/api/export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/example/virtualmachineexports/exan
```

```

ple-export/volumes/example-disk/disk.img
 - format: gzip
 url: https://vmexport-
proxy.test.net/api/export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/example/virtualmachineexports/exa-
ple-export/volumes/example-disk/disk.img.gz
 name: example-disk
 internal: ②
 cert: |-
 -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
 ...
 -----END CERTIFICATE-----
volumes:
- formats:
 - format: raw
 url: https://virt-export-example-export.example.svc/volumes/example-disk/disk.img
 - format: gzip
 url: https://virt-export-example-export.example.svc/volumes/example-disk/disk.img.gz
 name: example-disk
phase: Ready
serviceName: virt-export-example-export

```

- ① External links are accessible from outside the cluster by using an **Ingress** or **Route**.
- ② Internal links are only valid inside the cluster.

### 7.8.2. Accessing exported virtual machine manifests

After you export a virtual machine (VM) or snapshot, you can get the **VirtualMachine** manifest and related information from the export server.

#### Prerequisites

- You exported a virtual machine or VM snapshot by creating a **VirtualMachineExport** custom resource (CR).



#### NOTE

**VirtualMachineExport** objects that have the **spec.source.kind: PersistentVolumeClaim** parameter do not generate virtual machine manifests.

#### Procedure

1. To access the manifests, you must first copy the certificates from the source cluster to the target cluster.
  - a. Log in to the source cluster.
  - b. Save the certificates to the **cacert.crt** file by running the following command:

```
$ oc get vmexport <export_name> -o jsonpath={.status.links.external.cert} > cacert.crt
```

①

- ① Replace **<export\_name>** with the **metadata.name** value from the **VirtualMachineExport** object.

- c. Copy the **cacert.crt** file to the target cluster.
2. Decode the token in the source cluster and save it to the **token\_decode** file by running the following command:

```
$ oc get secret export-token-<export_name> -o jsonpath={.data.token} | base64 --decode > token_decode ①
```

- 1 Replace **<export\_name>** with the **metadata.name** value from the **VirtualMachineExport** object.

3. Copy the **token\_decode** file to the target cluster.
4. Get the **VirtualMachineExport** custom resource by running the following command:

```
$ oc get vmexport <export_name> -o yaml
```

5. Review the **status.links** stanza, which is divided into **external** and **internal** sections. Note the **manifests.url** fields within each section:

### Example output

```
apiVersion: export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineExport
metadata:
 name: example-export
spec:
 source:
 apiGroup: "kubevirt.io"
 kind: VirtualMachine
 name: example-vm
 tokenSecretRef: example-token
 status:
#...
 links:
 external:
#...
 manifests:
 - type: all
 url: https://vmexport-
proxy.test.net/api/export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/example/virtualmachineexports/exam
ple-export/external/manifests/all ①
 - type: auth-header-secret
 url: https://vmexport-
proxy.test.net/api/export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/example/virtualmachineexports/exam
ple-export/external/manifests/secret ②
 internal:
#...
 manifests:
 - type: all
 url: https://virt-export-export-pvc.default.svc/internal/manifests/all ③
 - type: auth-header-secret
```

```
url: https://virt-export-export-pvc.default.svc/internal/manifests/secret
phase: Ready
serviceName: virt-export-example-export
```

- 1 Contains the **VirtualMachine** manifest, **DataVolume** manifest, if present, and a **ConfigMap** manifest that contains the public certificate for the external URL's ingress or route.
- 2 Contains a secret containing a header that is compatible with Containerized Data Importer (CDI). The header contains a text version of the export token.
- 3 Contains the **VirtualMachine** manifest, **DataVolume** manifest, if present, and a **ConfigMap** manifest that contains the certificate for the internal URL's export server.

6. Log in to the target cluster.

7. Get the **Secret** manifest by running the following command:

```
$ curl --cacert cacert.crt <secret_manifest_url> -H \ ①
"x-kubevirt-export-token:token_decode" -H \ ②
"Accept:application/yaml"
```

- 1 Replace **<secret\_manifest\_url>** with an **auth-header-secret** URL from the **VirtualMachineExport** YAML output.
- 2 Reference the **token\_decode** file that you created earlier.

For example:

```
$ curl --cacert cacert.crt https://vmexport-
proxy.test.net/api/export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/example/virtualmachineexports/exam-
ple-export/external/manifests/secret -H "x-kubevirt-export-token:token_decode" -H
"Accept:application/yaml"
```

8. Get the manifests of **type: all**, such as the **ConfigMap** and **VirtualMachine** manifests, by running the following command:

```
$ curl --cacert cacert.crt <all_manifest_url> -H \ ①
"x-kubevirt-export-token:token_decode" -H \ ②
"Accept:application/yaml"
```

- 1 Replace **<all\_manifest\_url>** with a URL from the **VirtualMachineExport** YAML output.
- 2 Reference the **token\_decode** file that you created earlier.

For example:

```
$ curl --cacert cacert.crt https://vmexport-
proxy.test.net/api/export.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/example/virtualmachineexports/exam-
ple-export/external/manifests/all -H "x-kubevirt-export-token:token_decode" -H
"Accept:application/yaml"
```

## Next steps

- You can now create the **ConfigMap** and **VirtualMachine** objects on the target cluster by using the exported manifests.

## 7.9. MANAGING VIRTUAL MACHINE INSTANCES

If you have standalone virtual machine instances (VMIs) that were created independently outside of the OpenShift Virtualization environment, you can manage them by using the web console or by using **oc** or **virtctl** commands from the command-line interface (CLI).

The **virtctl** command provides more virtualization options than the **oc** command. For example, you can use **virtctl** to pause a VM or expose a port.

### 7.9.1. About virtual machine instances

A virtual machine instance (VMI) is a representation of a running virtual machine (VM). When a VMI is owned by a VM or by another object, you manage it through its owner in the web console or by using the **oc** command-line interface (CLI).

A standalone VMI is created and started independently with a script, through automation, or by using other methods in the CLI. In your environment, you might have standalone VMIs that were developed and started outside of the OpenShift Virtualization environment. You can continue to manage those standalone VMIs by using the CLI. You can also use the web console for specific tasks associated with standalone VMIs:

- List standalone VMIs and their details.
- Edit labels and annotations for a standalone VMI.
- Delete a standalone VMI.

When you delete a VM, the associated VMI is automatically deleted. You delete a standalone VMI directly because it is not owned by VMs or other objects.



#### NOTE

Before you uninstall OpenShift Virtualization, list and view the standalone VMIs by using the CLI or the web console. Then, delete any outstanding VMIs.

When you edit a VM, some settings might be applied to the VMIs dynamically and without the need for a restart. Any change made to a VM object that cannot be applied to the VMIs dynamically will trigger the **RestartRequired** VM condition. Changes are effective on the next reboot, and the condition is removed.

### 7.9.2. Listing all virtual machine instances using the CLI

You can list all virtual machine instances (VMIs) in your cluster, including standalone VMIs and those owned by virtual machines, by using the **oc** command-line interface (CLI).

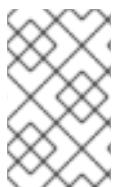
#### Procedure

- List all VMIs by running the following command:

```
$ oc get vmis -A
```

### 7.9.3. Listing standalone virtual machine instances using the web console

Using the web console, you can list and view standalone virtual machine instances (VMIs) in your cluster that are not owned by virtual machines (VMs).



#### NOTE

VMIs that are owned by VMs or other objects are not displayed in the web console. The web console displays only standalone VMIs. If you want to list all VMIs in your cluster, you must use the CLI.

#### Procedure

- Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.  
You can identify a standalone VMI by a dark colored badge next to its name.

### 7.9.4. Editing a standalone virtual machine instance using the web console

You can edit the annotations and labels of a standalone virtual machine instance (VMI) using the web console. Other fields are not editable.

#### Procedure

- In the OpenShift Container Platform console, click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
- Select a standalone VMI to open the **VirtualMachineInstance** details page.
- On the **Details** tab, click the pencil icon beside **Annotations** or **Labels**.
- Make the relevant changes and click **Save**.

### 7.9.5. Deleting a standalone virtual machine instance using the CLI

You can delete a standalone virtual machine instance (VMI) by using the **oc** command-line interface (CLI).

#### Prerequisites

- Identify the name of the VMI that you want to delete.

#### Procedure

- Delete the VMI by running the following command:

```
$ oc delete vmi <vmi_name>
```

### 7.9.6. Deleting a standalone virtual machine instance using the web console

Delete a standalone virtual machine instance (VMI) from the web console.

#### Procedure

1. In the OpenShift Container Platform web console, click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Click **Actions** → **Delete VirtualMachineInstance**.
3. In the confirmation pop-up window, click **Delete** to permanently delete the standalone VMI.

## 7.10. CONTROLLING VIRTUAL MACHINE STATES

You can stop, start, restart, and unpause virtual machines from the web console.

You can use **virtctl** to manage virtual machine states and perform other actions from the CLI. For example, you can use **virtctl** to force stop a VM or expose a port.

### 7.10.1. Starting a virtual machine

You can start a virtual machine from the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Find the row that contains the virtual machine that you want to start.
3. Navigate to the appropriate menu for your use case:
  - To stay on this page, where you can perform actions on multiple virtual machines:
    - a. Click the Options menu  located at the far right end of the row and click **Start VirtualMachine**.
  - To view comprehensive information about the selected virtual machine before you start it:
    - a. Access the **VirtualMachine details** page by clicking the name of the virtual machine.
    - b. Click **Actions** → **Start**.



#### NOTE

When you start virtual machine that is provisioned from a **URL** source for the first time, the virtual machine has a status of **Importing** while OpenShift Virtualization imports the container from the URL endpoint. Depending on the size of the image, this process might take several minutes.

### 7.10.2. Stopping a virtual machine

You can stop a virtual machine from the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Find the row that contains the virtual machine that you want to stop.

3. Navigate to the appropriate menu for your use case:

- To stay on this page, where you can perform actions on multiple virtual machines:

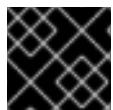


- a. Click the Options menu located at the far right end of the row and click **Stop VirtualMachine**.

- To view comprehensive information about the selected virtual machine before you stop it:
  - a. Access the **VirtualMachine details** page by clicking the name of the virtual machine.
  - b. Click **Actions → Stop**.

### 7.10.3. Restarting a virtual machine

You can restart a running virtual machine from the web console.



#### IMPORTANT

To avoid errors, do not restart a virtual machine while it has a status of **Importing**.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** from the side menu.

2. Find the row that contains the virtual machine that you want to restart.

3. Navigate to the appropriate menu for your use case:

- To stay on this page, where you can perform actions on multiple virtual machines:



- a. Click the Options menu located at the far right end of the row and click **Restart**.

- To view comprehensive information about the selected virtual machine before you restart it:
  - a. Access the **VirtualMachine details** page by clicking the name of the virtual machine.
  - b. Click **Actions → Restart**.

### 7.10.4. Pausing a virtual machine

You can pause a virtual machine from the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** from the side menu.

2. Find the row that contains the virtual machine that you want to pause.

3. Navigate to the appropriate menu for your use case:

- To stay on this page, where you can perform actions on multiple virtual machines:



- a. Click the Options menu located at the far right end of the row and click **Pause VirtualMachine**.
- To view comprehensive information about the selected virtual machine before you pause it:
  - a. Access the **VirtualMachine details** page by clicking the name of the virtual machine.
  - b. Click **Actions → Pause**.

### 7.10.5. Unpausing a virtual machine

You can unpause a paused virtual machine from the web console.

#### Prerequisites

- At least one of your virtual machines must have a status of **Paused**.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Find the row that contains the virtual machine that you want to unpause.
3. Navigate to the appropriate menu for your use case:
  - To stay on this page, where you can perform actions on multiple virtual machines:
    - a. Click the Options menu located at the far right end of the row and click **Unpause VirtualMachine**.
  - To view comprehensive information about the selected virtual machine before you unpause it:
    - a. Access the **VirtualMachine details** page by clicking the name of the virtual machine.
    - b. Click **Actions → Unpause**.

## 7.11. USING VIRTUAL TRUSTED PLATFORM MODULE DEVICES

Add a virtual Trusted Platform Module (vTPM) device to a new or existing virtual machine by editing the **VirtualMachine** (VM) or **VirtualMachineInstance** (VMI) manifest.

### 7.11.1. About vTPM devices

A virtual Trusted Platform Module (vTPM) device functions like a physical Trusted Platform Module (TPM) hardware chip.

You can use a vTPM device with any operating system, but Windows 11 requires the presence of a TPM chip to install or boot. A vTPM device allows VMs created from a Windows 11 image to function without a physical TPM chip.

If you do not enable vTPM, then the VM does not recognize a TPM device, even if the node has one.

A vTPM device also protects virtual machines by storing secrets without physical hardware. OpenShift Virtualization supports persisting vTPM device state by using Persistent Volume Claims (PVCs) for VMs. You must specify the storage class to be used by the PVC by setting the **vmStateStorageClass** attribute in the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR):

```
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 vmStateStorageClass: <storage_class_name>
...
```



#### NOTE

The storage class must be of type **Filesystem** and support the **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode.

### 7.11.2. Adding a vTPM device to a virtual machine

Adding a virtual Trusted Platform Module (vTPM) device to a virtual machine (VM) allows you to run a VM created from a Windows 11 image without a physical TPM device. A vTPM device also stores secrets for that VM.

#### Prerequisites

- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have configured a Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) to use a storage class of type **Filesystem** that supports the **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode. This is necessary for the vTPM device data to persist across VM reboots.

#### Procedure

1. Run the following command to update the VM configuration:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

2. Edit the VM specification to add the vTPM device. For example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 tpm: ①
 persistent: true ②
...
```

- 1 Adds the vTPM device to the VM.
  - 2 Specifies that the vTPM device state persists after the VM is shut down. The default value is **false**.
3. To apply your changes, save and exit the editor.
  4. Optional: If you edited a running virtual machine, you must restart it for the changes to take effect.

## 7.12. MANAGING VIRTUAL MACHINES WITH OPENSHIFT PIPELINES

[Red Hat OpenShift Pipelines](#) is a Kubernetes-native CI/CD framework that allows developers to design and run each step of the CI/CD pipeline in its own container.

The Scheduling, Scale, and Performance (SSP) Operator integrates OpenShift Virtualization with OpenShift Pipelines. The SSP Operator includes tasks and example pipelines that allow you to:

- Create and manage virtual machines (VMs), persistent volume claims (PVCs), and data volumes
- Run commands in VMs
- Manipulate disk images with **libguestfs** tools

### 7.12.1. Prerequisites

- You have access to an OpenShift Container Platform cluster with **cluster-admin** permissions.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have [installed OpenShift Pipelines](#).

### 7.12.2. Virtual machine tasks supported by the SSP Operator

The following table shows the tasks that are included as part of the SSP Operator.

Table 7.4. Virtual machine tasks supported by the SSP Operator

| Task                           | Description                                                                |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>create-vm-from-manifest</b> | Create a virtual machine from a provided manifest or with <b>virtctl</b> . |
| <b>create-vm-from-template</b> | Create a virtual machine from a template.                                  |
| <b>copy-template</b>           | Copy a virtual machine template.                                           |
| <b>modify-vm-template</b>      | Modify a virtual machine template.                                         |
| <b>modify-data-object</b>      | Create or delete data volumes or data sources.                             |

| Task                       | Description                                                                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>cleanup-vm</b>          | Run a script or a command in a virtual machine and stop or delete the virtual machine afterward.  |
| <b>disk-virt-customize</b> | Use the <b>virt-customize</b> tool to run a customization script on a target PVC.                 |
| <b>disk-virt-sysprep</b>   | Use the <b>virt-sysprep</b> tool to run a sysprep script on a target PVC.                         |
| <b>wait-for-vmi-status</b> | Wait for a specific status of a virtual machine instance and fail or succeed based on the status. |



#### NOTE

Virtual machine creation in pipelines now utilizes **ClusterInstanceType** and **ClusterPreference** instead of template-based tasks, which have been deprecated. The **create-vm-from-template**, **copy-template**, and **modify-vm-template** commands remain available but are not used in default pipeline tasks.

### 7.12.3. Windows EFI installer pipeline

You can run the [Windows EFI installer pipeline](#) by using the web console or CLI.

The Windows EFI installer pipeline installs Windows 10, Windows 11, or Windows Server 2022 into a new data volume from a Windows installation image (ISO file). A custom answer file is used to run the installation process.



#### NOTE

The Windows EFI installer pipeline uses a config map file with **sysprep** predefined by OpenShift Container Platform and suitable for Microsoft ISO files. For ISO files pertaining to different Windows editions, it may be necessary to create a new config map file with a system-specific **sysprep** definition.

#### 7.12.3.1. Running the example pipelines using the web console

You can run the example pipelines from the **Pipelines** menu in the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Pipelines** → **Pipelines** in the side menu.
2. Select a pipeline to open the **Pipeline details** page.
3. From the **Actions** list, select **Start**. The **Start Pipeline** dialog is displayed.
4. Keep the default values for the parameters and then click **Start** to run the pipeline. The **Details** tab tracks the progress of each task and displays the pipeline status.

#### 7.12.3.2. Running the example pipelines using the CLI

Use a **PipelineRun** resource to run the example pipelines. A **PipelineRun** object is the running instance of a pipeline. It instantiates a pipeline for execution with specific inputs, outputs, and execution parameters on a cluster. It also creates a **TaskRun** object for each task in the pipeline.

## Procedure

- To run the Windows 10 installer pipeline, create the following **PipelineRun** manifest:

```
apiVersion: tekton.dev/v1beta1
kind: PipelineRun
metadata:
 generateName: windows10-installer-run-
 labels:
 pipelinerun: windows10-installer-run
spec:
 params:
 - name: winImageDownloadURL
 value: <link_to_windows_10_iso> ①
 pipelineRef:
 name: windows10-installer
 taskRunSpecs:
 - pipelineTaskName: copy-template
 taskServiceAccountName: copy-template-task
 - pipelineTaskName: modify-vm-template
 taskServiceAccountName: modify-vm-template-task
 - pipelineTaskName: create-vm-from-template
 taskServiceAccountName: create-vm-from-template-task
 - pipelineTaskName: wait-for-vmi-status
 taskServiceAccountName: wait-for-vmi-status-task
 - pipelineTaskName: create-base-dv
 taskServiceAccountName: modify-data-object-task
 - pipelineTaskName: cleanup-vm
 taskServiceAccountName: cleanup-vm-task
 status: {}
```

- ① Specify the URL for the Windows 10 64-bit ISO file. The product language must be English (United States).

- Apply the **PipelineRun** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -f windows10-installer-run.yaml
```

- To run the Windows 10 customize pipeline, create the following **PipelineRun** manifest:

```
apiVersion: tekton.dev/v1beta1
kind: PipelineRun
metadata:
 generateName: windows10-customize-run-
 labels:
 pipelinerun: windows10-customize-run
spec:
 params:
 - name: allowReplaceGoldenTemplate
 value: true
```

```

- name: allowReplaceCustomizationTemplate
 value: true
pipelineRef:
 name: windows10-customize
taskRunSpecs:
- pipelineTaskName: copy-template-customize
 taskServiceAccountName: copy-template-task
- pipelineTaskName: modify-vm-template-customize
 taskServiceAccountName: modify-vm-template-task
- pipelineTaskName: create-vm-from-template
 taskServiceAccountName: create-vm-from-template-task
- pipelineTaskName: wait-for-vmi-status
 taskServiceAccountName: wait-for-vmi-status-task
- pipelineTaskName: create-base-dv
 taskServiceAccountName: modify-data-object-task
- pipelineTaskName: cleanup-vm
 taskServiceAccountName: cleanup-vm-task
- pipelineTaskName: copy-template-golden
 taskServiceAccountName: copy-template-task
- pipelineTaskName: modify-vm-template-golden
 taskServiceAccountName: modify-vm-template-task
status: {}

```

4. Apply the **PipelineRun** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -f windows10-customize-run.yaml
```

#### 7.12.4. Additional resources

- [Creating CI/CD solutions for applications using Red Hat OpenShift Pipelines](#)
- [Creating a Windows VM](#)

### 7.13. ADVANCED VIRTUAL MACHINE MANAGEMENT

#### 7.13.1. Working with resource quotas for virtual machines

Create and manage resource quotas for virtual machines.

##### 7.13.1.1. Setting resource quota limits for virtual machines

Resource quotas that only use requests automatically work with virtual machines (VMs). If your resource quota uses limits, you must manually set resource limits on VMs. Resource limits must be at least 100 MiB larger than resource requests.

##### Procedure

1. Set limits for a VM by editing the **VirtualMachine** manifest. For example:

```

apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: with-limits

```

```

spec:
 running: false
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 # ...
 resources:
 requests:
 memory: 128Mi
 limits:
 memory: 256Mi ①

```

- ① This configuration is supported because the `limits.memory` value is at least `100Mi` larger than the `requests.memory` value.

2. Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest.

### 7.13.1.2. Additional resources

- [Resource quotas per project](#)
- [Resource quotas across multiple projects](#)

### 7.13.2. Specifying nodes for virtual machines

You can place virtual machines (VMs) on specific nodes by using node placement rules.

#### 7.13.2.1. About node placement for virtual machines

To ensure that virtual machines (VMs) run on appropriate nodes, you can configure node placement rules. You might want to do this if:

- You have several VMs. To ensure fault tolerance, you want them to run on different nodes.
- You have two chatty VMs. To avoid redundant inter-node routing, you want the VMs to run on the same node.
- Your VMs require specific hardware features that are not present on all available nodes.
- You have a pod that adds capabilities to a node, and you want to place a VM on that node so that it can use those capabilities.



#### NOTE

Virtual machine placement relies on any existing node placement rules for workloads. If workloads are excluded from specific nodes on the component level, virtual machines cannot be placed on those nodes.

You can use the following rule types in the `spec` field of a **VirtualMachine** manifest:

#### **nodeSelector**

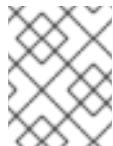
Allows virtual machines to be scheduled on nodes that are labeled with the key-value pair or pairs that you specify in this field. The node must have labels that exactly match all listed pairs.

## affinity

Enables you to use more expressive syntax to set rules that match nodes with virtual machines. For example, you can specify that a rule is a preference, rather than a hard requirement, so that virtual machines are still scheduled if the rule is not satisfied. Pod affinity, pod anti-affinity, and node affinity are supported for virtual machine placement. Pod affinity works for virtual machines because the **VirtualMachine** workload type is based on the **Pod** object.

## tolerations

Allows virtual machines to be scheduled on nodes that have matching taints. If a taint is applied to a node, that node only accepts virtual machines that tolerate the taint.



### NOTE

Affinity rules only apply during scheduling. OpenShift Container Platform does not reschedule running workloads if the constraints are no longer met.

### 7.13.2.2. Node placement examples

The following example YAML file snippets use **nodePlacement**, **affinity**, and **tolerations** fields to customize node placement for virtual machines.

#### 7.13.2.2.1. Example: VM node placement with nodeSelector

In this example, the virtual machine requires a node that has metadata containing both **example-key-1 = example-value-1** and **example-key-2 = example-value-2** labels.



### WARNING

If there are no nodes that fit this description, the virtual machine is not scheduled.

### Example VM manifest

```
metadata:
 name: example-vm-node-selector
 apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
 kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 nodeSelector:
 example-key-1: example-value-1
 example-key-2: example-value-2
 # ...
```

#### 7.13.2.2.2. Example: VM node placement with pod affinity and pod anti-affinity

In this example, the VM must be scheduled on a node that has a running pod with the label **example-key-1 = example-value-1**. If there is no such pod running on any node, the VM is not scheduled.

If possible, the VM is not scheduled on a node that has any pod with the label **example-key-2 = example-value-2**. However, if all candidate nodes have a pod with this label, the scheduler ignores this constraint.

### Example VM manifest

```

metadata:
 name: example-vm-pod-affinity
 apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
 kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 affinity:
 podAffinity:
 requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution: ①
 - labelSelector:
 matchExpressions:
 - key: example-key-1
 operator: In
 values:
 - example-value-1
 topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
 podAntiAffinity:
 preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution: ②
 - weight: 100
 podAffinityTerm:
 labelSelector:
 matchExpressions:
 - key: example-key-2
 operator: In
 values:
 - example-value-2
 topologyKey: kubernetes.io/hostname
...

```

① If you use the **requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution** rule type, the VM is not scheduled if the constraint is not met.

② If you use the **preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution** rule type, the VM is still scheduled if the constraint is not met, as long as all required constraints are met.

#### 7.13.2.2.3. Example: VM node placement with node affinity

In this example, the VM must be scheduled on a node that has the label **example.io/example-key = example-value-1** or the label **example.io/example-key = example-value-2**. The constraint is met if only one of the labels is present on the node. If neither label is present, the VM is not scheduled.

If possible, the scheduler avoids nodes that have the label **example-node-label-key = example-node-label-value**. However, if all candidate nodes have this label, the scheduler ignores this constraint.

### Example VM manifest

```

metadata:

```

```

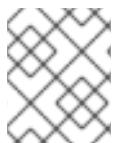
name: example-vm-node-affinity
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 affinity:
 nodeAffinity:
 requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution: ①
 nodeSelectorTerms:
 - matchExpressions:
 - key: example.io/example-key
 operator: In
 values:
 - example-value-1
 - example-value-2
 preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution: ②
 - weight: 1
 preference:
 matchExpressions:
 - key: example-node-label-key
 operator: In
 values:
 - example-node-label-value
...

```

- ① If you use the **requiredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution** rule type, the VM is not scheduled if the constraint is not met.
- ② If you use the **preferredDuringSchedulingIgnoredDuringExecution** rule type, the VM is still scheduled if the constraint is not met, as long as all required constraints are met.

#### 7.13.2.2.4. Example: VM node placement with tolerations

In this example, nodes that are reserved for virtual machines are already labeled with the **key=virtualization:NoSchedule** taint. Because this virtual machine has matching **tolerations**, it can schedule onto the tainted nodes.



#### NOTE

A virtual machine that tolerates a taint is not required to schedule onto a node with that taint.

#### Example VM manifest

```

metadata:
 name: example-vm-tolerations
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 tolerations:
 - key: "key"
 operator: "Equal"

```

```
value: "virtualization"
effect: "NoSchedule"
...
```

### 7.13.2.3. Additional resources

- Specifying nodes for virtualization components
- Placing pods on specific nodes using node selectors
- Controlling pod placement on nodes using node affinity rules
- Controlling pod placement using node taints

### 7.13.3. Activating kernel samepage merging (KSM)

OpenShift Virtualization can activate kernel samepage merging (KSM) when nodes are overloaded. KSM deduplicates identical data found in the memory pages of virtual machines (VMs). If you have very similar VMs, KSM can make it possible to schedule more VMs on a single node.



#### IMPORTANT

You must only use KSM with trusted workloads.

#### 7.13.3.1. Prerequisites

- Ensure that an administrator has configured KSM support on any nodes where you want OpenShift Virtualization to activate KSM.

#### 7.13.3.2. About using OpenShift Virtualization to activate KSM

You can configure OpenShift Virtualization to activate kernel samepage merging (KSM) when nodes experience memory overload.

##### 7.13.3.2.1. Configuration methods

You can enable or disable the KSM activation feature for all nodes by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). The **HyperConverged** CR supports more granular configuration.

###### CR configuration

You can configure the KSM activation feature by editing the **spec.configuration.ksmConfiguration** stanza of the **HyperConverged** CR.

- You enable the feature and configure settings by editing the **ksmConfiguration** stanza.
- You disable the feature by deleting the **ksmConfiguration** stanza.
- You can allow OpenShift Virtualization to enable KSM on only a subset of nodes by adding node selection syntax to the **ksmConfiguration.nodeLabelSelector** field.

**NOTE**

Even if the KSM activation feature is disabled in OpenShift Virtualization, an administrator can still enable KSM on nodes that support it.

**7.13.3.2.2. KSM node labels**

OpenShift Virtualization identifies nodes that are configured to support KSM and applies the following node labels:

**`kubevirt.io/ksm-handler-managed: "false"`**

This label is set to "**true**" when OpenShift Virtualization activates KSM on a node that is experiencing memory overload. This label is not set to "**true**" if an administrator activates KSM.

**`kubevirt.io/ksm-enabled: "false"`**

This label is set to "**true**" when KSM is activated on a node, even if OpenShift Virtualization did not activate KSM.

These labels are not applied to nodes that do not support KSM.

**7.13.3.3. Configuring KSM activation by using the web console**

You can allow OpenShift Virtualization to activate kernel samepage merging (KSM) on all nodes in your cluster by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

**Procedure**

1. From the side menu, click **Virtualization** → **Overview**.
2. Select the **Settings** tab.
3. Select the **Cluster** tab.
4. Expand **Resource management**.
5. Enable or disable the feature for all nodes:
  - Set **Kernel Samepage Merging (KSM)** to on.
  - Set **Kernel Samepage Merging (KSM)** to off.

**7.13.3.4. Configuring KSM activation by using the CLI**

You can enable or disable OpenShift Virtualization's kernel samepage merging (KSM) activation feature by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). Use this method if you want OpenShift Virtualization to activate KSM on only a subset of nodes.

**Procedure**

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:
 

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```
2. Edit the **ksmConfiguration** stanza:

- To enable the KSM activation feature for all nodes, set the **nodeLabelSelector** value to `{}`. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 configuration:
 ksmConfiguration:
 nodeLabelSelector: {}
...
```

- To enable the KSM activation feature on a subset of nodes, edit the **nodeLabelSelector** field. Add syntax that matches the nodes where you want OpenShift Virtualization to enable KSM. For example, the following configuration allows OpenShift Virtualization to enable KSM on nodes where both `<first_example_key>` and `<second_example_key>` are set to `"true"`:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 configuration:
 ksmConfiguration:
 nodeLabelSelector:
 matchLabels:
 <first_example_key>: "true"
 <second_example_key>: "true"
...
```

- To disable the KSM activation feature, delete the **ksmConfiguration** stanza. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 configuration:
...
```

3. Save the file.

#### 7.13.3.5. Additional resources

- [Specifying nodes for virtual machines](#)
- [Placing pods on specific nodes using node selectors](#)
- [Managing kernel samepage merging](#) in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) documentation

## 7.13.4. Configuring certificate rotation

Configure certificate rotation parameters to replace existing certificates.

### 7.13.4.1. Configuring certificate rotation

You can do this during OpenShift Virtualization installation in the web console or after installation in the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Procedure

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Edit the **spec.certConfig** fields as shown in the following example. To avoid overloading the system, ensure that all values are greater than or equal to 10 minutes. Express all values as strings that comply with the [golang ParseDuration format](#).

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 certConfig:
 ca:
 duration: 48h0m0s
 renewBefore: 24h0m0s ①
 server:
 duration: 24h0m0s ②
 renewBefore: 12h0m0s ③
```

- ① The value of **ca.renewBefore** must be less than or equal to the value of **ca.duration**.
- ② The value of **server.duration** must be less than or equal to the value of **ca.duration**.
- ③ The value of **server.renewBefore** must be less than or equal to the value of **server.duration**.

3. Apply the YAML file to your cluster.

### 7.13.4.2. Troubleshooting certificate rotation parameters

Deleting one or more **certConfig** values causes them to revert to the default values, unless the default values conflict with one of the following conditions:

- The value of **ca.renewBefore** must be less than or equal to the value of **ca.duration**.
- The value of **server.duration** must be less than or equal to the value of **ca.duration**.
- The value of **server.renewBefore** must be less than or equal to the value of **server.duration**.

If the default values conflict with these conditions, you will receive an error.

If you remove the **server.duration** value in the following example, the default value of **24h0m0s** is greater than the value of **ca.duration**, conflicting with the specified conditions.

## Example

```
certConfig:
 ca:
 duration: 4h0m0s
 renewBefore: 1h0m0s
 server:
 duration: 4h0m0s
 renewBefore: 4h0m0s
```

This results in the following error message:

```
error: hyperconvergeds.hco.kubevirt.io "kubevirt-hyperconverged" could not be patched: admission webhook "validate-hco.kubevirt.io" denied the request: spec.certConfig: ca.duration is smaller than server.duration
```

The error message only mentions the first conflict. Review all certConfig values before you proceed.

### 7.13.5. Configuring the default CPU model

Use the **defaultCPUModel** setting in the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR) to define a cluster-wide default CPU model.

The virtual machine (VM) CPU model depends on the availability of CPU models within the VM and the cluster.

- If the VM does not have a defined CPU model:
  - The **defaultCPUModel** is automatically set using the CPU model defined at the cluster-wide level.
- If both the VM and the cluster have a defined CPU model:
  - The VM's CPU model takes precedence.
- If neither the VM nor the cluster have a defined CPU model:
  - The host-model is automatically set using the CPU model defined at the host level.

#### 7.13.5.1. Configuring the default CPU model

Configure the **defaultCPUModel** by updating the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). You can change the **defaultCPUModel** while OpenShift Virtualization is running.



#### NOTE

The **defaultCPUModel** is case sensitive.

#### Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (oc).

## Procedure

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Add the **defaultCPUModel** field to the CR and set the value to the name of a CPU model that exists in the cluster:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 defaultCPUModel: "EPYC"
```

3. Apply the YAML file to your cluster.

### 7.13.6. Using UEFI mode for virtual machines

You can boot a virtual machine (VM) in Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) mode.

#### 7.13.6.1. About UEFI mode for virtual machines

Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI), like legacy BIOS, initializes hardware components and operating system image files when a computer starts. UEFI supports more modern features and customization options than BIOS, enabling faster boot times.

It stores all the information about initialization and startup in a file with a **.efi** extension, which is stored on a special partition called EFI System Partition (ESP). The ESP also contains the boot loader programs for the operating system that is installed on the computer.

#### 7.13.6.2. Booting virtual machines in UEFI mode

You can configure a virtual machine to boot in UEFI mode by editing the **VirtualMachine** manifest.

## Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

## Procedure

1. Edit or create a **VirtualMachine** manifest file. Use the **spec.firmware.bootloader** stanza to configure UEFI mode:

### Booting in UEFI mode with secure boot active

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 labels:
 special: vm-secureboot
 name: vm-secureboot
```

```

spec:
template:
metadata:
labels:
special: vm-secureboot
spec:
domain:
devices:
disks:
- disk:
bus: virtio
name: containerdisk
features:
acpi: {}
smm:
enabled: true 1
firmware:
bootloader:
efi:
secureBoot: true 2
...

```

- 1** OpenShift Virtualization requires System Management Mode (**SMM**) to be enabled for Secure Boot in UEFI mode to occur.
- 2** OpenShift Virtualization supports a VM with or without Secure Boot when using UEFI mode. If Secure Boot is enabled, then UEFI mode is required. However, UEFI mode can be enabled without using Secure Boot.

2. Apply the manifest to your cluster by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

### 7.13.6.3. Enabling persistent EFI

You can enable EFI persistence in a VM by configuring an RWX storage class at the cluster level and adjusting the settings in the EFI section of the VM.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have cluster administrator privileges.
- You must have a storage class that supports RWX access mode and FS volume mode.

#### Procedure

- Enable the **VMPersistentState** feature gate by running the following command:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type json -p '[{"op":"replace","path":"/spec/featureGates/VMPersistentState", "value":true}]'
```

### 7.13.6.4. Configuring VMs with persistent EFI

You can configure a VM to have EFI persistence enabled by editing its manifest file.

## Prerequisites

- **VMPersistentState** feature gate enabled.

## Procedure

- Edit the VM manifest file and save to apply settings.

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: vm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 firmware:
 bootloader:
 efi:
 persistent: true
...
```

## 7.13.7. Configuring PXE booting for virtual machines

PXE booting, or network booting, is available in OpenShift Virtualization. Network booting allows a computer to boot and load an operating system or other program without requiring a locally attached storage device. For example, you can use it to choose your desired OS image from a PXE server when deploying a new host.

### 7.13.7.1. Prerequisites

- A Linux bridge must be [connected](#).
- The PXE server must be connected to the same VLAN as the bridge.

### 7.13.7.2. PXE booting with a specified MAC address

As an administrator, you can boot a client over the network by first creating a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object for your PXE network. Then, reference the network attachment definition in your virtual machine instance configuration file before you start the virtual machine instance. You can also specify a MAC address in the virtual machine instance configuration file, if required by the PXE server.

## Prerequisites

- A Linux bridge must be connected.
- The PXE server must be connected to the same VLAN as the bridge.

## Procedure

1. Configure a PXE network on the cluster:

- Create the network attachment definition file for PXE network **pxe-net-conf**:

```
apiVersion: "k8s.cni.cncf.io/v1"
kind: NetworkAttachmentDefinition
metadata:
 name: pxe-net-conf
spec:
 config: {
 "cniVersion": "0.3.1",
 "name": "pxe-net-conf",
 "plugins": [
 {
 "type": "cnv-bridge",
 "bridge": "br1",
 "vlan": 1 1
 },
 {
 "type": "cnv-tuning" 2
 }
]
 }
```

**1** Optional: The VLAN tag.

**2** The **cnv-tuning** plugin provides support for custom MAC addresses.



#### NOTE

The virtual machine instance will be attached to the bridge **br1** through an access port with the requested VLAN.

- Create the network attachment definition by using the file you created in the previous step:

```
$ oc create -f pxe-net-conf.yaml
```

- Edit the virtual machine instance configuration file to include the details of the interface and network.

- Specify the network and MAC address, if required by the PXE server. If the MAC address is not specified, a value is assigned automatically.

Ensure that **bootOrder** is set to **1** so that the interface boots first. In this example, the interface is connected to a network called **<pxe-net>**:

```
interfaces:
- masquerade: {}
 name: default
- bridge: {}
 name: pxe-net
 macAddress: de:00:00:00:00:de
 bootOrder: 1
```

**NOTE**

Boot order is global for interfaces and disks.

- b. Assign a boot device number to the disk to ensure proper booting after operating system provisioning.

Set the disk **bootOrder** value to **2**:

```
devices:
disks:
- disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: containerdisk
 bootOrder: 2
```

- c. Specify that the network is connected to the previously created network attachment definition. In this scenario, **<pxe-net>** is connected to the network attachment definition called **<pxe-net-conf>**:

```
networks:
- name: default
 pod: {}
- name: pxe-net
 multus:
 networkName: pxe-net-conf
```

4. Create the virtual machine instance:

```
$ oc create -f vmi-pxe-boot.yaml
```

**Example output**

```
virtualmachineinstance.kubevirt.io "vmi-pxe-boot" created
```

5. Wait for the virtual machine instance to run:

```
$ oc get vmi vmi-pxe-boot -o yaml | grep -i phase
phase: Running
```

6. View the virtual machine instance using VNC:

```
$ virtctl vnc vmi-pxe-boot
```

7. Watch the boot screen to verify that the PXE boot is successful.

8. Log in to the virtual machine instance:

```
$ virtctl console vmi-pxe-boot
```

**Verification**

1. Verify the interfaces and MAC address on the virtual machine and that the interface connected

to the bridge has the specified MAC address. In this case, we used **eth1** for the PXE boot, without an IP address. The other interface, **eth0**, got an IP address from OpenShift Container Platform.

```
$ ip addr
```

#### Example output

```
...
3. eth1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST> mtu 1500 qdisc noop state DOWN group default qlen 1000
 link/ether de:00:00:00:00:de brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

### 7.13.7.3. OpenShift Virtualization networking glossary

The following terms are used throughout OpenShift Virtualization documentation:

#### Container Network Interface (CNI)

A [Cloud Native Computing Foundation](#) project, focused on container network connectivity.

OpenShift Virtualization uses CNI plugins to build upon the basic Kubernetes networking functionality.

#### Multus

A "meta" CNI plugin that allows multiple CNIs to exist so that a pod or virtual machine can use the interfaces it needs.

#### Custom resource definition (CRD)

A [Kubernetes](#) API resource that allows you to define custom resources, or an object defined by using the CRD API resource.

#### Network attachment definition (NAD)

A CRD introduced by the Multus project that allows you to attach pods, virtual machines, and virtual machine instances to one or more networks.

#### Node network configuration policy (NNCP)

A CRD introduced by the nmstate project, describing the requested network configuration on nodes. You update the node network configuration, including adding and removing interfaces, by applying a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** manifest to the cluster.

### 7.13.8. Using huge pages with virtual machines

You can use huge pages as backing memory for virtual machines in your cluster.

#### 7.13.8.1. Prerequisites

- Nodes must have [pre-allocated huge pages configured](#).

#### 7.13.8.2. What huge pages do

Memory is managed in blocks known as pages. On most systems, a page is 4Ki. 1Mi of memory is equal to 256 pages; 1Gi of memory is 256,000 pages, and so on. CPUs have a built-in memory management unit that manages a list of these pages in hardware. The Translation Lookaside Buffer (TLB) is a small hardware cache of virtual-to-physical page mappings. If the virtual address passed in a hardware instruction can be found in the TLB, the mapping can be determined quickly. If not, a TLB miss occurs,

and the system falls back to slower, software-based address translation, resulting in performance issues. Since the size of the TLB is fixed, the only way to reduce the chance of a TLB miss is to increase the page size.

A huge page is a memory page that is larger than 4Ki. On x86\_64 architectures, there are two common huge page sizes: 2Mi and 1Gi. Sizes vary on other architectures. To use huge pages, code must be written so that applications are aware of them. Transparent Huge Pages (THP) attempt to automate the management of huge pages without application knowledge, but they have limitations. In particular, they are limited to 2Mi page sizes. THP can lead to performance degradation on nodes with high memory utilization or fragmentation due to defragmenting efforts of THP, which can lock memory pages. For this reason, some applications may be designed to (or recommend) usage of pre-allocated huge pages instead of THP.

In OpenShift Virtualization, virtual machines can be configured to consume pre-allocated huge pages.

#### 7.13.8.3. Configuring huge pages for virtual machines

You can configure virtual machines to use pre-allocated huge pages by including the **memory.hugepages.pageSize** and **resources.requests.memory** parameters in your virtual machine configuration.

The memory request must be divisible by the page size. For example, you cannot request **500Mi** memory with a page size of **1Gi**.



#### NOTE

The memory layouts of the host and the guest OS are unrelated. Huge pages requested in the virtual machine manifest apply to QEMU. Huge pages inside the guest can only be configured based on the amount of available memory of the virtual machine instance.

If you edit a running virtual machine, the virtual machine must be rebooted for the changes to take effect.

#### Prerequisites

- Nodes must have pre-allocated huge pages configured.

#### Procedure

- In your virtual machine configuration, add the **resources.requests.memory** and **memory.hugepages.pageSize** parameters to the **spec.domain**. The following configuration snippet is for a virtual machine that requests a total of **4Gi** memory with a page size of **1Gi**:

```
kind: VirtualMachine
...
spec:
 domain:
 resources:
 requests:
 memory: "4Gi" 1
 memory:
 hugepages:
 pageSize: "1Gi" 2
...
```

- 1 The total amount of memory requested for the virtual machine. This value must be divisible by the page size.
- 2 The size of each huge page. Valid values for x86\_64 architecture are **1Gi** and **2Mi**. The page size must be smaller than the requested memory.

## 2. Apply the virtual machine configuration:

```
$ oc apply -f <virtual_machine>.yaml
```

### 7.13.9. Enabling dedicated resources for virtual machines

To improve performance, you can dedicate node resources, such as CPU, to a virtual machine.

#### 7.13.9.1. About dedicated resources

When you enable dedicated resources for your virtual machine, your virtual machine's workload is scheduled on CPUs that will not be used by other processes. By using dedicated resources, you can improve the performance of the virtual machine and the accuracy of latency predictions.

#### 7.13.9.2. Prerequisites

- The [CPU Manager](#) must be configured on the node. Verify that the node has the **cpumanager = true** label before scheduling virtual machine workloads.
- The virtual machine must be powered off.

#### 7.13.9.3. Enabling dedicated resources for a virtual machine

You enable dedicated resources for a virtual machine in the **Details** tab. Virtual machines that were created from a Red Hat template can be configured with dedicated resources.

#### Procedure

1. In the OpenShift Container Platform console, click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Configuration** → **Scheduling** tab, click the edit icon beside **Dedicated Resources**.
4. Select **Schedule this workload with dedicated resources (guaranteed policy)**
5. Click **Save**.

### 7.13.10. Scheduling virtual machines

You can schedule a virtual machine (VM) on a node by ensuring that the VM's CPU model and policy attribute are matched for compatibility with the CPU models and policy attributes supported by the node.

#### 7.13.10.1. Policy attributes

You can schedule a virtual machine (VM) by specifying a policy attribute and a CPU feature that is matched for compatibility when the VM is scheduled on a node. A policy attribute specified for a VM determines how that VM is scheduled on a node.

| Policy attribute | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| force            | The VM is forced to be scheduled on a node. This is true even if the host CPU does not support the VM's CPU.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| require          | Default policy that applies to a VM if the VM is not configured with a specific CPU model and feature specification. If a node is not configured to support CPU node discovery with this default policy attribute or any one of the other policy attributes, VMs are not scheduled on that node. Either the host CPU must support the VM's CPU or the hypervisor must be able to emulate the supported CPU model. |
| optional         | The VM is added to a node if that VM is supported by the host's physical machine CPU.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| disable          | The VM cannot be scheduled with CPU node discovery.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| forbid           | The VM is not scheduled even if the feature is supported by the host CPU and CPU node discovery is enabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

### 7.13.10.2. Setting a policy attribute and CPU feature

You can set a policy attribute and CPU feature for each virtual machine (VM) to ensure that it is scheduled on a node according to policy and feature. The CPU feature that you set is verified to ensure that it is supported by the host CPU or emulated by the hypervisor.

#### Procedure

- Edit the **domain** spec of your VM configuration file. The following example sets the CPU feature and the **require** policy for a virtual machine (VM):

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: myvm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 cpu:
 features:
 - name: apic 1
 policy: require 2
```

- 1** Name of the CPU feature for the VM.
- 2** Policy attribute for the VM.

### 7.13.10.3. Scheduling virtual machines with the supported CPU model

You can configure a CPU model for a virtual machine (VM) to schedule it on a node where its CPU model is supported.

#### Procedure

- Edit the **domain** spec of your virtual machine configuration file. The following example shows a specific CPU model defined for a VM:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: myvm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 cpu:
 model: Conroe ①
```

- ① CPU model for the VM.

### 7.13.10.4. Scheduling virtual machines with the host model

When the CPU model for a virtual machine (VM) is set to **host-model**, the VM inherits the CPU model of the node where it is scheduled.

#### Procedure

- Edit the **domain** spec of your VM configuration file. The following example shows **host-model** being specified for the virtual machine:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt/v1alpha3
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: myvm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 cpu:
 model: host-model ①
```

- ① The VM that inherits the CPU model of the node where it is scheduled.

### 7.13.10.5. Scheduling virtual machines with a custom scheduler

You can use a custom scheduler to schedule a virtual machine (VM) on a node.

#### Prerequisites

- A secondary scheduler is configured for your cluster.

## Procedure

- Add the custom scheduler to the VM configuration by editing the **VirtualMachine** manifest. For example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: vm-fedora
spec:
 running: true
 template:
 spec:
 schedulerName: my-scheduler ①
 domain:
 devices:
 disks:
 - name: containerdisk
 disk:
 bus: virtio
...
```

- ① The name of the custom scheduler. If the **schedulerName** value does not match an existing scheduler, the **virt-launcher** pod stays in a **Pending** state until the specified scheduler is found.

## Verification

- Verify that the VM is using the custom scheduler specified in the **VirtualMachine** manifest by checking the **virt-launcher** pod events:
  - View the list of pods in your cluster by entering the following command:

```
$ oc get pods
```

### Example output

| NAME                          | READY | STATUS  | RESTARTS | AGE |
|-------------------------------|-------|---------|----------|-----|
| virt-launcher-vm-fedora-dpc87 | 2/2   | Running | 0        | 24m |

- Run the following command to display the pod events:

```
$ oc describe pod virt-launcher-vm-fedora-dpc87
```

The value of the **From** field in the output verifies that the scheduler name matches the custom scheduler specified in the **VirtualMachine** manifest:

### Example output

```
[...]
Events:
```

| Type   | Reason    | Age | From         | Message                                                               |
|--------|-----------|-----|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Normal | Scheduled | 21m | my-scheduler | Successfully assigned default/virt-launcher-vm-fedora-dpc87 to node01 |
| [...]  |           |     |              |                                                                       |

## Additional resources

- [Deploying a secondary scheduler](#)

### 7.13.11. Configuring PCI passthrough

The Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) passthrough feature enables you to access and manage hardware devices from a virtual machine (VM). When PCI passthrough is configured, the PCI devices function as if they were physically attached to the guest operating system.

Cluster administrators can expose and manage host devices that are permitted to be used in the cluster by using the **oc** command-line interface (CLI).

#### 7.13.11.1. Preparing nodes for GPU passthrough

You can prevent GPU operands from deploying on worker nodes that you designated for GPU passthrough.

##### 7.13.11.1.1. Preventing NVIDIA GPU operands from deploying on nodes

If you use the [NVIDIA GPU Operator](#) in your cluster, you can apply the **nvidia.com/gpu.deploy.operands=false** label to nodes that you do not want to configure for GPU or vGPU operands. This label prevents the creation of the pods that configure GPU or vGPU operands and terminates the pods if they already exist.

#### Prerequisites

- The OpenShift CLI (**oc**) is installed.

#### Procedure

- Label the node by running the following command:

```
$ oc label node <node_name> nvidia.com/gpu.deploy.operands=false ①
```

- ① Replace **<node\_name>** with the name of a node where you do not want to install the NVIDIA GPU operands.

#### Verification

1. Verify that the label was added to the node by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe node <node_name>
```

2. Optional: If GPU operands were previously deployed on the node, verify their removal.

- a. Check the status of the pods in the **nvidia-gpu-operator** namespace by running the following command:

```
$ oc get pods -n nvidia-gpu-operator
```

#### Example output

| NAME                           | READY | STATUS      | RESTARTS | AGE |
|--------------------------------|-------|-------------|----------|-----|
| gpu-operator-59469b8c5c-hw9wj  | 1/1   | Running     | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-sandbox-validator-7hx98 | 1/1   | Running     | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-sandbox-validator-hdb7p | 1/1   | Running     | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-sandbox-validator-kxwj7 | 1/1   | Terminating | 0        | 9d  |
| nvidia-vfio-manager-7w9fs      | 1/1   | Running     | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-vfio-manager-866pz      | 1/1   | Running     | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-vfio-manager-zqtck      | 1/1   | Terminating | 0        | 9d  |

- b. Monitor the pod status until the pods with **Terminating** status are removed:

```
$ oc get pods -n nvidia-gpu-operator
```

#### Example output

| NAME                           | READY | STATUS  | RESTARTS | AGE |
|--------------------------------|-------|---------|----------|-----|
| gpu-operator-59469b8c5c-hw9wj  | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-sandbox-validator-7hx98 | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-sandbox-validator-hdb7p | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-vfio-manager-7w9fs      | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 8d  |
| nvidia-vfio-manager-866pz      | 1/1   | Running | 0        | 8d  |

### 7.13.11.2. Preparing host devices for PCI passthrough

#### 7.13.11.2.1. About preparing a host device for PCI passthrough

To prepare a host device for PCI passthrough by using the CLI, create a **MachineConfig** object and add kernel arguments to enable the Input-Output Memory Management Unit (IOMMU). Bind the PCI device to the Virtual Function I/O (VFIO) driver and then expose it in the cluster by editing the **permittedHostDevices** field of the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). The **permittedHostDevices** list is empty when you first install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator.

To remove a PCI host device from the cluster by using the CLI, delete the PCI device information from the **HyperConverged** CR.

#### 7.13.11.2.2. Adding kernel arguments to enable the IOMMU driver

To enable the IOMMU driver in the kernel, create the **MachineConfig** object and add the kernel arguments.

#### Prerequisites

- You have cluster administrator permissions.
- Your CPU hardware is Intel or AMD.

- You enabled Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O extensions or AMD IOMMU in the BIOS.

## Procedure

1. Create a **MachineConfig** object that identifies the kernel argument. The following example shows a kernel argument for an Intel CPU.

```
apiVersion: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/v1
kind: MachineConfig
metadata:
 labels:
 machineconfiguration.openshift.io/role: worker 1
 name: 100-worker-iommu 2
spec:
 config:
 ignition:
 version: 3.2.0
 kernelArguments:
 - intel_iommu=on 3
...
```

- 1** Applies the new kernel argument only to worker nodes.
- 2** The **name** indicates the ranking of this kernel argument (100) among the machine configs and its purpose. If you have an AMD CPU, specify the kernel argument as **amd\_iommu=on**.
- 3** Identifies the kernel argument as **intel\_iommu** for an Intel CPU.

2. Create the new **MachineConfig** object:

```
$ oc create -f 100-worker-kernel-arg-iommu.yaml
```

## Verification

- Verify that the new **MachineConfig** object was added.

```
$ oc get MachineConfig
```

### 7.13.11.2.3. Binding PCI devices to the VFIO driver

To bind PCI devices to the VFIO (Virtual Function I/O) driver, obtain the values for **vendor-ID** and **device-ID** from each device and create a list with the values. Add this list to the **MachineConfig** object. The **MachineConfig** Operator generates the **/etc/modprobe.d/vfio.conf** on the nodes with the PCI devices, and binds the PCI devices to the VFIO driver.

## Prerequisites

- You added kernel arguments to enable IOMMU for the CPU.

## Procedure

1. Run the **lspci** command to obtain the **vendor-ID** and the **device-ID** for the PCI device.

```
$ lspci -nnv | grep -i nvidia
```

### Example output

```
02:01.0 3D controller [0302]: NVIDIA Corporation GV100GL [Tesla V100 PCIe 32GB]
[10de:1eb8] (rev a1)
```

2. Create a Butane config file, **100-worker-vfiopci.bu**, binding the PCI device to the VFIO driver.



#### NOTE

See "Creating machine configs with Butane" for information about Butane.

### Example

```
variant: openshift
version: 4.16.0
metadata:
 name: 100-worker-vfiopci
 labels:
 machineconfiguration.openshift.io/role: worker 1
storage:
 files:
 - path: /etc/modprobe.d/vfio.conf
 mode: 0644
 overwrite: true
 contents:
 inline: |
 options vfio-pci ids=10de:1eb8 2
 - path: /etc/modules-load.d/vfio-pci.conf 3
 mode: 0644
 overwrite: true
 contents:
 inline: vfio-pci
```

- 1** Applies the new kernel argument only to worker nodes.
- 2** Specify the previously determined **vendor-ID** value (**10de**) and the **device-ID** value (**1eb8**) to bind a single device to the VFIO driver. You can add a list of multiple devices with their vendor and device information.
- 3** The file that loads the vfio-pci kernel module on the worker nodes.

3. Use Butane to generate a **MachineConfig** object file, **100-worker-vfiopci.yaml**, containing the configuration to be delivered to the worker nodes:

```
$ butane 100-worker-vfiopci.bu -o 100-worker-vfiopci.yaml
```

4. Apply the **MachineConfig** object to the worker nodes:

```
$ oc apply -f 100-worker-vfiopci.yaml
```

- Verify that the **MachineConfig** object was added.

```
$ oc get MachineConfig
```

#### Example output

| NAME                             | GENERATEDBYCONTROLLER                    | IGNITIONVERSION |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| AGE                              |                                          |                 |
| 00-master                        | d3da910bfa9f4b599af4ed7f5ac270d55950a3a1 | 3.2.0           |
| 00-worker                        | d3da910bfa9f4b599af4ed7f5ac270d55950a3a1 | 3.2.0           |
| 01-master-container-runtime      | d3da910bfa9f4b599af4ed7f5ac270d55950a3a1 | 3.2.0           |
| 25h                              |                                          |                 |
| 01-master-kubelet                | d3da910bfa9f4b599af4ed7f5ac270d55950a3a1 | 3.2.0           |
| 25h                              |                                          |                 |
| 01-worker-container-runtime      | d3da910bfa9f4b599af4ed7f5ac270d55950a3a1 | 3.2.0           |
| 25h                              |                                          |                 |
| 01-worker-kubelet                | d3da910bfa9f4b599af4ed7f5ac270d55950a3a1 | 3.2.0           |
| 25h                              |                                          |                 |
| 100-worker-iommu                 |                                          | 3.2.0           |
| 100-worker-vfiopci-configuration |                                          | 3.2.0           |
|                                  |                                          | 30s             |
|                                  |                                          | 30s             |

#### Verification

- Verify that the VFIO driver is loaded.

```
$ lspci -nnk -d 10de:
```

The output confirms that the VFIO driver is being used.

#### Example output

```
04:00.0 3D controller [0302]: NVIDIA Corporation GP102GL [Tesla P40] [10de:1eb8] (rev a1)
 Subsystem: NVIDIA Corporation Device [10de:1eb8]
 Kernel driver in use: vfio-pci
 Kernel modules: nouveau
```

#### 7.13.11.2.4. Exposing PCI host devices in the cluster using the CLI

To expose PCI host devices in the cluster, add details about the PCI devices to the **spec.permittedHostDevices.pciHostDevices** array of the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Procedure

- Edit the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

- Add the PCI device information to the **spec.permittedHostDevices.pciHostDevices** array. For example:

#### Example configuration file

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1
```

```

kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 permittedHostDevices: ①
 pciHostDevices: ②
 - pciDeviceSelector: "10DE:1DB6" ③
 resourceName: "nvidia.com/GV100GL_Tesla_V100" ④
 - pciDeviceSelector: "10DE:1EB8"
 resourceName: "nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4"
 - pciDeviceSelector: "8086:6F54"
 resourceName: "intel.com/qat"
 externalResourceProvider: true ⑤
...

```

- ① The host devices that are permitted to be used in the cluster.
- ② The list of PCI devices available on the node.
- ③ The **vendor-ID** and the **device-ID** required to identify the PCI device.
- ④ The name of a PCI host device.
- ⑤ Optional: Setting this field to **true** indicates that the resource is provided by an external device plugin. OpenShift Virtualization allows the usage of this device in the cluster but leaves the allocation and monitoring to an external device plugin.



#### NOTE

The above example snippet shows two PCI host devices that are named **nvidia.com/GV100GL\_Tesla\_V100** and **nvidia.com/TU104GL\_Tesla\_T4** added to the list of permitted host devices in the **HyperConverged** CR. These devices have been tested and verified to work with OpenShift Virtualization.

3. Save your changes and exit the editor.

#### Verification

- Verify that the PCI host devices were added to the node by running the following command. The example output shows that there is one device each associated with the **nvidia.com/GV100GL\_Tesla\_V100**, **nvidia.com/TU104GL\_Tesla\_T4**, and **intel.com/qat** resource names.

```
$ oc describe node <node_name>
```

#### Example output

```

Capacity:
cpu: 64
devices.kubevirt.io/kvm: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/tun: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/vhost-net: 110

```

```

ephemeral-storage: 915128Mi
hugepages-1Gi: 0
hugepages-2Mi: 0
memory: 131395264Ki
nvidia.com/GV100GL_Tesla_V100 1
nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4 1
intel.com/qat: 1
pods: 250
Allocatable:
cpu: 63500m
devices.kubevirt.io/kvm: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/tun: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/vhost-net: 110
ephemeral-storage: 863623130526
hugepages-1Gi: 0
hugepages-2Mi: 0
memory: 130244288Ki
nvidia.com/GV100GL_Tesla_V100 1
nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4 1
intel.com/qat: 1
pods: 250

```

#### 7.13.11.2.5. Removing PCI host devices from the cluster using the CLI

To remove a PCI host device from the cluster, delete the information for that device from the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Procedure

1. Edit the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Remove the PCI device information from the **spec.permittedHostDevices.pciHostDevices** array by deleting the **pciDeviceSelector**, **resourceName** and **externalResourceProvider** (if applicable) fields for the appropriate device. In this example, the **intel.com/qat** resource has been deleted.

#### Example configuration file

```

apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 permittedHostDevices:
 pciHostDevices:
 - pciDeviceSelector: "10DE:1DB6"
 resourceName: "nvidia.com/GV100GL_Tesla_V100"
 - pciDeviceSelector: "10DE:1EB8"
 resourceName: "nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4"
 # ...

```

3. Save your changes and exit the editor.

## Verification

- Verify that the PCI host device was removed from the node by running the following command. The example output shows that there are zero devices associated with the **intel.com/qat** resource name.

```
$ oc describe node <node_name>
```

### Example output

```
Capacity:
cpu: 64
devices.kubevirt.io/kvm: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/tun: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/vhost-net: 110
ephemeral-storage: 915128Mi
hugepages-1Gi: 0
hugepages-2Mi: 0
memory: 131395264Ki
nvidia.com/GV100GL_Tesla_V100 1
nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4 1
intel.com/qat: 0
pods: 250

Allocatable:
cpu: 63500m
devices.kubevirt.io/kvm: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/tun: 110
devices.kubevirt.io/vhost-net: 110
ephemeral-storage: 863623130526
hugepages-1Gi: 0
hugepages-2Mi: 0
memory: 130244288Ki
nvidia.com/GV100GL_Tesla_V100 1
nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4 1
intel.com/qat: 0
pods: 250
```

### 7.13.11.3. Configuring virtual machines for PCI passthrough

After the PCI devices have been added to the cluster, you can assign them to virtual machines. The PCI devices are now available as if they are physically connected to the virtual machines.

#### 7.13.11.3.1. Assigning a PCI device to a virtual machine

When a PCI device is available in a cluster, you can assign it to a virtual machine and enable PCI passthrough.

### Procedure

- Assign the PCI device to a virtual machine as a host device.

### Example

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 hostDevices:
 - deviceName: nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4 ①
 name: hostdevices1
```

- ① The name of the PCI device that is permitted on the cluster as a host device. The virtual machine can access this host device.

## Verification

- Use the following command to verify that the host device is available from the virtual machine.

```
$ lspci -nnk | grep NVIDIA
```

### Example output

```
$ 02:01.0 3D controller [0302]: NVIDIA Corporation GV100GL [Tesla V100 PCIe 32GB]
[10de:1eb8] (rev a1)
```

#### 7.13.11.4. Additional resources

- [Enabling Intel VT-X and AMD-V Virtualization Hardware Extensions in BIOS](#)
- [Managing file permissions](#)
- [Machine Config Overview](#)

## 7.13.12. Configuring virtual GPUs

If you have graphics processing unit (GPU) cards, OpenShift Virtualization can automatically create virtual GPUs (vGPUs) that you can assign to virtual machines (VMs).

### 7.13.12.1. About using virtual GPUs with OpenShift Virtualization

Some graphics processing unit (GPU) cards support the creation of virtual GPUs (vGPUs). OpenShift Virtualization can automatically create vGPUs and other mediated devices if an administrator provides configuration details in the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR). This automation is especially useful for large clusters.



#### NOTE

Refer to your hardware vendor's documentation for functionality and support details.

### Mediated device

A physical device that is divided into one or more virtual devices. A vGPU is a type of mediated device (mdev); the performance of the physical GPU is divided among the virtual devices. You can assign mediated devices to one or more virtual machines (VMs), but the number of guests must be

compatible with your GPU. Some GPUs do not support multiple guests.

### 7.13.12.2. Preparing hosts for mediated devices

You must enable the Input-Output Memory Management Unit (IOMMU) driver before you can configure mediated devices.

#### 7.13.12.2.1. Adding kernel arguments to enable the IOMMU driver

To enable the IOMMU driver in the kernel, create the **MachineConfig** object and add the kernel arguments.

#### Prerequisites

- You have cluster administrator permissions.
- Your CPU hardware is Intel or AMD.
- You enabled Intel Virtualization Technology for Directed I/O extensions or AMD IOMMU in the BIOS.

#### Procedure

- 1 Create a **MachineConfig** object that identifies the kernel argument. The following example shows a kernel argument for an Intel CPU.

```
apiVersion: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/v1
kind: MachineConfig
metadata:
 labels:
 machineconfiguration.openshift.io/role: worker 1
 name: 100-worker-iommu 2
spec:
 config:
 ignition:
 version: 3.2.0
 kernelArguments:
 - intel_iommu=on 3
...
```

- 1 Applies the new kernel argument only to worker nodes.
- 2 The **name** indicates the ranking of this kernel argument (100) among the machine configs and its purpose. If you have an AMD CPU, specify the kernel argument as **amd\_iommu=on**.
- 3 Identifies the kernel argument as **intel\_iommu** for an Intel CPU.

- 2 Create the new **MachineConfig** object:

```
$ oc create -f 100-worker-kernel-arg-iommu.yaml
```

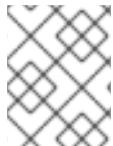
#### Verification

- Verify that the new **MachineConfig** object was added.

```
$ oc get MachineConfig
```

### 7.13.12.3. Configuring the NVIDIA GPU Operator

You can use the NVIDIA GPU Operator to provision worker nodes for running GPU-accelerated virtual machines (VMs) in OpenShift Virtualization.



#### NOTE

The NVIDIA GPU Operator is supported only by NVIDIA. For more information, see [Obtaining Support from NVIDIA](#) in the Red Hat Knowledgebase.

#### 7.13.12.3.1. About using the NVIDIA GPU Operator

You can use the NVIDIA GPU Operator with OpenShift Virtualization to rapidly provision worker nodes for running GPU-enabled virtual machines (VMs). The NVIDIA GPU Operator manages NVIDIA GPU resources in an OpenShift Container Platform cluster and automates tasks that are required when preparing nodes for GPU workloads.

Before you can deploy application workloads to a GPU resource, you must install components such as the NVIDIA drivers that enable the compute unified device architecture (CUDA), Kubernetes device plugin, container runtime, and other features, such as automatic node labeling and monitoring. By automating these tasks, you can quickly scale the GPU capacity of your infrastructure. The NVIDIA GPU Operator can especially facilitate provisioning complex artificial intelligence and machine learning (AI/ML) workloads.

#### 7.13.12.3.2. Options for configuring mediated devices

There are two available methods for configuring mediated devices when using the NVIDIA GPU Operator. The method that Red Hat tests uses OpenShift Virtualization features to schedule mediated devices, while the NVIDIA method only uses the GPU Operator.

##### Using the NVIDIA GPU Operator to configure mediated devices

This method exclusively uses the NVIDIA GPU Operator to configure mediated devices. To use this method, refer to [NVIDIA GPU Operator with OpenShift Virtualization](#) in the NVIDIA documentation.

##### Using OpenShift Virtualization to configure mediated devices

This method, which is tested by Red Hat, uses OpenShift Virtualization's capabilities to configure mediated devices. In this case, the NVIDIA GPU Operator is only used for installing drivers with the NVIDIA vGPU Manager. The GPU Operator does not configure mediated devices.

When using the OpenShift Virtualization method, you still configure the GPU Operator by following [the NVIDIA documentation](#). However, this method differs from the NVIDIA documentation in the following ways:

- You must not overwrite the default **disableMDEVConfiguration: false** setting in the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).



#### IMPORTANT

Setting this feature gate as described in the [NVIDIA documentation](#) prevents OpenShift Virtualization from configuring mediated devices.

- You must configure your **ClusterPolicy** manifest so that it matches the following example:

### Example manifest

```

kind: ClusterPolicy
apiVersion: nvidia.com/v1
metadata:
 name: gpu-cluster-policy
spec:
 operator:
 defaultRuntime: crio
 use_ocp_driver_toolkit: true
 initContainer: {}
 sandboxWorkloads:
 enabled: true
 defaultWorkload: vm-vgpu
 driver:
 enabled: false 1
 dcgmExporter: {}
 dcgm:
 enabled: true
 daemonsets: {}
 devicePlugin: {}
 gfd: {}
 migManager:
 enabled: true
 nodeStatusExporter:
 enabled: true
 mig:
 strategy: single
 toolkit:
 enabled: true
 validator:
 plugin:
 env:
 - name: WITH_WORKLOAD
 value: "true"
 vgpuManager:
 enabled: true 2
 repository: <vgpu_container_registry> 3
 image: <vgpu_image_name>
 version: nvidia-vgpu-manager
 vgpuDeviceManager:
 enabled: false 4
 config:
 name: vgpu-devices-config
 default: default
 sandboxDevicePlugin:
 enabled: false 5
 vfioManager:
 enabled: false 6

```

1 Set this value to **false**. Not required for VMs.

2 Set this value to **true**. Required for using vGPUs with VMs.

- 3 Substitute `<vgpu_container_registry>` with your registry value.
- 4 Set this value to **false** to allow OpenShift Virtualization to configure mediated devices instead of the NVIDIA GPU Operator.
- 5 Set this value to **false** to prevent discovery and advertising of the vGPU devices to the kubelet.
- 6 Set this value to **false** to prevent loading the **vfio-pci** driver. Instead, follow the OpenShift Virtualization documentation to configure PCI passthrough.

## Additional resources

- [Configuring PCI passthrough](#)

### 7.13.12.4. How vGPUs are assigned to nodes

For each physical device, OpenShift Virtualization configures the following values:

- A single mdev type.
- The maximum number of instances of the selected **mdev** type.

The cluster architecture affects how devices are created and assigned to nodes.

#### Large cluster with multiple cards per node

On nodes with multiple cards that can support similar vGPU types, the relevant device types are created in a round-robin manner. For example:

```
...
mediatedDevicesConfiguration:
 mediatedDeviceTypes:
 - nvidia-222
 - nvidia-228
 - nvidia-105
 - nvidia-108
...
```

In this scenario, each node has two cards, both of which support the following vGPU types:

```
nvidia-105
...
nvidia-108
nvidia-217
nvidia-299
...
```

On each node, OpenShift Virtualization creates the following vGPUs:

- 16 vGPUs of type nvidia-105 on the first card.
- 2 vGPUs of type nvidia-108 on the second card.

## One node has a single card that supports more than one requested vGPU type

OpenShift Virtualization uses the supported type that comes first on the **mediatedDeviceTypes** list. For example, the card on a node card supports **nvidia-223** and **nvidia-224**. The following **mediatedDeviceTypes** list is configured:

```
...
mediatedDevicesConfiguration:
 mediatedDeviceTypes:
 - nvidia-22
 - nvidia-223
 - nvidia-224
...
```

In this example, OpenShift Virtualization uses the **nvidia-223** type.

### 7.13.12.5. Managing mediated devices

Before you can assign mediated devices to virtual machines, you must create the devices and expose them to the cluster. You can also reconfigure and remove mediated devices.

#### 7.13.12.5.1. Creating and exposing mediated devices

As an administrator, you can create mediated devices and expose them to the cluster by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

##### Prerequisites

- You enabled the Input-Output Memory Management Unit (IOMMU) driver.
- If your hardware vendor provides drivers, you installed them on the nodes where you want to create mediated devices.
  - If you use NVIDIA cards, you [installed the NVIDIA GRID driver](#).

##### Procedure

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

#### Example 7.1. Example configuration file with mediated devices configured

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 mediatedDevicesConfiguration:
 mediatedDeviceTypes:
 - nvidia-231
 nodeMediatedDeviceTypes:
 - mediatedDeviceTypes:
```

```

 - nvidia-233
nodeSelector:
 kubernetes.io/hostname: node-11.redhat.com
permittedHostDevices:
 mediatedDevices:
 - mdevNameSelector: GRID T4-2Q
 resourceName: nvidia.com/GRID_T4-2Q
 - mdevNameSelector: GRID T4-8Q
 resourceName: nvidia.com/GRID_T4-8Q
...

```

2. Create mediated devices by adding them to the **spec.mediatedDevicesConfiguration** stanza:

### Example YAML snippet

```

...
spec:
 mediatedDevicesConfiguration:
 mediatedDeviceTypes: ①
 - <device_type>
 nodeMediatedDeviceTypes: ②
 - mediatedDeviceTypes: ③
 - <device_type>
 nodeSelector: ④
 <node_selector_key>: <node_selector_value>
...

```

- ① Required: Configures global settings for the cluster.
- ② Optional: Overrides the global configuration for a specific node or group of nodes. Must be used with the global **mediatedDeviceTypes** configuration.
- ③ Required if you use **nodeMediatedDeviceTypes**. Overrides the global **mediatedDeviceTypes** configuration for the specified nodes.
- ④ Required if you use **nodeMediatedDeviceTypes**. Must include a **key:value** pair.



### IMPORTANT

Before OpenShift Virtualization 4.14, the **mediatedDeviceTypes** field was named **mediatedDevicesTypes**. Ensure that you use the correct field name when configuring mediated devices.

3. Identify the name selector and resource name values for the devices that you want to expose to the cluster. You will add these values to the **HyperConverged** CR in the next step.

- a. Find the **resourceName** value by running the following command:

```

$ oc get $NODE -o json \
| jq '.status.allocatable \
| with_entries(select(.key | startswith("nvidia.com/"))) \
| with_entries(select(.value != "0"))'

```

- b. Find the **mdevNameSelector** value by viewing the contents of `/sys/bus/pci/devices/<slot>:<bus>:<domain><function>/mdev_supported_types/<type>/name`, substituting the correct values for your system. For example, the name file for the **nvidia-231** type contains the selector string **GRID T4-2Q**. Using **GRID T4-2Q** as the **mdevNameSelector** value allows nodes to use the **nvidia-231** type.
4. Expose the mediated devices to the cluster by adding the **mdevNameSelector** and **resourceName** values to the **spec.permittedHostDevices.mediatedDevices** stanza of the **HyperConverged** CR:

#### Example YAML snippet

```
...
permittedHostDevices:
 mediatedDevices:
 - mdevNameSelector: GRID T4-2Q ①
 resourceName: nvidia.com/GRID_T4-2Q ②
...
```

- ① Exposes the mediated devices that map to this value on the host.
- ② Matches the resource name that is allocated on the node.

5. Save your changes and exit the editor.

#### Verification

- Optional: Confirm that a device was added to a specific node by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe node <node_name>
```

#### 7.13.12.5.2. About changing and removing mediated devices

You can reconfigure or remove mediated devices in several ways:

- Edit the **HyperConverged** CR and change the contents of the **mediatedDeviceTypes** stanza.
- Change the node labels that match the **nodeMediatedDeviceTypes** node selector.
- Remove the device information from the **spec.mediatedDevicesConfiguration** and **spec.permittedHostDevices** stanzas of the **HyperConverged** CR.



#### NOTE

If you remove the device information from the **spec.permittedHostDevices** stanza without also removing it from the **spec.mediatedDevicesConfiguration** stanza, you cannot create a new mediated device type on the same node. To properly remove mediated devices, remove the device information from both stanzas.

### 7.13.12.5.3. Removing mediated devices from the cluster

To remove a mediated device from the cluster, delete the information for that device from the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Procedure

1. Edit the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Remove the device information from the **spec.mediatedDevicesConfiguration** and **spec.permittedHostDevices** stanzas of the **HyperConverged** CR. Removing both entries ensures that you can later create a new mediated device type on the same node. For example:

#### Example configuration file

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 mediatedDevicesConfiguration:
 mediatedDeviceTypes: ①
 - nvidia-231
 permittedHostDevices:
 mediatedDevices: ②
 - mdevNameSelector: GRID T4-2Q
 resourceName: nvidia.com/GRID_T4-2Q
```

- ① To remove the **nvidia-231** device type, delete it from the **mediatedDeviceTypes** array.
- ② To remove the **GRID T4-2Q** device, delete the **mdevNameSelector** field and its corresponding **resourceName** field.

3. Save your changes and exit the editor.

### 7.13.12.6. Using mediated devices

You can assign mediated devices to one or more virtual machines.

#### 7.13.12.6.1. Assigning a vGPU to a VM by using the CLI

Assign mediated devices such as virtual GPUs (vGPUs) to virtual machines (VMs).

#### Prerequisites

- The mediated device is configured in the **HyperConverged** custom resource.
- The VM is stopped.

#### Procedure

- Assign the mediated device to a virtual machine (VM) by editing the **spec.domain.devices.gpus** stanza of the **VirtualMachine** manifest:

### Example virtual machine manifest

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 gpus:
 - deviceName: nvidia.com/TU104GL_Tesla_T4 ①
 name: gpu1 ②
 - deviceName: nvidia.com/GRID_T4-2Q
 name: gpu2
```

- ① The resource name associated with the mediated device.
- ② A name to identify the device on the VM.

### Verification

- To verify that the device is available from the virtual machine, run the following command, substituting **<device\_name>** with the **deviceName** value from the **VirtualMachine** manifest:

```
$ lspci -nnk | grep <device_name>
```

#### 7.13.12.6.2. Assigning a vGPU to a VM by using the web console

You can assign virtual GPUs to virtual machines by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.



#### NOTE

You can add hardware devices to virtual machines created from customized templates or a YAML file. You cannot add devices to pre-supplied boot source templates for specific operating systems.

### Prerequisites

- The vGPU is configured as a mediated device in your cluster.
  - To view the devices that are connected to your cluster, click **Compute → Hardware Devices** from the side menu.
- The VM is stopped.

### Procedure

- In the OpenShift Container Platform web console, click **Virtualization → VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
- Select the VM that you want to assign the device to.

3. On the **Details** tab, click **GPU devices**.
4. Click **Add GPU device**.
5. Enter an identifying value in the **Name** field.
6. From the **Device name** list, select the device that you want to add to the VM.
7. Click **Save**.

## Verification

- To confirm that the devices were added to the VM, click the **YAML** tab and review the **VirtualMachine** configuration. Mediated devices are added to the **spec.domain.devices** stanza.

### 7.13.12.7. Additional resources

- [Enabling Intel VT-X and AMD-V Virtualization Hardware Extensions in BIOS](#)

### 7.13.13. Enabling descheduler evictions on virtual machines

You can use the descheduler to evict pods so that the pods can be rescheduled onto more appropriate nodes. If the pod is a virtual machine, the pod eviction causes the virtual machine to be live migrated to another node.



#### IMPORTANT

Descheduler eviction for virtual machines is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

#### 7.13.13.1. Descheduler profiles

Use the Technology Preview **DevPreviewLongLifecycle** profile to enable the descheduler on a virtual machine. This is the only descheduler profile currently available for OpenShift Virtualization. To ensure proper scheduling, create VMs with CPU and memory requests for the expected load.

##### DevPreviewLongLifecycle

This profile balances resource usage between nodes and enables the following strategies:

- **RemovePodsHavingTooManyRestarts**: removes pods whose containers have been restarted too many times and pods where the sum of restarts over all containers (including Init Containers) is more than 100. Restarting the VM guest operating system does not increase this count.
- **LowNodeUtilization**: evicts pods from overutilized nodes when there are any underutilized nodes. The destination node for the evicted pod will be determined by the scheduler.
  - A node is considered underutilized if its usage is below 20% for all thresholds (CPU

A node is considered underutilized if its usage is below 20% for all three metrics (CPU, memory, and number of pods).

- A node is considered overutilized if its usage is above 50% for any of the thresholds (CPU, memory, and number of pods).

### 7.13.13.2. Installing the descheduler

The descheduler is not available by default. To enable the descheduler, you must install the Kube Descheduler Operator from OperatorHub and enable one or more descheduler profiles.

By default, the descheduler runs in predictive mode, which means that it only simulates pod evictions. You must change the mode to automatic for the descheduler to perform the pod evictions.



#### IMPORTANT

If you have enabled hosted control planes in your cluster, set a custom priority threshold to lower the chance that pods in the hosted control plane namespaces are evicted. Set the priority threshold class name to **hypershift-control-plane**, because it has the lowest priority value (**100000000**) of the hosted control plane priority classes.

#### Prerequisites

- You are logged in to OpenShift Container Platform as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.
- Access to the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

#### Procedure

1. Log in to the OpenShift Container Platform web console.
2. Create the required namespace for the Kube Descheduler Operator.
  - a. Navigate to **Administration → Namespaces** and click **Create Namespace**.
  - b. Enter **openshift-kube-descheduler-operator** in the **Name** field, enter **openshift.io/cluster-monitoring=true** in the **Labels** field to enable descheduler metrics, and click **Create**.
3. Install the Kube Descheduler Operator.
  - a. Navigate to **Operators → OperatorHub**.
  - b. Type **Kube Descheduler Operator** into the filter box.
  - c. Select the **Kube Descheduler Operator** and click **Install**.
  - d. On the **Install Operator** page, select **A specific namespace on the cluster** Select **openshift-kube-descheduler-operator** from the drop-down menu.
  - e. Adjust the values for the **Update Channel** and **Approval Strategy** to the desired values.
  - f. Click **Install**.
4. Create a descheduler instance.

- a. From the **Operators → Installed Operators** page, click the **Kube Descheduler Operator**.
- b. Select the **Kube Descheduler** tab and click **Create KubeDescheduler**.
- c. Edit the settings as necessary.
  - i. To evict pods instead of simulating the evictions, change the **Mode** field to **Automatic**.
  - ii. Expand the **Profiles** section and select **DevPreviewLongLifecycle**. The **AffinityAndTaints** profile is enabled by default.



### IMPORTANT

The only profile currently available for OpenShift Virtualization is **DevPreviewLongLifecycle**.

You can also configure the profiles and settings for the descheduler later using the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### 7.13.13.3. Enabling descheduler evictions on a virtual machine (VM)

After the descheduler is installed, you can enable descheduler evictions on your VM by adding an annotation to the **VirtualMachine** custom resource (CR).

##### Prerequisites

- Install the descheduler in the OpenShift Container Platform web console or OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- Ensure that the VM is not running.

##### Procedure

1. Before starting the VM, add the **descheduler.alpha.kubernetes.io/evict** annotation to the **VirtualMachine** CR:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 template:
 metadata:
 annotations:
 descheduler.alpha.kubernetes.io/evict: "true"
```

2. If you did not already set the **DevPreviewLongLifecycle** profile in the web console during installation, specify the **DevPreviewLongLifecycle** in the **spec.profile** section of the **KubeDescheduler** object:

```
apiVersion: operator.openshift.io/v1
kind: KubeDescheduler
metadata:
 name: cluster
 namespace: openshift-kube-descheduler-operator
spec:
 deschedulingIntervalSeconds: 3600
```

profiles:  
 - DevPreviewLongLifecycle  
 mode: Predictive ①

- ① By default, the descheduler does not evict pods. To evict pods, set **mode** to **Automatic**.

The descheduler is now enabled on the VM.

#### 7.13.13.4. Additional resources

- [Descheduler overview](#)

#### 7.13.14. About high availability for virtual machines

You can enable high availability for virtual machines (VMs) by manually deleting a failed node to trigger VM failover or by configuring remediating nodes.

##### Manually deleting a failed node

If a node fails and machine health checks are not deployed on your cluster, virtual machines with **runStrategy: Always** configured are not automatically relocated to healthy nodes. To trigger VM failover, you must manually delete the **Node** object.

See [Deleting a failed node to trigger virtual machine failover](#).

##### Configuring remediating nodes

You can configure remediating nodes by installing the Self Node Remediation Operator from the OperatorHub and enabling machine health checks or node remediation checks.

For more information on remediation, fencing, and maintaining nodes, see the [Workload Availability for Red Hat OpenShift](#) documentation.

#### 7.13.15. Virtual machine control plane tuning

OpenShift Virtualization offers the following tuning options at the control-plane level:

- The **highBurst** profile, which uses fixed **QPS** and **burst** rates, to create hundreds of virtual machines (VMs) in one batch
- Migration setting adjustment based on workload type

##### 7.13.15.1. Configuring a highBurst profile

Use the **highBurst** profile to create and maintain a large number of virtual machines (VMs) in one cluster.

##### Procedure

- Apply the following patch to enable the **highBurst** tuning policy profile:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type=json -p='[{"op": "add", "path": "/spec/tuningPolicy", \
"value": "highBurst"}]'
```

## Verification

- Run the following command to verify the **highBurst** tuning policy profile is enabled:

```
$ oc get kubevirt.kubevirt.io/kubevirt-kubevirt-hyperconverged \
-n openshift-cnv -o go-template --template='{{range $config, \
$value := .spec.configuration}} {{if eq $config "apiConfiguration" \
"webhookConfiguration" "controllerConfiguration" "handlerConfiguration"}} \
{{"\n"}} {{$config}} = {{$value}} {{end}} {{end}} {{"\n"}}
```

### 7.13.16. Assigning compute resources

In OpenShift Virtualization, compute resources assigned to virtual machines (VMs) are backed by either guaranteed CPUs or time-sliced CPU shares.

Guaranteed CPUs, also known as CPU reservation, dedicate CPU cores or threads to a specific workload, which makes them unavailable to any other workload. Assigning guaranteed CPUs to a VM ensures that the VM will have sole access to a reserved physical CPU. [Enable dedicated resources for VMs](#) to use a guaranteed CPU.

Time-sliced CPUs dedicate a slice of time on a shared physical CPU to each workload. You can specify the size of the slice during VM creation, or when the VM is offline. By default, each vCPU receives 100 milliseconds, or 1/10 of a second, of physical CPU time.

The type of CPU reservation depends on the instance type or VM configuration.

#### 7.13.16.1. Overcommitting CPU resources

Time-slicing allows multiple virtual CPUs (vCPUs) to share a single physical CPU. This is known as *CPU overcommitment*. Guaranteed VMs can not be overcommitted.

Configure CPU overcommitment to prioritize VM density over performance when assigning CPUs to VMs. With a higher CPU over-commitment of vCPUs, more VMs fit onto a given node.

#### 7.13.16.2. Setting the CPU allocation ratio

The CPU Allocation Ratio specifies the degree of overcommitment by mapping vCPUs to time slices of physical CPUs.

For example, a mapping or ratio of 10:1 maps 10 virtual CPUs to 1 physical CPU by using time slices.

To change the default number of vCPUs mapped to each physical CPU, set the **vmiCPUAllocationRatio** value in the **HyperConverged** CR. The pod CPU request is calculated by multiplying the number of vCPUs by the reciprocal of the CPU allocation ratio. For example, if **vniCPUAllocationRatio** is set to 10, OpenShift Virtualization will request 10 times fewer CPUs on the pod for that VM.

## Procedure

Set the **vniCPUAllocationRatio** value in the **HyperConverged** CR to define a node CPU allocation ratio.

- Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

## 2. Set the **vmiCPUAllocationRatio**:

```
...
spec:
 resourceRequirements:
 vmiCPUAllocationRatio: 1 ①
...
```

- ① When **vmiCPUAllocationRatio** is set to **1**, the maximum amount of vCPUs are requested for the pod.

### 7.13.16.3. Additional resources

- [Pod Quality of Service Classes](#)

### 7.13.17. About multi-queue functionality

Use multi-queue functionality to scale network throughput and performance on virtual machines (VMs) with multiple vCPUs.

By default, the **queueCount** value, which is derived from the domain XML, is determined by the number of vCPUs allocated to a VM. Network performance does not scale as the number of vCPUs increases. Additionally, because virtio-net has only one Tx and Rx queue, guests cannot transmit or retrieve packs in parallel.



#### NOTE

Enabling virtio-net multiqueue does not offer significant improvements when the number of vNICs in a guest instance is proportional to the number of vCPUs.

#### 7.13.17.1. Known limitations

- MSI vectors are still consumed if virtio-net multiqueue is enabled in the host but not enabled in the guest operating system by the administrator.
- Each virtio-net queue consumes 64 KiB of kernel memory for the vhost driver.
- Starting a VM with more than 16 CPUs results in no connectivity if **networkInterfaceMultiqueue** is set to 'true' ([CNV-16107](#)).

#### 7.13.17.2. Enabling multi-queue functionality

Enable multi-queue functionality for interfaces configured with a VirtIO model.

#### Procedure

1. Set the **networkInterfaceMultiqueue** value to **true** in the **VirtualMachine** manifest file of your VM to enable multi-queue functionality:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VM
spec:
```

```
domain:
devices:
 networkInterfaceMultiqueue: true
```

2. Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest file to apply your changes.

## 7.14. VM DISKS

### 7.14.1. Hot-plugging VM disks

You can add or remove virtual disks without stopping your virtual machine (VM) or virtual machine instance (VMI).

Only data volumes and persistent volume claims (PVCs) can be hot plugged and hot-unplugged. You cannot hot plug or hot-unplug container disks.

A hot plugged disk remains attached to the VM even after reboot. You must detach the disk to remove it from the VM.

You can make a hot plugged disk persistent so that it is permanently mounted on the VM.



#### NOTE

Each VM has a **virtio-scsi** controller so that hot plugged disks can use the **scsi** bus. The **virtio-scsi** controller overcomes the limitations of **virtio** while retaining its performance advantages. It is highly scalable and supports hot plugging over 4 million disks.

Regular **virtio** is not available for hot plugged disks because it is not scalable. Each **virtio** disk uses one of the limited PCI Express (PCIe) slots in the VM. PCIe slots are also used by other devices and must be reserved in advance. Therefore, slots might not be available on demand.

#### 7.14.1.1. Hot plugging and hot unplugging a disk by using the web console

You can hot plug a disk by attaching it to a virtual machine (VM) while the VM is running by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

The hot plugged disk remains attached to the VM until you unplug it.

You can make a hot plugged disk persistent so that it is permanently mounted on the VM.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have a data volume or persistent volume claim (PVC) available for hot plugging.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a running VM to view its details.
3. On the **VirtualMachine details** page, click **Configuration** → **Disk**s.
4. Add a hot plugged disk:

- a. Click **Add disk**.
  - b. In the **Add disk (hot plugged)** window, select the disk from the **Source** list and click **Save**.
5. Optional: Unplug a hot plugged disk:
- a. Click the options menu  beside the disk and select **Detach**.
  - b. Click **Detach**.
6. Optional: Make a hot plugged disk persistent:
- a. Click the options menu  beside the disk and select **Make persistent**
  - b. Reboot the VM to apply the change.

### 7.14.1.2. Hot plugging and hot unplugging a disk by using the command line

You can hot plug and hot unplug a disk while a virtual machine (VM) is running by using the command line.

You can make a hot plugged disk persistent so that it is permanently mounted on the VM.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have at least one data volume or persistent volume claim (PVC) available for hot plugging.

#### Procedure

- Hot plug a disk by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl addvolume <virtual-machine|virtual-machine-instance> \
--volume-name=<datavolume|PVC> \
[--persist] [--serial=<label-name>]
```

- Use the optional **--persist** flag to add the hot plugged disk to the virtual machine specification as a permanently mounted virtual disk. Stop, restart, or reboot the virtual machine to permanently mount the virtual disk. After specifying the **--persist** flag, you can no longer hot plug or hot unplug the virtual disk. The **--persist** flag applies to virtual machines, not virtual machine instances.
- The optional **--serial** flag allows you to add an alphanumeric string label of your choice. This helps you to identify the hot plugged disk in a guest virtual machine. If you do not specify this option, the label defaults to the name of the hot plugged data volume or PVC.

- Hot unplug a disk by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl removevolume <virtual-machine|virtual-machine-instance> \
--volume-name=<datavolume|PVC>
```

### 7.14.2. Expanding virtual machine disks

You can increase the size of a virtual machine (VM) disk by expanding the persistent volume claim (PVC) of the disk.

If your storage provider does not support volume expansion, you can expand the available virtual storage of a VM by adding blank data volumes.

You cannot reduce the size of a VM disk.

#### 7.14.2.1. Expanding a VM disk PVC

You can increase the size of a virtual machine (VM) disk by expanding the persistent volume claim (PVC) of the disk.

If the PVC uses the file system volume mode, the disk image file expands to the available size while reserving some space for file system overhead.

##### Procedure

1. Edit the **PersistentVolumeClaim** manifest of the VM disk that you want to expand:

```
$ oc edit pvc <pvc_name>
```

2. Update the disk size:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
 name: vm-disk-expand
spec:
 accessModes:
 - ReadWriteMany
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 3Gi 1
...
```

- 1** Specify the new disk size.

##### Additional resources for volume expansion

- [Extending a basic volume in Windows](#)
- [Extending an existing file system partition without destroying data in Red Hat Enterprise Linux](#)
- [Extending a logical volume and its file system online in Red Hat Enterprise Linux](#)

#### 7.14.2.2. Expanding available virtual storage by adding blank data volumes

You can expand the available storage of a virtual machine (VM) by adding blank data volumes.

##### Prerequisites

- You must have at least one persistent volume.

## Procedure

1. Create a **DataVolume** manifest as shown in the following example:

### Example DataVolume manifest

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: DataVolume
metadata:
 name: blank-image-datavolume
spec:
 source:
 blank: {}
 storage:
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: <2Gi> ①
 storageClassName: "<storage_class>" ②
```

- ① Specify the amount of available space requested for the data volume.
- ② Optional: If you do not specify a storage class, the default storage class is used.

2. Create the data volume by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <blank-image-datavolume>.yaml
```

### Additional resources for data volumes

- [Configuring preallocation mode for data volumes](#)
- [Managing data volume annotations](#)

## 7.14.3. Configuring shared volumes for virtual machines

You can configure shared disks to allow multiple virtual machines (VMs) to share the same underlying storage. A shared disk's volume must be block mode.

You configure disk sharing by exposing the storage as either of these types:

- An ordinary VM disk
- A logical unit number (LUN) disk with an SCSI connection and raw device mapping, as required for Windows Failover Clustering for shared volumes

In addition to configuring disk sharing, you can also set an error policy for each ordinary VM disk or LUN disk. The error policy controls how the hypervisor behaves when an input/output error occurs on a disk Read or Write.

### 7.14.3.1. Configuring disk sharing by using virtual machine disks

You can configure block volumes so that multiple virtual machines (VMs) can share storage.

The application running on the guest operating system determines the storage option you must configure for the VM. A disk of type **disk** exposes the volume as an ordinary disk to the VM.

You can set an error policy for each disk. The error policy controls how the hypervisor behaves when an input/output error occurs while a disk is being written to or read. The default behavior stops the VM and generates a Kubernetes event.

You can accept the default behavior, or you can set the error policy to one of the following options:

- **report**, which reports the error in the guest.
- **ignore**, which ignores the error. The Read or Write failure is undetected.
- **enospace**, which produces an error indicating that there is not enough disk space.

## Prerequisites

- The volume access mode must be **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) if the VMs that are sharing disks are running on different nodes.  
If the VMs that are sharing disks are running on the same node, **ReadWriteOnce** (RWO) volume access mode is sufficient.
- The storage provider must support the required Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver.

## Procedure

- 1 Create the **VirtualMachine** manifest for your VM to set the required values, as shown in the following example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: <vm_name>
spec:
 template:
 # ...
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 disks:
 - disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: rootdisk
 errorPolicy: report 1
 disk1: disk_one 2
 - disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: cloudinitdisk
 disk2: disk_two
 shareable: true 3
 interfaces:
 - masquerade: {}
 name: default
```

**1** Identifies the error policy.

- 2** Identifies a device as a disk.
- 3** Identifies a shared disk.

2. Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest file to apply your changes.

#### 7.14.3.2. Configuring disk sharing by using LUN

To secure data on your VM from outside access, you can enable SCSI persistent reservation and configure a LUN-backed virtual machine disk to be shared among multiple virtual machines. By enabling the shared option, you can use advanced SCSI commands, such as those required for a Windows failover clustering implementation, for managing the underlying storage.

When a storage volume is configured as the **LUN** disk type, a VM can use the volume as a logical unit number (LUN) device. As a result, the VM can deploy and manage the disk by using SCSI commands.

You reserve a LUN through the SCSI persistent reserve options. To enable the reservation:

1. Configure the feature gate option
2. Activate the feature gate option on the LUN disk to issue SCSI device-specific input and output controls (IOCTLs) that the VM requires.

You can set an error policy for each LUN disk. The error policy controls how the hypervisor behaves when an input/output error occurs on a disk Read or Write. The default behavior stops the guest and generates a Kubernetes event.

For a LUN disk with an iSCSI connection and a persistent reservation, as required for Windows Failover Clustering for shared volumes, you set the error policy to **report**.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have cluster administrator privileges to configure the feature gate option.
- The volume access mode must be **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) if the VMs that are sharing disks are running on different nodes.  
If the VMs that are sharing disks are running on the same node, **ReadWriteOnce** (RWO) volume access mode is sufficient.
- The storage provider must support a Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver that uses the SCSI protocol.
- If you are a cluster administrator and intend to configure disk sharing by using LUN, you must enable the cluster's feature gate on the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).
- Disks that you want to share must be in block mode.

#### Procedure

1. Edit or create the **VirtualMachine** manifest for your VM to set the required values, as shown in the following example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
```

```

name: vm-0
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 disks:
 - disk:
 bus: sata
 name: rootdisk
 - errorPolicy: report ①
 lun: ②
 bus: scsi
 reservation: true ③
 name: na-shared
 serial: shared1234
 volumes:
 - dataVolume:
 name: vm-0
 name: rootdisk
 - name: na-shared
 persistentVolumeClaim:
 claimName: pvc-na-share

```

- ① Identifies the error policy.
- ② Identifies a LUN disk.
- ③ Identifies that the persistent reservation is enabled.

2. Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest file to apply your changes.

#### 7.14.3.2.1. Configuring disk sharing by using LUN and the web console

You can use the OpenShift Container Platform web console to configure disk sharing by using LUN.

##### Prerequisites

- The cluster administrator must enable the **persistentreservation** feature gate setting.

##### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Expand **Storage**.
4. On the **Disk** tab, click **Add disk**.
5. Specify the **Name**, **Source**, **Size**, **Interface**, and **Storage Class**.
6. Select **LUN** as the **Type**.
7. Select **Shared access (RWX)** as the **Access Mode**.

8. Select **Block** as the **Volume Mode**.
9. Expand **Advanced Settings**, and select both checkboxes.
10. Click **Save**.

#### 7.14.3.2.2. Configuring disk sharing by using LUN and the command line

You can use the command line to configure disk sharing by using LUN.

#### Procedure

1. Edit or create the **VirtualMachine** manifest for your VM to set the required values, as shown in the following example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: vm-0
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 disks:
 - disk:
 bus: sata
 name: rootdisk
 - errorPolicy: report
 lun: ①
 bus: scsi
 reservation: true ②
 name: na-shared
 serial: shared1234
 volumes:
 - dataVolume:
 name: vm-0
 name: rootdisk
 - name: na-shared
 persistentVolumeClaim:
 claimName: pvc-na-share
```

- ① Identifies a LUN disk.
- ② Identifies that the persistent reservation is enabled.

2. Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest file to apply your changes.

#### 7.14.3.3. Enabling the PersistentReservation feature gate

You can enable the SCSI **persistentReservation** feature gate and allow a LUN-backed block mode virtual machine (VM) disk to be shared among multiple virtual machines.

The **persistentReservation** feature gate is disabled by default. You can enable the **persistentReservation** feature gate by using the web console or the command line.

## Prerequisites

- Cluster administrator privileges are required.
- The volume access mode **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) is required if the VMs that are sharing disks are running on different nodes. If the VMs that are sharing disks are running on the same node, the **ReadWriteOnce** (RWO) volume access mode is sufficient.
- The storage provider must support a Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver that uses the SCSI protocol.

### 7.14.3.3.1. Enabling the PersistentReservation feature gate by using the web console

You must enable the PersistentReservation feature gate to allow a LUN-backed block mode virtual machine (VM) disk to be shared among multiple virtual machines. Enabling the feature gate requires cluster administrator privileges.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **Overview** in the web console.
2. Click the **Settings** tab.
3. Select **Cluster**.
4. Expand **SCSI persistent reservation** and set **Enable persistent reservation** to on.

### 7.14.3.3.2. Enabling the PersistentReservation feature gate by using the command line

You enable the **persistentReservation** feature gate by using the command line. Enabling the feature gate requires cluster administrator privileges.

#### Procedure

1. Enable the **persistentReservation** feature gate by running the following command:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv --type json -p \
'[{"op":"replace","path":"/spec/featureGates/persistentReservation", "value": true}]'
```

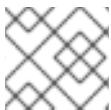
#### Additional resources

- [Persistent reservation helper protocol](#)
- [Failover Clustering in Windows Server and Azure Stack HCI](#)

# CHAPTER 8. NETWORKING

## 8.1. NETWORKING OVERVIEW

OpenShift Virtualization provides advanced networking functionality by using custom resources and plugins. Virtual machines (VMs) are integrated with OpenShift Container Platform networking and its ecosystem.

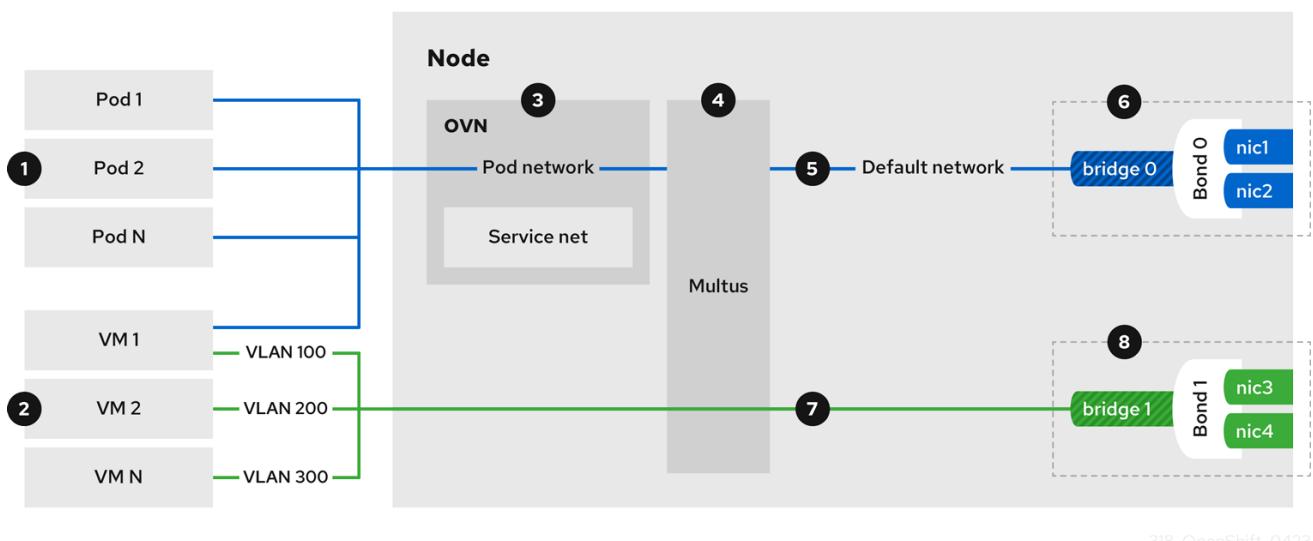


### NOTE

You cannot run OpenShift Virtualization on a single-stack IPv6 cluster.

The following figure illustrates the typical network setup of OpenShift Virtualization. Other configurations are also possible.

**Figure 8.1. OpenShift Virtualization networking overview**



- 1 Pods and VMs run on the same network infrastructure which allows you to easily connect your containerized and virtualized workloads.
- 2 You can connect VMs to the default pod network and to any number of secondary networks.
- 3 The default pod network provides connectivity between all its members, service abstraction, IP management, micro segmentation, and other functionality.
- 4 Multus is a "meta" CNI plugin that enables a pod or virtual machine to connect to additional network interfaces by using other compatible CNI plugins.
- 5 The default pod network is overlay-based, tunneled through the underlying machine network.
- 6 The machine network can be defined over a selected set of network interface controllers (NICs).

**7**

Secondary VM networks are typically bridged directly to a physical network, with or without VLAN encapsulation.

**8**

Secondary VM networks can be defined on dedicated set of NICs, as shown in Figure 1, or they can use the machine network.

### 8.1.1. OpenShift Virtualization networking glossary

The following terms are used throughout OpenShift Virtualization documentation:

#### Container Network Interface (CNI)

A [Cloud Native Computing Foundation](#) project, focused on container network connectivity.

OpenShift Virtualization uses CNI plugins to build upon the basic Kubernetes networking functionality.

#### Multus

A "meta" CNI plugin that allows multiple CNIs to exist so that a pod or virtual machine can use the interfaces it needs.

#### Custom resource definition (CRD)

A [Kubernetes](#) API resource that allows you to define custom resources, or an object defined by using the CRD API resource.

#### Network attachment definition (NAD)

A CRD introduced by the Multus project that allows you to attach pods, virtual machines, and virtual machine instances to one or more networks.

#### Node network configuration policy (NNCP)

A CRD introduced by the nmstate project, describing the requested network configuration on nodes. You update the node network configuration, including adding and removing interfaces, by applying a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** manifest to the cluster.

### 8.1.2. Using the default pod network

#### [Connecting a virtual machine to the default pod network](#)

Each VM is connected by default to the default internal pod network. You can add or remove network interfaces by editing the VM specification.

#### [Exposing a virtual machine as a service](#)

You can expose a VM within the cluster or outside the cluster by creating a **Service** object. For on-premise clusters, you can configure a load balancing service by using the MetalLB Operator. You can [install the MetalLB Operator](#) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the CLI.

### 8.1.3. Configuring VM secondary network interfaces

You can connect a virtual machine to a secondary network by using Linux bridge, SR-IOV and OVN-Kubernetes CNI plugins. You can list multiple secondary networks and interfaces in the VM specification. It is not required to specify the primary pod network in the VM specification when connecting to a secondary network interface.

#### [Connecting a virtual machine to a Linux bridge network](#)

[Install the Kubernetes NMState Operator](#) to configure Linux bridges, VLANs, and bondings for your secondary networks.

You can create a Linux bridge network and attach a VM to the network by performing the following steps:

1. [Configure a Linux bridge network device](#) by creating a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** custom resource definition (CRD).
2. [Configure a Linux bridge network](#) by creating a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** CRD.
3. [Connect the VM to the Linux bridge network](#) by including the network details in the VM configuration.

### [Connecting a virtual machine to an SR-IOV network](#)

You can use Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) network devices with additional networks on your OpenShift Container Platform cluster installed on bare metal or Red Hat OpenStack Platform (RHOSP) infrastructure for applications that require high bandwidth or low latency.

You must [install the SR-IOV Network Operator](#) on your cluster to manage SR-IOV network devices and network attachments.

You can connect a VM to an SR-IOV network by performing the following steps:

1. [Configure an SR-IOV network device](#) by creating a **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** CRD.
2. [Configure an SR-IOV network](#) by creating an **SriovNetwork** object.
3. [Connect the VM to the SR-IOV network](#) by including the network details in the VM configuration.

### [Connecting a virtual machine to an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network](#)

You can connect a VM to an Open Virtual Network (OVN)-Kubernetes secondary network. OpenShift Virtualization supports the layer 2 and localnet topologies for OVN-Kubernetes.

- A layer 2 topology connects workloads by a cluster-wide logical switch. The OVN-Kubernetes Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in uses the Geneve (Generic Network Virtualization Encapsulation) protocol to create an overlay network between nodes. You can use this overlay network to connect VMs on different nodes, without having to configure any additional physical networking infrastructure.
- A localnet topology connects the secondary network to the physical underlay. This enables both east-west cluster traffic and access to services running outside the cluster, but it requires additional configuration of the underlying Open vSwitch (OVS) system on cluster nodes.

To configure an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network and attach a VM to that network, perform the following steps:

1. [Configure an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network](#) by creating a network attachment definition (NAD).



#### NOTE

For localnet topology, you must [configure an OVS bridge](#) by creating a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** object before creating the NAD.

2. [Connect the VM to the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network](#) by adding the network details to the VM specification.

### 8.1.3.1. Comparing Linux bridge CNI and OVN-Kubernetes localnet topology

The following table provides a comparison of features available when using the Linux bridge CNI versus the localnet topology for an OVN-Kubernetes plugin:

**Table 8.1. Linux bridge CNI compared to an OVN-Kubernetes localnet topology**

| Feature                                       | Available on Linux bridge CNI                          | Available on OVN-Kubernetes localnet |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Layer 2 access to the underlay native network | Only on secondary network interface controllers (NICs) | Yes                                  |
| Layer 2 access to underlay VLANs              | Yes                                                    | Yes                                  |
| Network policies                              | No                                                     | Yes                                  |
| Managed IP pools                              | No                                                     | No                                   |
| MAC spoof filtering                           | Yes                                                    | Yes                                  |

#### Hot plugging secondary network interfaces

You can add or remove secondary network interfaces without stopping your VM. OpenShift Virtualization supports hot plugging and hot unplugging for Linux bridge interfaces that use the VirtIO device driver.

#### Using DPDK with SR-IOV

The Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) provides a set of libraries and drivers for fast packet processing. You can configure clusters and VMs to run DPDK workloads over SR-IOV networks.

#### Configuring a dedicated network for live migration

You can configure a dedicated [Multus network](#) for live migration. A dedicated network minimizes the effects of network saturation on tenant workloads during live migration.

#### Accessing a virtual machine by using the cluster FQDN

You can access a VM that is attached to a secondary network interface from outside the cluster by using its fully qualified domain name (FQDN).

#### Configuring and viewing IP addresses

You can configure an IP address of a secondary network interface when you create a VM. The IP address is provisioned with cloud-init. You can view the IP address of a VM by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line. The network information is collected by the QEMU guest agent.

### 8.1.4. Integrating with OpenShift Service Mesh

#### Connecting a virtual machine to a service mesh

OpenShift Virtualization is integrated with OpenShift Service Mesh. You can monitor, visualize, and control traffic between pods and virtual machines.

## 8.1.5. Managing MAC address pools

### Managing MAC address pools for network interfaces

The KubeMacPool component allocates MAC addresses for VM network interfaces from a shared MAC address pool. This ensures that each network interface is assigned a unique MAC address. A virtual machine instance created from that VM retains the assigned MAC address across reboots.

## 8.1.6. Configuring SSH access

### Configuring SSH access to virtual machines

You can configure SSH access to VMs by using the following methods:

- [virtctl ssh command](#)

You create an SSH key pair, add the public key to a VM, and connect to the VM by running the **virtctl ssh** command with the private key.

You can add public SSH keys to Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 VMs at runtime or at first boot to VMs with guest operating systems that can be configured by using a cloud-init data source.

- [virtctl port-forward command](#)

You add the **virtctl port-forward** command to your **.ssh/config** file and connect to the VM by using OpenSSH.

- [Service](#)

You create a service, associate the service with the VM, and connect to the IP address and port exposed by the service.

- [Secondary network](#)

You configure a secondary network, attach a VM to the secondary network interface, and connect to its allocated IP address.

## 8.2. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO THE DEFAULT POD NETWORK

You can connect a virtual machine to the default internal pod network by configuring its network interface to use the **masquerade** binding mode.



### NOTE

Traffic passing through network interfaces to the default pod network is interrupted during live migration.

## 8.2.1. Configuring masquerade mode from the command line

You can use masquerade mode to hide a virtual machine's outgoing traffic behind the pod IP address. Masquerade mode uses Network Address Translation (NAT) to connect virtual machines to the pod network backend through a Linux bridge.

Enable masquerade mode and allow traffic to enter the virtual machine by editing your virtual machine configuration file.

## Prerequisites

- The virtual machine must be configured to use DHCP to acquire IPv4 addresses.

## Procedure

- Edit the **interfaces** spec of your virtual machine configuration file:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - name: default
 masquerade: {} ①
 ports: ②
 - port: 80
...
 networks:
 - name: default
 pod: {}
```

① Connect using masquerade mode.

② Optional: List the ports that you want to expose from the virtual machine, each specified by the **port** field. The **port** value must be a number between 0 and 65536. When the **ports** array is not used, all ports in the valid range are open to incoming traffic. In this example, incoming traffic is allowed on port **80**.



### NOTE

Ports 49152 and 49153 are reserved for use by the libvirt platform and all other incoming traffic to these ports is dropped.

- Create the virtual machine:

```
$ oc create -f <vm-name>.yaml
```

### 8.2.2. Configuring masquerade mode with dual-stack (IPv4 and IPv6)

You can configure a new virtual machine (VM) to use both IPv6 and IPv4 on the default pod network by using cloud-init.

The **Network.pod.vmIPv6NetworkCIDR** field in the virtual machine instance configuration determines the static IPv6 address of the VM and the gateway IP address. These are used by the virt-launcher pod to route IPv6 traffic to the virtual machine and are not used externally. The

**Network.pod.vmIPv6NetworkCIDR** field specifies an IPv6 address block in Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR) notation. The default value is **fd10:0:2::2/120**. You can edit this value based on your network requirements.

When the virtual machine is running, incoming and outgoing traffic for the virtual machine is routed to both the IPv4 address and the unique IPv6 address of the virt-launcher pod. The virt-launcher pod then routes the IPv4 traffic to the DHCP address of the virtual machine, and the IPv6 traffic to the statically set IPv6 address of the virtual machine.

## Prerequisites

- The OpenShift Container Platform cluster must use the OVN-Kubernetes Container Network Interface (CNI) network plugin configured for dual-stack.

## Procedure

- In a new virtual machine configuration, include an interface with **masquerade** and configure the IPv6 address and default gateway by using cloud-init.

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm-ipv6
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - name: default
 masquerade: {} ①
 ports:
 - port: 80 ②
...
 networks:
 - name: default
 pod: {}
 volumes:
 - cloudInitNoCloud:
 networkData: |
 version: 2
 ethersnets:
 eth0:
 dhcp4: true
 addresses: [fd10:0:2::2/120] ③
 gateway6: fd10:0:2::1 ④
```

- Connect using masquerade mode.
- Allows incoming traffic on port 80 to the virtual machine.
- The static IPv6 address as determined by the **Network.pod.vmIPv6NetworkCIDR** field in the virtual machine instance configuration. The default value is **fd10:0:2::2/120**.
-

The gateway IP address as determined by the **Network.pod.vmlIpv6NetworkCIDR** field in the virtual machine instance configuration. The default value is **fd10:0:2::1**.

2. Create the virtual machine in the namespace:

```
$ oc create -f example-vm-ipv6.yaml
```

### Verification

- To verify that IPv6 has been configured, start the virtual machine and view the interface status of the virtual machine instance to ensure it has an IPv6 address:

```
$ oc get vmi <vmi-name> -o jsonpath=".status.interfaces[*].ipAddresses"
```

### 8.2.3. About jumbo frames support

When using the OVN-Kubernetes CNI plugin, you can send unfragmented jumbo frame packets between two virtual machines (VMs) that are connected on the default pod network. Jumbo frames have a maximum transmission unit (MTU) value greater than 1500 bytes.

The VM automatically gets the MTU value of the cluster network, set by the cluster administrator, in one of the following ways:

- **libvirt**: If the guest OS has the latest version of the VirtIO driver that can interpret incoming data via a Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) config register in the emulated device.
- DHCP: If the guest DHCP client can read the MTU value from the DHCP server response.



#### NOTE

For Windows VMs that do not have a VirtIO driver, you must set the MTU manually by using **netsh** or a similar tool. This is because the Windows DHCP client does not read the MTU value.

### 8.2.4. Additional resources

- [Changing the MTU for the cluster network](#)
- [Optimizing the MTU for your network](#)

## 8.3. EXPOSING A VIRTUAL MACHINE BY USING A SERVICE

You can expose a virtual machine within the cluster or outside the cluster by creating a **Service** object.

### 8.3.1. About services

A Kubernetes service exposes network access for clients to an application running on a set of pods. Services offer abstraction, load balancing, and, in the case of the **NodePort** and **LoadBalancer** types, exposure to the outside world.

#### ClusterIP

Exposes the service on an internal IP address and as a DNS name to other applications within the

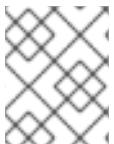
cluster. A single service can map to multiple virtual machines. When a client tries to connect to the service, the client's request is load balanced among available backends. **ClusterIP** is the default service type.

### NodePort

Exposes the service on the same port of each selected node in the cluster. **NodePort** makes a port accessible from outside the cluster, as long as the node itself is externally accessible to the client.

### LoadBalancer

Creates an external load balancer in the current cloud (if supported) and assigns a fixed, external IP address to the service.



### NOTE

For on-premise clusters, you can configure a load-balancing service by deploying the MetallB Operator.

### Additional resources

- [Installing the MetallB Operator](#)
- [Configuring services to use MetallB](#)

### 8.3.2. Dual-stack support

If IPv4 and IPv6 dual-stack networking is enabled for your cluster, you can create a service that uses IPv4, IPv6, or both, by defining the **spec.ipFamilyPolicy** and the **spec.ipFamilies** fields in the **Service** object.

The **spec.ipFamilyPolicy** field can be set to one of the following values:

#### SingleStack

The control plane assigns a cluster IP address for the service based on the first configured service cluster IP range.

#### PreferDualStack

The control plane assigns both IPv4 and IPv6 cluster IP addresses for the service on clusters that have dual-stack configured.

#### RequireDualStack

This option fails for clusters that do not have dual-stack networking enabled. For clusters that have dual-stack configured, the behavior is the same as when the value is set to **PreferDualStack**. The control plane allocates cluster IP addresses from both IPv4 and IPv6 address ranges.

You can define which IP family to use for single-stack or define the order of IP families for dual-stack by setting the **spec.ipFamilies** field to one of the following array values:

- **[IPv4]**
- **[IPv6]**
- **[IPv4, IPv6]**
- **[IPv6, IPv4]**

### 8.3.3. Creating a service by using the command line

You can create a service and associate it with a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line.

## Prerequisites

- You configured the cluster network to support the service.

## Procedure

1. Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest to add the label for service creation:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
 namespace: example-namespace
spec:
 running: false
 template:
 metadata:
 labels:
 special: key ①
...
```

- 1 Add **special: key** to the **spec.template.metadata.labels** stanza.



### NOTE

Labels on a virtual machine are passed through to the pod. The **special: key** label must match the label in the **spec.selector** attribute of the **Service** manifest.

- 2 Save the **VirtualMachine** manifest file to apply your changes.

- 3 Create a **Service** manifest to expose the VM:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
 name: example-service
 namespace: example-namespace
spec:
...
 selector:
 special: key ①
 type: NodePort ②
 ports: ③
 protocol: TCP
 port: 80
 targetPort: 9376
 nodePort: 30000
```

- 1 Specify the label that you added to the **spec.template.metadata.labels** stanza of the **VirtualMachine** manifest.

- 2** Specify **ClusterIP**, **NodePort**, or **LoadBalancer**.
- 3** Specifies a collection of network ports and protocols that you want to expose from the virtual machine.

4. Save the **Service** manifest file.
5. Create the service by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f example-service.yaml
```

6. Restart the VM to apply the changes.

## Verification

- Query the **Service** object to verify that it is available:

```
$ oc get service -n example-namespace
```

### 8.3.4. Additional resources

- [Configuring ingress cluster traffic using a NodePort](#)
- [Configuring ingress cluster traffic using a load balancer](#)

## 8.4. ACCESSING A VIRTUAL MACHINE BY USING ITS INTERNAL FQDN

You can access a virtual machine (VM) that is connected to the default internal pod network on a stable fully qualified domain name (FQDN) by using headless services.

A Kubernetes *headless* service is a form of service that does not allocate a cluster IP address to represent a set of pods. Instead of providing a single virtual IP address for the service, a headless service creates a DNS record for each pod associated with the service. You can expose a VM through its FQDN without having to expose a specific TCP or UDP port.



### IMPORTANT

If you created a VM by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console, you can find its internal FQDN listed in the **Network** tile on the **Overview** tab of the **VirtualMachine details** page. For more information about connecting to the VM, see [Connecting to a virtual machine by using its internal FQDN](#).

### 8.4.1. Creating a headless service in a project by using the CLI

To create a headless service in a namespace, add the **clusterIP: None** parameter to the service YAML definition.

#### Prerequisites

- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### Procedure

1. Create a **Service** manifest to expose the VM, such as the following example:

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
 name: mysubdomain 1
spec:
 selector:
 expose: me 2
 clusterIP: None 3
 ports: 4
 - protocol: TCP
 port: 1234
 targetPort: 1234
```

- 1** The name of the service. This must match the **spec.subdomain** attribute in the **VirtualMachine** manifest file.
- 2** This service selector must match the **expose:me** label in the **VirtualMachine** manifest file.
- 3** Specifies a headless service.
- 4** The list of ports that are exposed by the service. You must define at least one port. This can be any arbitrary value as it does not affect the headless service.

2. Save the **Service** manifest file.

3. Create the service by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f headless_service.yaml
```

#### 8.4.2. Mapping a virtual machine to a headless service by using the CLI

To connect to a virtual machine (VM) from within the cluster by using its internal fully qualified domain name (FQDN), you must first map the VM to a headless service. Set the **spec.hostname** and **spec.subdomain** parameters in the VM configuration file.

If a headless service exists with a name that matches the subdomain, a unique DNS A record is created for the VM in the form of **<vm.spec.hostname>. <vm.spec.subdomain>. <vm.metadata.namespace>.svc.cluster.local**.

#### Procedure

1. Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest to add the service selector label and subdomain by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name>
```

#### Example **VirtualMachine** manifest file

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
```

```

name: vm-fedora
spec:
 template:
 metadata:
 labels:
 expose: me ①
 spec:
 hostname: "myvm" ②
 subdomain: "mysubdomain" ③
...

```

- ① The **expose:me** label must match the **spec.selector** attribute of the **Service** manifest that you previously created.
- ② If this attribute is not specified, the resulting DNS A record takes the form of **<vm.metadata.name>.<vm.spec.subdomain>.**  
**<vm.metadata.namespace>.svc.cluster.local.**
- ③ The **spec.subdomain** attribute must match the **metadata.name** value of the **Service** object.

2. Save your changes and exit the editor.
3. Restart the VM to apply the changes.

#### 8.4.3. Connecting to a virtual machine by using its internal FQDN

You can connect to a virtual machine (VM) by using its internal fully qualified domain name (FQDN).

##### Prerequisites

- You have installed the **virtctl** tool.
- You have identified the internal FQDN of the VM from the web console or by mapping the VM to a headless service. The internal FQDN has the format **<vm.spec.hostname>.**  
**<vm.spec.subdomain>.<vm.metadata.namespace>.svc.cluster.local.**

##### Procedure

1. Connect to the VM console by entering the following command:

```
$ virtctl console vm-fedora
```

2. To connect to the VM by using the requested FQDN, run the following command:

```
$ ping myvm.mysubdomain.<namespace>.svc.cluster.local
```

##### Example output

```
PING myvm.mysubdomain.default.svc.cluster.local (10.244.0.57) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from myvm.mysubdomain.default.svc.cluster.local (10.244.0.57): icmp_seq=1 ttl=64
time=0.029 ms
```

In the preceding example, the DNS entry for **myvm.mysubdomain.default.svc.cluster.local** points to **10.244.0.57**, which is the cluster IP address that is currently assigned to the VM.

#### 8.4.4. Additional resources

- [Exposing a VM by using a service](#)

### 8.5. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO A LINUX BRIDGE NETWORK

By default, OpenShift Virtualization is installed with a single, internal pod network.

You can create a Linux bridge network and attach a virtual machine (VM) to the network by performing the following steps:

1. [Create a Linux bridge node network configuration policy \(NNCP\)](#) .
2. Create a Linux bridge network attachment definition (NAD) by using the [web console](#) or the [command line](#).
3. Configure the VM to recognize the NAD by using the [web console](#) or the [command line](#).

#### 8.5.1. Creating a Linux bridge NNCP

You can create a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** (NNCP) manifest for a Linux bridge network.

##### Prerequisites

- You have installed the Kubernetes NMState Operator.

##### Procedure

- Create the **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** manifest. This example includes sample values that you must replace with your own information.

```
apiVersion: nmstate.io/v1
kind: NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy
metadata:
 name: br1-eth1-policy 1
spec:
 desiredState:
 interfaces:
 - name: br1 2
 description: Linux bridge with eth1 as a port 3
 type: linux-bridge 4
 state: up 5
 ipv4:
 enabled: false 6
 bridge:
 options:
 stp:
```

```

 enabled: false 7
 port:
 - name: eth1 8

```

- 1** Name of the policy.
- 2** Name of the interface.
- 3** Optional: Human-readable description of the interface.
- 4** The type of interface. This example creates a bridge.
- 5** The requested state for the interface after creation.
- 6** Disables IPv4 in this example.
- 7** Disables STP in this example.
- 8** The node NIC to which the bridge is attached.

## 8.5.2. Creating a Linux bridge NAD

You can create a Linux bridge network attachment definition (NAD) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or command line.

### 8.5.2.1. Creating a Linux bridge NAD by using the web console

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) to provide layer-2 networking to pods and virtual machines by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

A Linux bridge network attachment definition is the most efficient method for connecting a virtual machine to a VLAN.



#### WARNING

Configuring IP address management (IPAM) in a network attachment definition for virtual machines is not supported.

#### Procedure

1. In the web console, click **Networking** → **NetworkAttachmentDefinitions**.
2. Click **Create Network Attachment Definition**



#### NOTE

The network attachment definition must be in the same namespace as the pod or virtual machine.

3. Enter a unique **Name** and optional **Description**.
4. Select **CNV Linux bridge** from the **Network Type** list.
5. Enter the name of the bridge in the **Bridge Name** field.
6. Optional: If the resource has VLAN IDs configured, enter the ID numbers in the **VLAN Tag Number** field.
7. Optional: Select **MAC Spoof Check** to enable MAC spoof filtering. This feature provides security against a MAC spoofing attack by allowing only a single MAC address to exit the pod.
8. Click **Create**.

### 8.5.2.2. Creating a Linux bridge NAD by using the command line

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) to provide layer-2 networking to pods and virtual machines (VMs) by using the command line.

The NAD and the VM must be in the same namespace.



#### WARNING

Configuring IP address management (IPAM) in a network attachment definition for virtual machines is not supported.

#### Prerequisites

- The node must support nftables and the **nft** binary must be deployed to enable MAC spoof check.

#### Procedure

1. Add the VM to the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** configuration, as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: "k8s.cni.cncf.io/v1"
kind: NetworkAttachmentDefinition
metadata:
 name: bridge-network 1
 annotations:
 k8s.v1.cni.cncf.io/resourceName: bridge.network.kubevirt.io/bridge-interface 2
spec:
 config: '{
 "cniVersion": "0.3.1",
 "name": "bridge-network", 3
 "type": "cnv-bridge", 4
 "bridge": "bridge-interface", 5
 "macspoofchk": false, 6
 "vlan": 100, 7
 }'
```

```

 "disableContainerInterface": "true",
 "preserveDefaultVlan": false 8
}

```

- 1** The name for the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.
- 2** Optional: Annotation key-value pair for node selection, where **bridge-interface** must match the name of a bridge configured on some nodes. If you add this annotation to your network attachment definition, your virtual machine instances will only run on the nodes that have the **bridge-interface** bridge connected.
- 3** The name for the configuration. It is recommended to match the configuration name to the **name** value of the network attachment definition.
- 4** The actual name of the Container Network Interface (CNI) plugin that provides the network for this network attachment definition. Do not change this field unless you want to use a different CNI.
- 5** The name of the Linux bridge configured on the node.
- 6** Optional: A flag to enable the MAC spoof check. When set to **true**, you cannot change the MAC address of the pod or guest interface. This attribute allows only a single MAC address to exit the pod, which provides security against a MAC spoofing attack.
- 7** Optional: The VLAN tag. No additional VLAN configuration is required on the node network configuration policy.
- 8** Optional: Indicates whether the VM connects to the bridge through the default VLAN. The default value is **true**.



### NOTE

A Linux bridge network attachment definition is the most efficient method for connecting a virtual machine to a VLAN.

## 2. Create the network attachment definition:

```
$ oc create -f network-attachment-definition.yaml 1
```

- 1** Where **network-attachment-definition.yaml** is the file name of the network attachment definition manifest.

## Verification

- Verify that the network attachment definition was created by running the following command:

```
$ oc get network-attachment-definition bridge-network
```

### 8.5.3. Configuring a VM network interface

You can configure a virtual machine (VM) network interface by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or command line.

### 8.5.3.1. Configuring a VM network interface by using the web console

You can configure a network interface for a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

#### Prerequisites

- You created a network attachment definition for the network.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines**.
2. Click a VM to view the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Configuration** tab, click the **Network interfaces** tab.
4. Click **Add network interface**.
5. Enter the interface name and select the network attachment definition from the **Network** list.
6. Click **Save**.
7. Restart the VM to apply the changes.

#### Networking fields

| Name        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name        | Name for the network interface controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Model       | Indicates the model of the network interface controller. Supported values are <b>e1000e</b> and <b>virtio</b> .                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Network     | List of available network attachment definitions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Type        | List of available binding methods. Select the binding method suitable for the network interface: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Default pod network: <b>masquerade</b></li> <li>• Linux bridge network: <b>bridge</b></li> <li>• SR-IOV network: <b>SR-IOV</b></li> </ul> |
| MAC Address | MAC address for the network interface controller. If a MAC address is not specified, one is assigned automatically.                                                                                                                                                                 |

### 8.5.3.2. Configuring a VM network interface by using the command line

You can configure a virtual machine (VM) network interface for a bridge network by using the command line.

## Prerequisites

- Shut down the virtual machine before editing the configuration. If you edit a running virtual machine, you must restart the virtual machine for the changes to take effect.

## Procedure

- Add the bridge interface and the network attachment definition to the VM configuration as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - bridge: {}
 name: bridge-net ①
...
networks:
 - name: bridge-net ②
 multus:
 networkName: a-bridge-network ③
```

- The name of the bridge interface.
- The name of the network. This value must match the **name** value of the corresponding **spec.template.spec.domain.devices.interfaces** entry.
- The name of the network attachment definition.

- Apply the configuration:

```
$ oc apply -f example-vm.yaml
```

- Optional: If you edited a running virtual machine, you must restart it for the changes to take effect.

## 8.6. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO AN SR-IOV NETWORK

You can connect a virtual machine (VM) to a Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) network by performing the following steps:

- [Configuring an SR-IOV network device](#)
- [Configuring an SR-IOV network](#)
- [Connecting the VM to the SR-IOV network](#)

## 8.6.1. Configuring SR-IOV network devices

The SR-IOV Network Operator adds the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy.sriovnetwork.openshift.io** CustomResourceDefinition to OpenShift Container Platform. You can configure an SR-IOV network device by creating a SriovNetworkNodePolicy custom resource (CR).



### NOTE

When applying the configuration specified in a **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object, the SR-IOV Operator might drain the nodes, and in some cases, reboot nodes.

It might take several minutes for a configuration change to apply.

### Prerequisites

- You installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have access to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.
- You have installed the SR-IOV Network Operator.
- You have enough available nodes in your cluster to handle the evicted workload from drained nodes.
- You have not selected any control plane nodes for SR-IOV network device configuration.

### Procedure

- 1 Create an **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object, and then save the YAML in the **<name>-sriov-node-network.yaml** file. Replace **<name>** with the name for this configuration.

```
apiVersion: sriovnetwork.openshift.io/v1
kind: SriovNetworkNodePolicy
metadata:
 name: <name> 1
 namespace: openshift-sriov-network-operator 2
spec:
 resourceName: <sriov_resource_name> 3
 nodeSelector:
 feature.node.kubernetes.io/network-sriov.capable: "true" 4
 priority: <priority> 5
 mtu: <mtu> 6
 numVfs: <num> 7
 nicSelector:
 vendor: "<vendor_code>" 9
 deviceId: "<device_id>" 10
 pfNames: ["<pf_name>", ...] 11
 rootDevices: ["<pci_bus_id>", "..."] 12
 deviceType: vfio-pci 13
 isRdma: false 14
```

- 1 Specify a name for the CR object.

- 2** Specify the namespace where the SR-IOV Operator is installed.
- 3** Specify the resource name of the SR-IOV device plugin. You can create multiple **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** objects for a resource name.
- 4** Specify the node selector to select which nodes are configured. Only SR-IOV network devices on selected nodes are configured. The SR-IOV Container Network Interface (CNI) plugin and device plugin are deployed only on selected nodes.
- 5** Optional: Specify an integer value between **0** and **99**. A smaller number gets higher priority, so a priority of **10** is higher than a priority of **99**. The default value is **99**.
- 6** Optional: Specify a value for the maximum transmission unit (MTU) of the virtual function. The maximum MTU value can vary for different NIC models.
- 7** Specify the number of the virtual functions (VF) to create for the SR-IOV physical network device. For an Intel network interface controller (NIC), the number of VFs cannot be larger than the total VFs supported by the device. For a Mellanox NIC, the number of VFs cannot be larger than **127**.
- 8** The **nicSelector** mapping selects the Ethernet device for the Operator to configure. You do not need to specify values for all the parameters. It is recommended to identify the Ethernet adapter with enough precision to minimize the possibility of selecting an Ethernet device unintentionally. If you specify **rootDevices**, you must also specify a value for **vendor**, **deviceID**, or **pfNames**. If you specify both **pfNames** and **rootDevices** at the same time, ensure that they point to an identical device.
- 9** Optional: Specify the vendor hex code of the SR-IOV network device. The only allowed values are either **8086** or **15b3**.
- 10** Optional: Specify the device hex code of SR-IOV network device. The only allowed values are **158b**, **1015**, **1017**.
- 11** Optional: The parameter accepts an array of one or more physical function (PF) names for the Ethernet device.
- 12** The parameter accepts an array of one or more PCI bus addresses for the physical function of the Ethernet device. Provide the address in the following format: **0000:02:00.1**.
- 13** The **vfio-pci** driver type is required for virtual functions in OpenShift Virtualization.
- 14** Optional: Specify whether to enable remote direct memory access (RDMA) mode. For a Mellanox card, set **isRdma** to **false**. The default value is **false**.



#### NOTE

If **isRDMA** flag is set to **true**, you can continue to use the RDMA enabled VF as a normal network device. A device can be used in either mode.

2. Optional: Label the SR-IOV capable cluster nodes with **SriovNetworkNodePolicy.Spec.NodeSelector** if they are not already labeled. For more information about labeling nodes, see "Understanding how to update labels on nodes".
3. Create the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object:

```
$ oc create -f <name>-sriov-node-network.yaml
```

where **<name>** specifies the name for this configuration.

After applying the configuration update, all the pods in **sriov-network-operator** namespace transition to the **Running** status.

- To verify that the SR-IOV network device is configured, enter the following command. Replace **<node\_name>** with the name of a node with the SR-IOV network device that you just configured.

```
$ oc get sriovnetworknodestates -n openshift-sriov-network-operator <node_name> -o jsonpath='{.status.syncStatus}'
```

### 8.6.2. Configuring SR-IOV additional network

You can configure an additional network that uses SR-IOV hardware by creating an **SriovNetwork** object.

When you create an **SriovNetwork** object, the SR-IOV Network Operator automatically creates a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.



#### NOTE

Do not modify or delete an **SriovNetwork** object if it is attached to pods or virtual machines in a **running** state.

#### Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- Log in as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.

#### Procedure

- Create the following **SriovNetwork** object, and then save the YAML in the **<name>-sriov-network.yaml** file. Replace **<name>** with a name for this additional network.

```
apiVersion: sriovnetwork.openshift.io/v1
kind: SriovNetwork
metadata:
 name: <name> 1
 namespace: openshift-sriov-network-operator 2
spec:
 resourceName: <sriov_resource_name> 3
 networkNamespace: <target_namespace> 4
 vlan: <vlan> 5
 spoofChk: "<spoof_check>" 6
 linkState: <link_state> 7
 maxTxRate: <max_tx_rate> 8
 minTxRate: <min_rx_rate> 9
```

vlanQoS: <vlan\_qos> ⑩  
 trust: "<trust\_vf>" ⑪  
 capabilities: <capabilities> ⑫

- ① Replace <name> with a name for the object. The SR-IOV Network Operator creates a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object with same name.
- ② Specify the namespace where the SR-IOV Network Operator is installed.
- ③ Replace <sriov\_resource\_name> with the value for the **.spec.resourceName** parameter from the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object that defines the SR-IOV hardware for this additional network.
- ④ Replace <target\_namespace> with the target namespace for the SriovNetwork. Only pods or virtual machines in the target namespace can attach to the SriovNetwork.
- ⑤ Optional: Replace <vlan> with a Virtual LAN (VLAN) ID for the additional network. The integer value must be from **0** to **4095**. The default value is **0**.
- ⑥ Optional: Replace <spoof\_check> with the spoof check mode of the VF. The allowed values are the strings "**on**" and "**off**".



### IMPORTANT

You must enclose the value you specify in quotes or the CR is rejected by the SR-IOV Network Operator.

- ⑦ Optional: Replace <link\_state> with the link state of virtual function (VF). Allowed value are **enable**, **disable** and **auto**.
- ⑧ Optional: Replace <max\_tx\_rate> with a maximum transmission rate, in Mbps, for the VF.
- ⑨ Optional: Replace <min\_tx\_rate> with a minimum transmission rate, in Mbps, for the VF. This value should always be less than or equal to Maximum transmission rate.



### NOTE

Intel NICs do not support the **minTxRate** parameter. For more information, see [BZ#1772847](#).

- ⑩ Optional: Replace <vlan\_qos> with an IEEE 802.1p priority level for the VF. The default value is **0**.
- ⑪ Optional: Replace <trust\_vf> with the trust mode of the VF. The allowed values are the strings "**on**" and "**off**".



### IMPORTANT

You must enclose the value you specify in quotes or the CR is rejected by the SR-IOV Network Operator.

- ⑫ Optional: Replace <capabilities> with the capabilities to configure for this network.
2. To create the object, enter the following command. Replace <name> with a name for this additional network.

```
$ oc create -f <name>-sriov-network.yaml
```

3. Optional: To confirm that the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object associated with the **SriovNetwork** object that you created in the previous step exists, enter the following command. Replace **<namespace>** with the namespace you specified in the **SriovNetwork** object.

```
$ oc get net-attach-def -n <namespace>
```

### 8.6.3. Connecting a virtual machine to an SR-IOV network by using the command line

You can connect the virtual machine (VM) to the SR-IOV network by including the network details in the VM configuration.

#### Procedure

1. Add the SR-IOV network details to the **spec.domain.devices.interfaces** and **spec.networks** stanzas of the VM configuration as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - name: nic1 ①
 sriov: {}
 networks:
 - name: nic1 ②
 multus:
 networkName: sriov-network ③
...
```

- ① Specify a unique name for the SR-IOV interface.
- ② Specify the name of the SR-IOV interface. This must be the same as the **interfaces.name** that you defined earlier.
- ③ Specify the name of the SR-IOV network attachment definition.

2. Apply the virtual machine configuration:

```
$ oc apply -f <vm_sriov>.yaml ①
```

- ① The name of the virtual machine YAML file.

### 8.6.4. Connecting a VM to an SR-IOV network by using the web console

You can connect a VM to the SR-IOV network by including the network details in the VM configuration.

## Prerequisites

- You must create a network attachment definition for the network.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines**.
2. Click a VM to view the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **Configuration** tab, click the **Network interfaces** tab.
4. Click **Add network interface**.
5. Enter the interface name.
6. Select an SR-IOV network attachment definition from the **Network** list.
7. Select **SR-IOV** from the **Type** list.
8. Optional: Add a network **Model** or **Mac address**.
9. Click **Save**.
10. Restart or live-migrate the VM to apply the changes.

### 8.6.5. Additional resources

- [Configuring DPDK workloads for improved performance](#)

## 8.7. USING DPDK WITH SR-IOV

The Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) provides a set of libraries and drivers for fast packet processing.

You can configure clusters and virtual machines (VMs) to run DPDK workloads over SR-IOV networks.

### 8.7.1. Configuring a cluster for DPDK workloads

You can configure an OpenShift Container Platform cluster to run Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) workloads for improved network performance.

## Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** permissions.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have installed the SR-IOV Network Operator.
- You have installed the Node Tuning Operator.

## Procedure

1. Map your compute nodes topology to determine which Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA) CPUs are isolated for DPDK applications and which ones are reserved for the operating system (OS).
2. Label a subset of the compute nodes with a custom role; for example, **worker-dpdk**:

```
$ oc label node <node_name> node-role.kubernetes.io/worker-dpdk=""
```

3. Create a new **MachineConfigPool** manifest that contains the **worker-dpdk** label in the **spec.machineConfigSelector** object:

#### Example MachineConfigPool manifest

```
apiVersion: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/v1
kind: MachineConfigPool
metadata:
 name: worker-dpdk
 labels:
 machineconfiguration.openshift.io/role: worker-dpdk
spec:
 machineConfigSelector:
 matchExpressions:
 - key: machineconfiguration.openshift.io/role
 operator: In
 values:
 - worker
 - worker-dpdk
 nodeSelector:
 matchLabels:
 node-role.kubernetes.io/worker-dpdk: ""
```

4. Create a **PerformanceProfile** manifest that applies to the labeled nodes and the machine config pool that you created in the previous steps. The performance profile specifies the CPUs that are isolated for DPDK applications and the CPUs that are reserved for house keeping.

#### Example PerformanceProfile manifest

```
apiVersion: performance.openshift.io/v2
kind: PerformanceProfile
metadata:
 name: profile-1
spec:
 cpu:
 isolated: 4-39,44-79
 reserved: 0-3,40-43
 globallyDisableIrqLoadBalancing: true
 hugepages:
 defaultHugepagesSize: 1G
 pages:
 - count: 8
 node: 0
 size: 1G
 net:
 userLevelNetworking: true
 nodeSelector:
```

```
node-role.kubernetes.io/worker-dpdk: ""
numa:
 topologyPolicy: single-numa-node
```

**NOTE**

The compute nodes automatically restart after you apply the **MachineConfigPool** and **PerformanceProfile** manifests.

5. Retrieve the name of the generated **RuntimeClass** resource from the **status.runtimeClass** field of the **PerformanceProfile** object:

```
$ oc get performanceprofiles.performance.openshift.io profile-1 -o=jsonpath='{.status.runtimeClass}{"\n"}'
```

6. Set the previously obtained **RuntimeClass** name as the default container runtime class for the **virt-launcher** pods by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR):

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type='json' -p='[{"op": "add", "path": "/spec/defaultRuntimeClass", "value": "<runtimeclass-name>"}]'
```

**NOTE**

Editing the **HyperConverged** CR changes a global setting that affects all VMs that are created after the change is applied.

7. If your DPDK-enabled compute nodes use Simultaneous multithreading (SMT), enable the **AlignCPUs** enabler by editing the **HyperConverged** CR:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type='json' -p='[{"op": "replace", "path": "/spec/featureGates/alignCPUs", "value": true}]'
```

**NOTE**

Enabling **AlignCPUs** allows OpenShift Virtualization to request up to two additional dedicated CPUs to bring the total CPU count to an even parity when using emulator thread isolation.

8. Create an **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object with the **spec.deviceType** field set to **vfio-pci**:

**Example SriovNetworkNodePolicy manifest**

```
apiVersion: sriovnetwork.openshift.io/v1
kind: SriovNetworkNodePolicy
metadata:
 name: policy-1
 namespace: openshift-sriov-network-operator
spec:
 resourceName: intel_nics_dpdk
 deviceType: vfio-pci
 mtu: 9000
```

```

numVfs: 4
priority: 99
nicSelector:
 vendor: "8086"
 deviceID: "1572"
 pfNames:
 - eno3
rootDevices:
 - "0000:19:00.2"
nodeSelector:
 feature.node.kubernetes.io/network-sriov.capable: "true"

```

## Additional resources

- [Using CPU Manager and Topology Manager](#)
- [Configuring huge pages](#)
- [Creating a custom machine config pool](#)

### 8.7.2. Configuring a project for DPDK workloads

You can configure the project to run DPDK workloads on SR-IOV hardware.

#### Prerequisites

- Your cluster is configured to run DPDK workloads.

#### Procedure

1. Create a namespace for your DPDK applications:

```
$ oc create ns dpdk-checkup-ns
```

2. Create an **SriovNetwork** object that references the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object. When you create an **SriovNetwork** object, the SR-IOV Network Operator automatically creates a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.

#### Example SriovNetwork manifest

```

apiVersion: sriovnetwork.openshift.io/v1
kind: SriovNetwork
metadata:
 name: dpdk-sriovnetwork
 namespace: openshift-sriov-network-operator
spec:
 ipam: |
 {
 "type": "host-local",
 "subnet": "10.56.217.0/24",
 "rangeStart": "10.56.217.171",
 "rangeEnd": "10.56.217.181",
 "routes": [
 "dst": "0.0.0.0/0"

```

```

 }],
 "gateway": "10.56.217.1"
 }
 networkNamespace: dpdk-checkup-ns 1
 resourceName: intel_nics_dpdk 2
 spoofChk: "off"
 trust: "on"
 vlan: 1019

```

- 1** The namespace where the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object is deployed.
  - 2** The value of the **spec.resourceName** attribute of the **SriovNetworkNodePolicy** object that was created when configuring the cluster for DPDK workloads.
3. Optional: Run the virtual machine latency checkup to verify that the network is properly configured.
  4. Optional: Run the DPDK checkup to verify that the namespace is ready for DPDK workloads.

#### Additional resources

- [Working with projects](#)
- [Virtual machine latency checkup](#)
- [DPDK checkup](#)

### 8.7.3. Configuring a virtual machine for DPDK workloads

You can run Data Packet Development Kit (DPDK) workloads on virtual machines (VMs) to achieve lower latency and higher throughput for faster packet processing in the user space. DPDK uses the SR-IOV network for hardware-based I/O sharing.

#### Prerequisites

- Your cluster is configured to run DPDK workloads.
- You have created and configured the project in which the VM will run.

#### Procedure

1. Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest to include information about the SR-IOV network interface, CPU topology, CRI-O annotations, and huge pages:

#### Example VirtualMachine manifest

```

apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: rhel-dpdk-vm
spec:
 running: true
 template:
 metadata:

```

```

annotations:
 cpu-load-balancing.crio.io: disable ①
 cpu-quota.crio.io: disable ②
 irq-load-balancing.crio.io: disable ③
spec:
 domain:
 cpu:
 sockets: 1 ④
 cores: 5 ⑤
 threads: 2
 dedicatedCpuPlacement: true
 isolateEmulatorThread: true
 interfaces:
 - masquerade: {}
 name: default
 - model: virtio
 name: nic-east
 pciAddress: '0000:07:00.0'
 sriov: {}
 networkInterfaceMultiqueue: true
 rng: {}
 memory:
 hugepages:
 pageSize: 1Gi ⑥
 guest: 8Gi
 networks:
 - name: default
 pod: {}
 - multus:
 networkName: dpdk-net ⑦
 name: nic-east
...

```

- ① This annotation specifies that load balancing is disabled for CPUs that are used by the container.
- ② This annotation specifies that the CPU quota is disabled for CPUs that are used by the container.
- ③ This annotation specifies that Interrupt Request (IRQ) load balancing is disabled for CPUs that are used by the container.
- ④ The number of sockets inside the VM. This field must be set to **1** for the CPUs to be scheduled from the same Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA) node.
- ⑤ The number of cores inside the VM. This must be a value greater than or equal to **1**. In this example, the VM is scheduled with 5 hyper-threads or 10 CPUs.
- ⑥ The size of the huge pages. The possible values for x86-64 architecture are 1Gi and 2Mi. In this example, the request is for 8 huge pages of size 1Gi.
- ⑦ The name of the SR-IOV **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.

2. Save and exit the editor.

3. Apply the **VirtualMachine** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -f <file_name>.yaml
```

4. Configure the guest operating system. The following example shows the configuration steps for RHEL 8 OS:

- a. Configure huge pages by using the GRUB bootloader command-line interface. In the following example, 8 1G huge pages are specified.

```
$ grubby --update-kernel=ALL --args="default_hugepagesz=1GB hugepagesz=1G hugepages=8"
```

- b. To achieve low-latency tuning by using the **cpu-partitioning** profile in the TuneD application, run the following commands:

```
$ dnf install -y tuned-profiles-cpu-partitioning
```

```
$ echo isolated_cores=2-9 > /etc/tuned/cpu-partitioning-variables.conf
```

The first two CPUs (0 and 1) are set aside for house keeping tasks and the rest are isolated for the DPDK application.

```
$ tuned-adm profile cpu-partitioning
```

- c. Override the SR-IOV NIC driver by using the **driverctl** device driver control utility:

```
$ dnf install -y driverctl
```

```
$ driverctl set-override 0000:07:00.0 vfio-pci
```

5. Restart the VM to apply the changes.

## 8.8. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO AN OVN-KUBERNETES SECONDARY NETWORK

You can connect a virtual machine (VM) to an Open Virtual Network (OVN)-Kubernetes secondary network. OpenShift Virtualization supports the layer 2 and localnet topologies for OVN-Kubernetes.

- A layer 2 topology connects workloads by a cluster-wide logical switch. The OVN-Kubernetes Container Network Interface (CNI) plug-in uses the Geneve (Generic Network Virtualization Encapsulation) protocol to create an overlay network between nodes. You can use this overlay network to connect VMs on different nodes, without having to configure any additional physical networking infrastructure.
- A localnet topology connects the secondary network to the physical underlay. This enables both east-west cluster traffic and access to services running outside the cluster, but it requires additional configuration of the underlying Open vSwitch (OVS) system on cluster nodes.

**NOTE**

An OVN-Kubernetes secondary network is compatible with the [multi-network policy API](#) which provides the **MultiNetworkPolicy** custom resource definition (CRD) to control traffic flow to and from VMs. You can use the **ipBlock** attribute to define network policy ingress and egress rules for specific CIDR blocks.

To configure an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network and attach a VM to that network, perform the following steps:

1. [Configure an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network](#) by creating a network attachment definition (NAD).

**NOTE**

For localnet topology, you must [configure an OVS bridge](#) by creating a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** object before creating the NAD.

2. [Connect the VM to the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network](#) by adding the network details to the VM specification.

## 8.8.1. Creating an OVN-Kubernetes NAD

You can create an OVN-Kubernetes layer 2 or localnet network attachment definition (NAD) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the CLI.

**NOTE**

Configuring IP address management (IPAM) in a network attachment definition for virtual machines is not supported.

### 8.8.1.1. Creating a NAD for layer 2 topology using the CLI

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) which describes how to attach a pod to the layer 2 overlay network.

#### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### Procedure

1. Create a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object:

```
apiVersion: k8s.cni.cncf.io/v1
kind: NetworkAttachmentDefinition
metadata:
 name: l2-network
 namespace: my-namespace
spec:
 config: |2
 {
```

```

 "cniVersion": "0.3.1", ①
 "name": "my-namespace-l2-network", ②
 "type": "ovn-k8s-cni-overlay", ③
 "topology": "layer2", ④
 "mtu": 1300, ⑤
 "netAttachDefName": "my-namespace/l2-network" ⑥
}

```

- ① The CNI specification version. The required value is **0.3.1**.
- ② The name of the network. This attribute is not namespaced. For example, you can have a network named **l2-network** referenced from two different **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** objects that exist in two different namespaces. This feature is useful to connect VMs in different namespaces.
- ③ The name of the CNI plug-in to be configured. The required value is **ovn-k8s-cni-overlay**.
- ④ The topological configuration for the network. The required value is **layer2**.
- ⑤ Optional: The maximum transmission unit (MTU) value. The default value is automatically set by the kernel.
- ⑥ The value of the **namespace** and **name** fields in the **metadata** stanza of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.



#### NOTE

The above example configures a cluster-wide overlay without a subnet defined. This means that the logical switch implementing the network only provides layer 2 communication. You must configure an IP address when you create the virtual machine by either setting a static IP address or by deploying a DHCP server on the network for a dynamic IP address.

#### 2. Apply the manifest:

```
$ oc apply -f <filename>.yaml
```

##### 8.8.1.2. Creating a NAD for localnet topology using the CLI

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) which describes how to attach a pod to the underlying physical network.

#### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You have installed the Kubernetes NMState Operator.
- You have created a **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** object to map the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network to an Open vSwitch (OVS) bridge.

## Procedure

1. Create a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object:

```
apiVersion: k8s.cni.cncf.io/v1
kind: NetworkAttachmentDefinition
metadata:
 name: localnet-network
 namespace: default
spec:
 config: |2
 {
 "cniVersion": "0.3.1", ①
 "name": "localnet-network", ②
 "type": "ovn-k8s-cni-overlay", ③
 "topology": "localnet", ④
 "netAttachDefName": "default/localnet-network" ⑤
 }
```

- ① The CNI specification version. The required value is **0.3.1**.
- ② The name of the network. This attribute must match the value of the **spec.desiredState.ovn.bridge-mappings.localnet** field of the **NodeNetworkConfigurationPolicy** object that defines the OVS bridge mapping.
- ③ The name of the CNI plug-in to be configured. The required value is **ovn-k8s-cni-overlay**.
- ④ The topological configuration for the network. The required value is **localnet**.
- ⑤ The value of the **namespace** and **name** fields in the **metadata** stanza of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.

2. Apply the manifest:

```
$ oc apply -f <filename>.yaml
```

### 8.8.1.3. Creating a NAD for layer 2 topology by using the web console

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) that describes how to attach a pod to the layer 2 overlay network.

#### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.

## Procedure

1. Go to **Networking** → **NetworkAttachmentDefinitions** in the web console.
2. Click **Create Network Attachment Definition**. The network attachment definition must be in the same namespace as the pod or virtual machine using it.
3. Enter a unique **Name** and optional **Description**.

4. Select **OVN Kubernetes L2 overlay network** from the **Network Type** list.

5. Click **Create**.

#### 8.8.1.4. Creating a NAD for localnet topology using the web console

You can create a network attachment definition (NAD) to connect workloads to a physical network by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

##### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.
- Use **nmstate** to configure the localnet to OVS bridge mappings.

##### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Networking** → **NetworkAttachmentDefinitions** in the web console.
2. Click **Create Network Attachment Definition** The network attachment definition must be in the same namespace as the pod or virtual machine using it.
3. Enter a unique **Name** and optional **Description**.
4. Select **OVN Kubernetes secondary localnet network** from the **Network Type** list.
5. Enter the name of your pre-configured localnet identifier in the **Bridge mapping** field.
6. Optional: You can explicitly set MTU to the specified value. The default value is chosen by the kernel.
7. Optional: Encapsulate the traffic in a VLAN. The default value is none.
8. Click **Create**.

#### 8.8.2. Attaching a virtual machine to the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network

You can attach a virtual machine (VM) to the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network interface by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the CLI.

##### 8.8.2.1. Attaching a virtual machine to an OVN-Kubernetes secondary network using the CLI

You can connect a virtual machine (VM) to the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network by including the network details in the VM configuration.

##### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

##### Procedure

1. Edit the **VirtualMachine** manifest to add the OVN-Kubernetes secondary network interface details, as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: vm-server
spec:
 running: true
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - name: secondary ①
 bridge: {}
 resources:
 requests:
 memory: 1024Mi
 networks:
 - name: secondary ②
 multus:
 networkName: <nad_name> ③
...
```

- ① The name of the OVN-Kubernetes secondary interface.
- ② The name of the network. This must match the value of the **spec.template.spec.domain.devices.interfaces.name** field.
- ③ The name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.

2. Apply the **VirtualMachine** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -f <filename>.yaml
```

3. Optional: If you edited a running virtual machine, you must restart it for the changes to take effect.

### 8.8.3. Additional resources

- [Configuration for an OVN-Kubernetes additional network](#)
- [About the Kubernetes NMState Operator](#)
- [Configuration for an OVN-Kubernetes additional network mapping](#)
- [Configuration for an additional network attachment](#)

## 8.9. HOT PLUGGING SECONDARY NETWORK INTERFACES

You can add or remove secondary network interfaces without stopping your virtual machine (VM). OpenShift Virtualization supports hot plugging for secondary interfaces that use the VirtIO device driver.

**NOTE**

Hot unplugging is not supported for Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) interfaces.

### 8.9.1. VirtIO limitations

Each VirtIO interface uses one of the limited Peripheral Connect Interface (PCI) slots in the VM. There are a total of 32 slots available. The PCI slots are also used by other devices and must be reserved in advance, therefore slots might not be available on demand. OpenShift Virtualization reserves up to four slots for hot plugging interfaces. This includes any existing plugged network interfaces. For example, if your VM has two existing plugged interfaces, you can hot plug two more network interfaces.

**NOTE**

The actual number of slots available for hot plugging also depends on the machine type. For example, the default PCI topology for the q35 machine type supports hot plugging one additional PCIe device. For more information on PCI topology and hot plug support, see the [libvirt documentation](#).

If you restart the VM after hot plugging an interface, that interface becomes part of the standard network interfaces.

### 8.9.2. Hot plugging a secondary network interface by using the CLI

Hot plug a secondary network interface to a virtual machine (VM) while the VM is running.

#### Prerequisites

- A network attachment definition is configured in the same namespace as your VM.
- You have installed the **virtctl** tool.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### Procedure

1. If the VM to which you want to hot plug the network interface is not running, start it by using the following command:

```
$ virtctl start <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

2. Use the following command to add the new network interface to the running VM. Editing the VM specification adds the new network interface to the VM and virtual machine instance (VMI) configuration but does not attach it to the running VM.

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name>
```

#### Example VM configuration

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: vm-fedora
```

```

template:
spec:
domain:
devices:
interfaces:
- name: defaultnetwork
masquerade: {}
new interface
- name: <secondary_nic> ①
bridge: {}
networks:
- name: defaultnetwork
pod: {}
new network
- name: <secondary_nic> ②
multus:
networkName: <nad_name> ③
...

```

- ① Specifies the name of the new network interface.
- ② Specifies the name of the network. This must be the same as the **name** of the new network interface that you defined in the **template.spec.domain.devices.interfaces** list.
- ③ Specifies the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.

3. To attach the network interface to the running VM, live migrate the VM by running the following command:

```
$ virtctl migrate <vm_name>
```

## Verification

1. Verify that the VM live migration is successful by using the following command:

```
$ oc get VirtualMachineInstanceMigration -w
```

### Example output

| NAME                      | PHASE           | VMI       |
|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------|
| kubevirt-migrate-vm-lj62q | Scheduling      | vm-fedora |
| kubevirt-migrate-vm-lj62q | Scheduled       | vm-fedora |
| kubevirt-migrate-vm-lj62q | PreparingTarget | vm-fedora |
| kubevirt-migrate-vm-lj62q | TargetReady     | vm-fedora |
| kubevirt-migrate-vm-lj62q | Running         | vm-fedora |
| kubevirt-migrate-vm-lj62q | Succeeded       | vm-fedora |

2. Verify that the new interface is added to the VM by checking the VMI status:

```
$ oc get vmi vm-fedora -ojsonpath="{ @.status.interfaces }"
```

### Example output

```
[
 {
 "infoSource": "domain, guest-agent",
 "interfaceName": "eth0",
 "ipAddress": "10.130.0.195",
 "ipAddresses": [
 "10.130.0.195",
 "fd02:0:0:3::43c"
],
 "mac": "52:54:00:0e:ab:25",
 "name": "default",
 "queueCount": 1
 },
 {
 "infoSource": "domain, guest-agent, multus-status",
 "interfaceName": "eth1",
 "mac": "02:d8:b8:00:00:2a",
 "name": "bridge-interface", ①
 "queueCount": 1
 }
]
```

- ① The hot plugged interface appears in the VMI status.

### 8.9.3. Hot unplugging a secondary network interface by using the CLI

You can remove a secondary network interface from a running virtual machine (VM).



#### NOTE

Hot unplugging is not supported for Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) interfaces.

#### Prerequisites

- Your VM must be running.
- The VM must be created on a cluster running OpenShift Virtualization 4.14 or later.
- The VM must have a bridge network interface attached.

#### Procedure

1. Edit the VM specification to hot unplug a secondary network interface. Setting the interface state to **absent** detaches the network interface from the guest, but the interface still exists in the pod.

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name>
```

#### Example VM configuration

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
```

```

name: vm-fedora
template:
spec:
domain:
devices:
interfaces:
- name: defaultnetwork
masquerade: {}
set the interface state to absent
- name: <secondary_nic>
state: absent ①
bridge: {}
networks:
- name: defaultnetwork
pod: {}
- name: <secondary_nic>
multus:
networkName: <nad_name>
...

```

- ① Set the interface state to **absent** to detach it from the running VM. Removing the interface details from the VM specification does not hot unplug the secondary network interface.

2. Remove the interface from the pod by migrating the VM:

```
$ virtctl migrate <vm_name>
```

#### 8.9.4. Additional resources

- [Installing virtctl](#)
- [Creating a Linux bridge network attachment definition](#)
- [Connecting a virtual machine to a Linux bridge network](#)
- [Creating an SR-IOV network attachment definition](#)
- [Connecting a virtual machine to an SR-IOV network](#)

## 8.10. CONNECTING A VIRTUAL MACHINE TO A SERVICE MESH

OpenShift Virtualization is now integrated with OpenShift Service Mesh. You can monitor, visualize, and control traffic between pods that run virtual machine workloads on the default pod network with IPv4.

### 8.10.1. Adding a virtual machine to a service mesh

To add a virtual machine (VM) workload to a service mesh, enable automatic sidecar injection in the VM configuration file by setting the **sidecar.istio.io/inject** annotation to **true**. Then expose your VM as a service to view your application in the mesh.



## IMPORTANT

To avoid port conflicts, do not use ports used by the Istio sidecar proxy. These include ports 15000, 15001, 15006, 15008, 15020, 15021, and 15090.

### Prerequisites

- You installed the Service Mesh Operators.
- You created the Service Mesh control plane.
- You added the VM project to the Service Mesh member roll.

### Procedure

1. Edit the VM configuration file to add the **sidecar.istio.io/inject: "true"** annotation:

#### Example configuration file

```

apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 labels:
 kubevirt.io/vm: vm-istio
 name: vm-istio
spec:
 runStrategy: Always
 template:
 metadata:
 labels:
 kubevirt.io/vm: vm-istio
 app: vm-istio 1
 annotations:
 sidecar.istio.io/inject: "true" 2
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - name: default
 masquerade: {} 3
 disks:
 - disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: containerdisk
 - disk:
 bus: virtio
 name: cloudinitdisk
 resources:
 requests:
 memory: 1024M
 networks:
 - name: default
 pod: {}
 terminationGracePeriodSeconds: 180
 volumes:

```

```

 - containerDisk:
 image: registry:5000/kubevirt/fedora-cloud-container-disk-demo:devel
 name: containerdisk

```

- 1 The key/value pair (label) that must be matched to the service selector attribute.
- 2 The annotation to enable automatic sidecar injection.
- 3 The binding method (masquerade mode) for use with the default pod network.

2. Apply the VM configuration:

```
$ oc apply -f <vm_name>.yaml 1
```

- 1 The name of the virtual machine YAML file.

3. Create a **Service** object to expose your VM to the service mesh.

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: Service
metadata:
 name: vm-istio
spec:
 selector:
 app: vm-istio 1
 ports:
 - port: 8080
 name: http
 protocol: TCP

```

- 1 The service selector that determines the set of pods targeted by a service. This attribute corresponds to the **spec.metadata.labels** field in the VM configuration file. In the above example, the **Service** object named **vm-istio** targets TCP port 8080 on any pod with the label **app=vm-istio**.

4. Create the service:

```
$ oc create -f <service_name>.yaml 1
```

- 1 The name of the service YAML file.

### 8.10.2. Additional resources

- [Installing the Service Mesh Operators](#)
- [Creating the Service Mesh control plane](#)
- [Adding projects to the Service Mesh member roll](#)

## 8.11. CONFIGURING A DEDICATED NETWORK FOR LIVE MIGRATION

You can configure a dedicated [Multus network](#) for live migration. A dedicated network minimizes the effects of network saturation on tenant workloads during live migration.

### 8.11.1. Configuring a dedicated secondary network for live migration

To configure a dedicated secondary network for live migration, you must first create a bridge network attachment definition (NAD) by using the CLI. Then, you add the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object to the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Prerequisites

- You installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You logged in to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.
- Each node has at least two Network Interface Cards (NICs).
- The NICs for live migration are connected to the same VLAN.

#### Procedure

- 1 Create a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** manifest according to the following example:

##### Example configuration file

```
apiVersion: "k8s.cni.cncf.io/v1"
kind: NetworkAttachmentDefinition
metadata:
 name: my-secondary-network 1
 namespace: openshift-cnv 2
spec:
 config: {
 "cniVersion": "0.3.1",
 "name": "migration-bridge",
 "type": "macvlan",
 "master": "eth1", 3
 "mode": "bridge",
 "ipam": {
 "type": "whereabouts", 4
 "range": "10.200.5.0/24" 5
 }
 }
```

- 1 Specify the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.
- 2 3 Specify the name of the NIC to be used for live migration.
- 4 Specify the name of the CNI plugin that provides the network for the NAD.
- 5 Specify an IP address range for the secondary network. This range must not overlap the IP addresses of the main network.

- 2 Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:



```
oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

3. Add the name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object to the **spec.liveMigrationConfig** stanza of the **HyperConverged** CR:

#### Example HyperConverged manifest

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 liveMigrationConfig:
 completionTimeoutPerGiB: 800
 network: <network> ①
 parallelMigrationsPerCluster: 5
 parallelOutboundMigrationsPerNode: 2
 progressTimeout: 150
 # ...
```

- ① Specify the name of the Multus **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object to be used for live migrations.
4. Save your changes and exit the editor. The **virt-handler** pods restart and connect to the secondary network.

#### Verification

- When the node that the virtual machine runs on is placed into maintenance mode, the VM automatically migrates to another node in the cluster. You can verify that the migration occurred over the secondary network and not the default pod network by checking the target IP address in the virtual machine instance (VMI) metadata.

```
$ oc get vmi <vmi_name> -o jsonpath='{.status.migrationState.targetNodeAddress}'
```

#### 8.11.2. Selecting a dedicated network by using the web console

You can select a dedicated network for live migration by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

##### Prerequisites

- You configured a Multus network for live migration.

##### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization > Overview** in the OpenShift Container Platform web console.
2. Click the **Settings** tab and then click **Live migration**.
3. Select the network from the **Live migration network** list.

### 8.11.3. Additional resources

- [Configuring live migration limits and timeouts](#)

## 8.12. CONFIGURING AND VIEWING IP ADDRESSES

You can configure an IP address when you create a virtual machine (VM). The IP address is provisioned with cloud-init.

You can view the IP address of a VM by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line. The network information is collected by the QEMU guest agent.

### 8.12.1. Configuring IP addresses for virtual machines

You can configure a static IP address when you create a virtual machine (VM) by using the web console or the command line.

You can configure a dynamic IP address when you create a VM by using the command line.

The IP address is provisioned with cloud-init.

#### 8.12.1.1. Configuring an IP address when creating a virtual machine by using the command line

You can configure a static or dynamic IP address when you create a virtual machine (VM). The IP address is provisioned with cloud-init.



#### NOTE

If the VM is connected to the pod network, the pod network interface is the default route unless you update it.

#### Prerequisites

- The virtual machine is connected to a secondary network.
- You have a DHCP server available on the secondary network to configure a dynamic IP for the virtual machine.

#### Procedure

- Edit the **spec.template.spec.volumes.cloudInitNoCloud.networkData** stanza of the virtual machine configuration:
  - To configure a dynamic IP address, specify the interface name and enable DHCP:

```
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
...
template:
...
spec:
volumes:
- cloudInitNoCloud:
```

```
networkData: |
 version: 2
 ethernets:
 eth1: ①
 dhcp4: true
```

- ① Specify the interface name.
- To configure a static IP, specify the interface name and the IP address:

```
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
...
template:
...
spec:
 volumes:
 - cloudInitNoCloud:
 networkData: |
 version: 2
 ethernets:
 eth1: ①
 addresses:
 - 10.10.10.14/24 ②
```

- ① Specify the interface name.
- ② Specify the static IP address.

## 8.12.2. Viewing IP addresses of virtual machines

You can view the IP address of a VM by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line.

The network information is collected by the QEMU guest agent.

### 8.12.2.1. Viewing the IP address of a virtual machine by using the web console

You can view the IP address of a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.



#### NOTE

You must install the QEMU guest agent on a VM to view the IP address of a secondary network interface. A pod network interface does not require the QEMU guest agent.

#### Procedure

1. In the OpenShift Container Platform console, click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.

- Click the **Details** tab to view the IP address.

### 8.12.2.2. Viewing the IP address of a virtual machine by using the command line

You can view the IP address of a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line.



#### NOTE

You must install the QEMU guest agent on a VM to view the IP address of a secondary network interface. A pod network interface does not require the QEMU guest agent.

#### Procedure

- Obtain the virtual machine instance configuration by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe vmi <vmi_name>
```

#### Example output

```
...
Interfaces:
 Interface Name: eth0
 Ip Address: 10.244.0.37/24
 Ip Addresses:
 10.244.0.37/24
 fe80::858:aff:fef4:25/64
 Mac: 0a:58:0a:f4:00:25
 Name: default
 Interface Name: v2
 Ip Address: 1.1.1.7/24
 Ip Addresses:
 1.1.1.7/24
 fe80::f4d9:70ff:fe13:9089/64
 Mac: f6:d9:70:13:90:89
 Interface Name: v1
 Ip Address: 1.1.1.1/24
 Ip Addresses:
 1.1.1.1/24
 1.1.1.2/24
 1.1.1.4/24
 2001:de7:0:f101::1/64
 2001:db8:0:f101::1/64
 fe80::1420:84ff:fe10:17aa/64
 Mac: 16:20:84:10:17:aa
```

### 8.12.3. Additional resources

- [Installing the QEMU guest agent](#)

## 8.13. ACCESSING A VIRTUAL MACHINE BY USING ITS EXTERNAL FQDN

You can access a virtual machine (VM) that is attached to a secondary network interface from outside the cluster by using its fully qualified domain name (FQDN).



## IMPORTANT

Accessing a VM from outside the cluster by using its FQDN is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

### 8.13.1. Configuring a DNS server for secondary networks

The Cluster Network Addons Operator (CNAO) deploys a Domain Name Server (DNS) server and monitoring components when you enable the **deployKubeSecondaryDNS** feature gate in the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Prerequisites

- You installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- You configured a load balancer for the cluster.
- You logged in to the cluster with **cluster-admin** permissions.

#### Procedure

1. Create a load balancer service to expose the DNS server outside the cluster by running the **oc expose** command according to the following example:

```
$ oc expose -n openshift-cnv deployment/secondary-dns --name=dns-lb \
--type=LoadBalancer --port=53 --target-port=5353 --protocol='UDP'
```

2. Retrieve the external IP address by running the following command:

```
$ oc get service -n openshift-cnv
```

#### Example output

| NAME   | TYPE         | CLUSTER-IP  | EXTERNAL-IP | PORT(S)      | AGE |
|--------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-----|
| dns-lb | LoadBalancer | 172.30.27.5 | 10.46.41.94 | 53:31829/TCP | 5s  |

3. Edit the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

4. Enable the DNS server and monitoring components according to the following example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
```

```

kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 featureGates:
 deployKubeSecondaryDNS: true
 kubeSecondaryDNSNameServerIP: "10.46.41.94" ①
...

```

① Specify the external IP address exposed by the load balancer service.

5. Save the file and exit the editor.
6. Retrieve the cluster FQDN by running the following command:

```
$ oc get dnses.config.openshift.io cluster -o jsonpath='{.spec.baseDomain}'
```

#### Example output

```
openshift.example.com
```

7. Point to the DNS server by using one of the following methods:

- Add the **kubeSecondaryDNSNameServerIP** value to the **resolv.conf** file on your local machine.



#### NOTE

Editing the **resolv.conf** file overwrites existing DNS settings.

- Add the **kubeSecondaryDNSNameServerIP** value and the cluster FQDN to the enterprise DNS server records. For example:

```
vm.<FQDN>. IN NS ns.vm.<FQDN>.
```

```
ns.vm.<FQDN>. IN A 10.46.41.94
```

### 8.13.2. Connecting to a VM on a secondary network by using the cluster FQDN

You can access a running virtual machine (VM) attached to a secondary network interface by using the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster.

#### Prerequisites

- You installed the QEMU guest agent on the VM.
- The IP address of the VM is public.
- You configured the DNS server for secondary networks.
- You retrieved the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the cluster.

## Procedure

1. Retrieve the network interface name from the VM configuration by running the following command:

```
$ oc get vm -n <namespace> <vm_name> -o yaml
```

### Example output

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
 namespace: example-namespace
spec:
 running: true
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 interfaces:
 - bridge: {}
 name: example-nic
...
networks:
- multus:
 networkName: bridge-conf
 name: example-nic ①
```

- 1 Note the name of the network interface.

- 2 Connect to the VM by using the **ssh** command:

```
$ ssh <user_name>@<interface_name>.<vm_name>.<namespace>.vm.<cluster_fqdn>
```

### 8.13.3. Additional resources

- [Configuring ingress cluster traffic using a load balancer](#)
- [Load balancing with MetalLB](#)
- [Configuring IP addresses for virtual machines](#)

## 8.14. MANAGING MAC ADDRESS POOLS FOR NETWORK INTERFACES

The *KubeMacPool* component allocates MAC addresses for virtual machine (VM) network interfaces from a shared MAC address pool. This ensures that each network interface is assigned a unique MAC address.

A virtual machine instance created from that VM retains the assigned MAC address across reboots.

**NOTE**

KubeMacPool does not handle virtual machine instances created independently from a virtual machine.

### 8.14.1. Managing KubeMacPool by using the command line

You can disable and re-enable KubeMacPool by using the command line.

KubeMacPool is enabled by default.

#### Procedure

- To disable KubeMacPool in two namespaces, run the following command:

```
$ oc label namespace <namespace1> <namespace2>
 mutatevirtualmachines.kubemacpool.io=ignore
```

- To re-enable KubeMacPool in two namespaces, run the following command:

```
$ oc label namespace <namespace1> <namespace2>
 mutatevirtualmachines.kubemacpool.io-
```

# CHAPTER 9. STORAGE

## 9.1. STORAGE CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW

You can configure a default storage class, storage profiles, Containerized Data Importer (CDI), data volumes, and automatic boot source updates.

### 9.1.1. Storage

The following storage configuration tasks are mandatory:

#### Configure a default storage class

You must configure a default storage class for your cluster. Otherwise, the cluster cannot receive automated boot source updates.

#### Configure storage profiles

You must configure storage profiles if your storage provider is not recognized by CDI. A storage profile provides recommended storage settings based on the associated storage class.

The following storage configuration tasks are optional:

#### Reserve additional PVC space for file system overhead

By default, 5.5% of a file system PVC is reserved for overhead, reducing the space available for VM disks by that amount. You can configure a different overhead value.

#### Configure local storage by using the hostpath provisioner

You can configure local storage for virtual machines by using the hostpath provisioner (HPP). When you install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator, the HPP Operator is automatically installed.

#### Configure user permissions to clone data volumes between namespaces

You can configure RBAC roles to enable users to clone data volumes between namespaces.

### 9.1.2. Containerized Data Importer

You can perform the following Containerized Data Importer (CDI) configuration tasks:

#### Override the resource request limits of a namespace

You can configure CDI to import, upload, and clone VM disks into namespaces that are subject to CPU and memory resource restrictions.

#### Configure CDI scratch space

CDI requires scratch space (temporary storage) to complete some operations, such as importing and uploading VM images. During this process, CDI provisions a scratch space PVC equal to the size of the PVC backing the destination data volume (DV).

### 9.1.3. Data volumes

You can perform the following data volume configuration tasks:

#### Enable preallocation for data volumes

CDI can preallocate disk space to improve write performance when creating data volumes. You can enable preallocation for specific data volumes.

#### Manage data volume annotations

Data volume annotations allow you to manage pod behavior. You can add one or more annotations to a data volume, which then propagates to the created importer pods.

#### 9.1.4. Boot source updates

You can perform the following boot source update configuration task:

##### Manage automatic boot source updates

Boot sources can make virtual machine (VM) creation more accessible and efficient for users. If automatic boot source updates are enabled, CDI imports, polls, and updates the images so that they are ready to be cloned for new VMs. By default, CDI automatically updates Red Hat boot sources. You can enable automatic updates for custom boot sources.

## 9.2. CONFIGURING STORAGE PROFILES

A storage profile provides recommended storage settings based on the associated storage class. A storage profile is allocated for each storage class.

The Containerized Data Importer (CDI) recognizes a storage provider if it has been configured to identify and interact with the storage provider's capabilities.

For recognized storage types, the CDI provides values that optimize the creation of PVCs. You can also configure automatic settings for the storage class by customizing the storage profile. If the CDI does not recognize your storage provider, you must configure storage profiles.



### IMPORTANT

When using OpenShift Virtualization with Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation, specify RBD block mode persistent volume claims (PVCs) when creating virtual machine disks. RBD block mode volumes are more efficient and provide better performance than Ceph FS or RBD filesystem-mode PVCs.

To specify RBD block mode PVCs, use the 'ocs-storagecluster-ceph-rbd' storage class and **VolumeMode: Block**.

#### 9.2.1. Customizing the storage profile

You can specify default parameters by editing the **StorageProfile** object for the provisioner's storage class. These default parameters only apply to the persistent volume claim (PVC) if they are not configured in the **DataVolume** object.

You cannot modify storage class parameters. To make changes, delete and re-create the storage class. You must then reapply any customizations that were previously made to the storage profile.

An empty **status** section in a storage profile indicates that a storage provisioner is not recognized by the Containerized Data Interface (CDI). Customizing a storage profile is necessary if you have a storage provisioner that is not recognized by CDI. In this case, the administrator sets appropriate values in the storage profile to ensure successful allocations.



## WARNING

If you create a data volume and omit YAML attributes and these attributes are not defined in the storage profile, then the requested storage will not be allocated and the underlying persistent volume claim (PVC) will not be created.

## Prerequisites

- Ensure that your planned configuration is supported by the storage class and its provider. Specifying an incompatible configuration in a storage profile causes volume provisioning to fail.

## Procedure

1. Edit the storage profile. In this example, the provisioner is not recognized by CDI.

```
$ oc edit storageprofile <storage_class>
```

### Example storage profile

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: StorageProfile
metadata:
 name: <unknown_provisioner_class>
...
spec: {}
status:
 provisioner: <unknown_provisioner>
 storageClass: <unknown_provisioner_class>
```

2. Provide the needed attribute values in the storage profile:

### Example storage profile

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: StorageProfile
metadata:
 name: <unknown_provisioner_class>
...
spec:
 claimPropertySets:
 - accessModes:
 - ReadWriteOnce 1
 volumeMode:
 Filesystem 2
 status:
 provisioner: <unknown_provisioner>
 storageClass: <unknown_provisioner_class>
```

**1** The **accessModes** that you select.

- 2 The **volumeMode** that you select.

After you save your changes, the selected values appear in the storage profile **status** element.

### 9.2.1.1. Setting a default cloning strategy using a storage profile

You can use storage profiles to set a default cloning method for a storage class, creating a *cloning strategy*. Setting cloning strategies can be helpful, for example, if your storage vendor only supports certain cloning methods. It also allows you to select a method that limits resource usage or maximizes performance.

Cloning strategies can be specified by setting the **cloneStrategy** attribute in a storage profile to one of these values:

- **snapshot** is used by default when snapshots are configured. The CDI will use the snapshot method if it recognizes the storage provider and the provider supports Container Storage Interface (CSI) snapshots. This cloning strategy uses a temporary volume snapshot to clone the volume.
- **copy** uses a source pod and a target pod to copy data from the source volume to the target volume. Host-assisted cloning is the least efficient method of cloning.
- **csi-clone** uses the CSI clone API to efficiently clone an existing volume without using an interim volume snapshot. Unlike **snapshot** or **copy**, which are used by default if no storage profile is defined, CSI volume cloning is only used when you specify it in the **StorageProfile** object for the provisioner's storage class.



#### NOTE

You can also set clone strategies using the CLI without modifying the default **claimPropertySets** in your YAML **spec** section.

#### Example storage profile

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: StorageProfile
metadata:
 name: <provisioner_class>
...
spec:
 claimPropertySets:
 - accessModes:
 - ReadWriteOnce ①
 volumeMode:
 Filesystem ②
 cloneStrategy: csi-clone ③
status:
 provisioner: <provisioner>
 storageClass: <provisioner_class>
```

- ① Specify the access mode.
- ② Specify the volume mode.

- 3** Specify the default cloning strategy.

**Table 9.1. Storage providers and default behaviors**

| Storage provider                      | Default behavior |
|---------------------------------------|------------------|
| rook-ceph.rbd.csi.ceph.com            | Snapshot         |
| openshift-storage.rbd.csi.ceph.com    | Snapshot         |
| csi-vxflexos.dell EMC.com             | CSI Clone        |
| csi-isilon.dell EMC.com               | CSI Clone        |
| csi-powermax.dell EMC.com             | CSI Clone        |
| csi-powerstore.dell EMC.com           | CSI Clone        |
| hspc.csi.hitachi.com                  | CSI Clone        |
| csi.hpe.com                           | CSI Clone        |
| spectrumscale.csi.ibm.com             | CSI Clone        |
| rook-ceph.rbd.csi.ceph.com            | CSI Clone        |
| openshift-storage.rbd.csi.ceph.com    | CSI Clone        |
| cephfs.csi.ceph.com                   | CSI Clone        |
| openshift-storage.cephfs.csi.ceph.com | CSI Clone        |

## 9.3. MANAGING AUTOMATIC BOOT SOURCE UPDATES

You can manage automatic updates for the following boot sources:

- [All Red Hat boot sources](#)
- [All custom boot sources](#)
- [Individual Red Hat or custom boot sources](#)

Boot sources can make virtual machine (VM) creation more accessible and efficient for users. If automatic boot source updates are enabled, the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) imports, polls, and updates the images so that they are ready to be cloned for new VMs. By default, CDI automatically updates Red Hat boot sources.

### 9.3.1. Managing Red Hat boot source updates

You can opt out of automatic updates for all system-defined boot sources by disabling the **enableCommonBootImageImport** feature gate. If you disable this feature gate, all **DataImportCron** objects are deleted. This does not remove previously imported boot source objects that store operating system images, though administrators can delete them manually.

When the **enableCommonBootImageImport** feature gate is disabled, **DataSource** objects are reset so that they no longer point to the original boot source. An administrator can manually provide a boot source by creating a new persistent volume claim (PVC) or volume snapshot for the **DataSource** object, then populating it with an operating system image.

### 9.3.1.1. Managing automatic updates for all system-defined boot sources

Disabling automatic boot source imports and updates can lower resource usage. In disconnected environments, disabling automatic boot source updates prevents **CDIDataImportCronOutdated** alerts from filling up logs.

To disable automatic updates for all system-defined boot sources, turn off the **enableCommonBootImageImport** feature gate by setting the value to **false**. Setting this value to **true** re-enables the feature gate and turns automatic updates back on.



#### NOTE

Custom boot sources are not affected by this setting.

#### Procedure

- Toggle the feature gate for automatic boot source updates by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).
  - To disable automatic boot source updates, set the **spec.featureGates.enableCommonBootImageImport** field in the **HyperConverged** CR to **false**. For example:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type json -p '[{"op": "replace", "path": \
"/spec/featureGates/enableCommonBootImageImport", \
"value": false}]'
```

- To re-enable automatic boot source updates, set the **spec.featureGates.enableCommonBootImageImport** field in the **HyperConverged** CR to **true**. For example:

```
$ oc patch hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type json -p '[{"op": "replace", "path": \
"/spec/featureGates/enableCommonBootImageImport", \
"value": true}]'
```

### 9.3.2. Managing custom boot source updates

*Custom boot sources that are not provided by OpenShift Virtualization are not controlled by the feature gate. You must manage them individually by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).*



## IMPORTANT

You must configure a storage class. Otherwise, the cluster cannot receive automated updates for custom boot sources. See [Defining a storage class](#) for details.

### 9.3.2.1. Configuring a storage class for custom boot source updates

You can override the default storage class by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).



## IMPORTANT

Boot sources are created from storage using the default storage class. If your cluster does not have a default storage class, you must define one before configuring automatic updates for custom boot sources.

#### Procedure

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Define a new storage class by entering a value in the **storageClassName** field:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 dataImportCronTemplates:
 - metadata:
 name: rhel8-image-cron
 spec:
 template:
 spec:
 storageClassName: <new_storage_class> ①
 schedule: "0 */12 * * *" ②
 managedDataSource: <data_source> ③
...
```

- ① Define the storage class.
- ② Required: Schedule for the job specified in cron format.
- ③ Required: The data source to use.

For the custom image to be detected as an available boot source, the value of the `spec.dataVolumeTemplates.spec.sourceRef.name` parameter in the VM template must match this value.

3. Remove the **storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class** annotation from the current default storage class.
  - a. Retrieve the name of the current default storage class by running the following command:

```
$ oc get storageclass
```

### Example output

| NAME                         | PROVISIONER                      | RECLAIMPOLICY    |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| VOLUMEBINDINGMODE            | ALLOWVOLUMEEXPANSION             | AGE              |
| csi-manila-ceph              | manila.csi.openstack.org         | Delete Immediate |
| false                        | 11d                              |                  |
| hostpath-csi-basic (default) | kubevirt.io.hostpath-provisioner | Delete           |
| WaitForFirstConsumer         | false                            | 11d ①            |

- ① In this example, the current default storage class is named **hostpath-csi-basic**.
- b. Remove the annotation from the current default storage class by running the following command:
 

```
$ oc patch storageclass <current_default_storage_class> -p '{"metadata": {"annotations": {"storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class": "false"}}}' ①
```
- ① Replace **<current\_default\_storage\_class>** with the **storageClassName** value of the default storage class.
4. Set the new storage class as the default by running the following command:

```
$ oc patch storageclass <new_storage_class> -p '{"metadata": {"annotations": {"storageclass.kubernetes.io/is-default-class": "true"}}}' ①
```

- ① Replace **<new\_storage\_class>** with the **storageClassName** value that you added to the **HyperConverged** CR.

#### 9.3.2.2. Enabling automatic updates for custom boot sources

OpenShift Virtualization automatically updates system-defined boot sources by default, but does not automatically update custom boot sources. You must manually enable automatic updates by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

##### Prerequisites

- The cluster has a default storage class.

##### Procedure

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Edit the **HyperConverged** CR, adding the appropriate template and boot source in the **dataImportCronTemplates** section. For example:

##### Example custom resource

```

apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 dataImportCronTemplates:
 - metadata:
 name: centos7-image-cron
 annotations:
 cdi.kubevirt.io/storage.bind.immediate.requested: "true" 1
 spec:
 schedule: "0 */12 * * *" 2
 template:
 spec:
 source:
 registry: 3
 url: docker://quay.io/containerdisks/centos:7-2009
 storage:
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 10Gi
 managedDataSource: centos7 4
 retentionPolicy: "None" 5

```

- 1** This annotation is required for storage classes with **volumeBindingMode** set to **WaitForFirstConsumer**.
- 2** Schedule for the job specified in cron format.
- 3** Use to create a data volume from a registry source. Use the default **pod pullMethod** and not **node pullMethod**, which is based on the **node** docker cache. The **node** docker cache is useful when a registry image is available via **Container.Image**, but the CDI importer is not authorized to access it.
- 4** For the custom image to be detected as an available boot source, the name of the image's **managedDataSource** must match the name of the template's **DataSource**, which is found under **spec.dataVolumeTemplates.spec.sourceRef.name** in the VM template YAML file.
- 5** Use **All** to retain data volumes and data sources when the cron job is deleted. Use **None** to delete data volumes and data sources when the cron job is deleted.

3. Save the file.

### 9.3.2.3. Enabling volume snapshot boot sources

Enable volume snapshot boot sources by setting the parameter in the **StorageProfile** associated with the storage class that stores operating system base images. Although **DataImportCron** was originally designed to maintain only PVC sources, **VolumeSnapshot** sources scale better than PVC sources for certain storage types.



#### NOTE

Use volume snapshots on a storage profile that is proven to scale better when cloning from a single snapshot.

## Prerequisites

- You must have access to a volume snapshot with the operating system image.
- The storage must support snapshotting.

## Procedure

1. Open the storage profile object that corresponds to the storage class used to provision boot sources by running the following command:
 

```
$ oc edit storageprofile <storage_class>
```
2. Review the **dataImportCronSourceFormat** specification of the **StorageProfile** to confirm whether or not the VM is using PVC or volume snapshot by default.
3. Edit the storage profile, if needed, by updating the **dataImportCronSourceFormat** specification to **snapshot**.

### Example storage profile

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: StorageProfile
metadata:
...
spec:
 dataImportCronSourceFormat: snapshot
```

## Verification

1. Open the storage profile object that corresponds to the storage class used to provision boot sources.
 

```
$ oc get storageprofile <storage_class> -oyaml
```
2. Confirm that the **dataImportCronSourceFormat** specification of the **StorageProfile** is set to 'snapshot', and that any **DataSource** objects that the **DataImportCron** points to now reference volume snapshots.

You can now use these boot sources to create virtual machines.

### 9.3.3. Disabling automatic updates for a single boot source

You can disable automatic updates for an individual boot source, whether it is custom or system-defined, by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

## Procedure

1. Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:
 

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```
2. Disable automatic updates for an individual boot source by editing the **spec.dataImportCronTemplates** field.

## Custom boot source

- Remove the boot source from the **spec.dataImportCronTemplates** field. Automatic updates are disabled for custom boot sources by default.

## System-defined boot source

- Add the boot source to **spec.dataImportCronTemplates**.



### NOTE

Automatic updates are enabled by default for system-defined boot sources, but these boot sources are not listed in the CR unless you add them.

- Set the value of the **dataimportcrontemplate.kubevirt.io/enable** annotation to '**false**'. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 dataImportCronTemplates:
 - metadata:
 annotations:
 dataimportcrontemplate.kubevirt.io/enable: 'false'
 name: rhel8-image-cron
 # ...
```

- Save the file.

### 9.3.4. Verifying the status of a boot source

You can determine if a boot source is system-defined or custom by viewing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Procedure

- View the contents of the **HyperConverged** CR by running the following command:

```
$ oc get hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv -o yaml
```

#### Example output

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 # ...
status:
 # ...
```

```

dataImportCronTemplates:
- metadata:
 annotations:
 cdi.kubevirt.io/storage.bind.immediate.requested: "true"
 name: centos-7-image-cron
 spec:
 garbageCollect: Outdated
 managedDataSource: centos7
 schedule: 55 8/12 * * *
 template:
 metadata: {}
 spec:
 source:
 registry:
 url: docker://quay.io/containerdisks/centos:7-2009
 storage:
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 30Gi
 status: {}
 status:
 commonTemplate: true ①
...
- metadata:
 annotations:
 cdi.kubevirt.io/storage.bind.immediate.requested: "true"
 name: user-defined-dic
 spec:
 garbageCollect: Outdated
 managedDataSource: user-defined-centos-stream8
 schedule: 55 8/12 * * *
 template:
 metadata: {}
 spec:
 source:
 registry:
 pullMethod: node
 url: docker://quay.io/containerdisks/centos-stream:8
 storage:
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 30Gi
 status: {}
 status: {} ②
...

```

① Indicates a system-defined boot source.

② Indicates a custom boot source.

2. Verify the status of the boot source by reviewing the **status.dataImportCronTemplates.status** field.
  - If the field contains **commonTemplate: true**, it is a system-defined boot source.

- If the **status.dataImportCronTemplates.status** field has the value `{}`, it is a custom boot source.

## 9.4. RESERVING PVC SPACE FOR FILE SYSTEM OVERHEAD

When you add a virtual machine disk to a persistent volume claim (PVC) that uses the **Filesystem** volume mode, you must ensure that there is enough space on the PVC for the VM disk and for file system overhead, such as metadata.

By default, OpenShift Virtualization reserves 5.5% of the PVC space for overhead, reducing the space available for virtual machine disks by that amount.

You can configure a different overhead value by editing the **HCO** object. You can change the value globally and you can specify values for specific storage classes.

### 9.4.1. Overriding the default file system overhead value

Change the amount of persistent volume claim (PVC) space that the OpenShift Virtualization reserves for file system overhead by editing the **spec.filesystemOverhead** attribute of the **HCO** object.

#### Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### Procedure

1. Open the **HCO** object for editing by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Edit the **spec.filesystemOverhead** fields, populating them with your chosen values:

```
...
spec:
 filesystemOverhead:
 global: "<new_global_value>" ①
 storageClass:
 <storage_class_name>: "<new_value_for_this_storage_class>" ②
```

- 1 The default file system overhead percentage used for any storage classes that do not already have a set value. For example, **global: "0.07"** reserves 7% of the PVC for file system overhead.
- 2 The file system overhead percentage for the specified storage class. For example, **mystorageclass: "0.04"** changes the default overhead value for PVCs in the **mystorageclass** storage class to 4%.

3. Save and exit the editor to update the **HCO** object.

#### Verification

- View the **CDIConfig** status and verify your changes by running one of the following commands:  
To generally verify changes to **CDIConfig**:

```
$ oc get cdiconfig -o yaml
```

To view your specific changes to **CDIConfig**:

```
$ oc get cdiconfig -o jsonpath='{.items..status.filesystemOverhead}'
```

## 9.5. CONFIGURING LOCAL STORAGE BY USING THE HOSTPATH PROVISIONER

You can configure local storage for virtual machines by using the hostpath provisioner (HPP).

When you install the OpenShift Virtualization Operator, the Hostpath Provisioner Operator is automatically installed. HPP is a local storage provisioner designed for OpenShift Virtualization that is created by the Hostpath Provisioner Operator. To use HPP, you create an HPP custom resource (CR) with a basic storage pool.

### 9.5.1. Creating a hostpath provisioner with a basic storage pool

You configure a hostpath provisioner (HPP) with a basic storage pool by creating an HPP custom resource (CR) with a **storagePools** stanza. The storage pool specifies the name and path used by the CSI driver.



#### IMPORTANT

Do not create storage pools in the same partition as the operating system. Otherwise, the operating system partition might become filled to capacity, which will impact performance or cause the node to become unstable or unusable.

#### Prerequisites

- The directories specified in **spec.storagePools.path** must have read/write access.

#### Procedure

- Create an **hpp\_cr.yaml** file with a **storagePools** stanza as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: hostpathprovisioner.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HostPathProvisioner
metadata:
 name: hostpath-provisioner
spec:
 imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
 storagePools: ①
 - name: any_name
 path: "/var/myvolumes" ②
 workload:
 nodeSelector:
 kubernetes.io/os: linux
```

- The **storagePools** stanza is an array to which you can add multiple entries.
- Specify the storage pool directories under this node path.

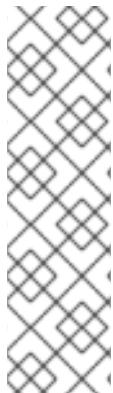
2. Save the file and exit.
3. Create the HPP by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f_hpp_cr.yaml
```

### 9.5.1.1. About creating storage classes

When you create a storage class, you set parameters that affect the dynamic provisioning of persistent volumes (PVs) that belong to that storage class. You cannot update a **StorageClass** object's parameters after you create it.

In order to use the hostpath provisioner (HPP) you must create an associated storage class for the CSI driver with the **storagePools** stanza.



#### NOTE

Virtual machines use data volumes that are based on local PVs. Local PVs are bound to specific nodes. While the disk image is prepared for consumption by the virtual machine, it is possible that the virtual machine cannot be scheduled to the node where the local storage PV was previously pinned.

To solve this problem, use the Kubernetes pod scheduler to bind the persistent volume claim (PVC) to a PV on the correct node. By using the **StorageClass** value with **volumeBindingMode** parameter set to **WaitForFirstConsumer**, the binding and provisioning of the PV is delayed until a pod is created using the PVC.

### 9.5.1.2. Creating a storage class for the CSI driver with the storagePools stanza

To use the hostpath provisioner (HPP) you must create an associated storage class for the Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver.

When you create a storage class, you set parameters that affect the dynamic provisioning of persistent volumes (PVs) that belong to that storage class. You cannot update a **StorageClass** object's parameters after you create it.



#### NOTE

Virtual machines use data volumes that are based on local PVs. Local PVs are bound to specific nodes. While a disk image is prepared for consumption by the virtual machine, it is possible that the virtual machine cannot be scheduled to the node where the local storage PV was previously pinned.

To solve this problem, use the Kubernetes pod scheduler to bind the persistent volume claim (PVC) to a PV on the correct node. By using the **StorageClass** value with **volumeBindingMode** parameter set to **WaitForFirstConsumer**, the binding and provisioning of the PV is delayed until a pod is created using the PVC.

#### Procedure

1. Create a **storageclass\_csi.yaml** file to define the storage class:

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
```

```

metadata:
 name: hostpath-csi
 provisioner: kubevirt.io.hostpath-provisioner
 reclaimPolicy: Delete 1
 volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer 2
 parameters:
 storagePool: my-storage-pool 3

```

- 1** The two possible **reclaimPolicy** values are **Delete** and **Retain**. If you do not specify a value, the default value is **Delete**.
- 2** The **volumeBindingMode** parameter determines when dynamic provisioning and volume binding occur. Specify **WaitForFirstConsumer** to delay the binding and provisioning of a persistent volume (PV) until after a pod that uses the persistent volume claim (PVC) is created. This ensures that the PV meets the pod's scheduling requirements.
- 3** Specify the name of the storage pool defined in the HPP CR.

2. Save the file and exit.

3. Create the **StorageClass** object by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f storageclass_csi.yaml
```

### 9.5.2. About storage pools created with PVC templates

If you have a single, large persistent volume (PV), you can create a storage pool by defining a PVC template in the hostpath provisioner (HPP) custom resource (CR).

A storage pool created with a PVC template can contain multiple HPP volumes. Splitting a PV into smaller volumes provides greater flexibility for data allocation.

The PVC template is based on the **spec** stanza of the **PersistentVolumeClaim** object:

#### Example PersistentVolumeClaim object

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolumeClaim
metadata:
 name: iso-pvc
spec:
 volumeMode: Block 1
 storageClassName: my-storage-class
 accessModes:
 - ReadWriteOnce
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 5Gi

```

- 1** This value is only required for block volume mode PVs.

You define a storage pool using a **pvcTemplate** specification in the HPP CR. The Operator creates a PVC from the **pvcTemplate** specification for each node containing the HPP CSI driver. The PVC

created from the PVC template consumes the single large PV, allowing the HPP to create smaller dynamic volumes.

You can combine basic storage pools with storage pools created from PVC templates.

### 9.5.2.1. Creating a storage pool with a PVC template

You can create a storage pool for multiple hostpath provisioner (HPP) volumes by specifying a PVC template in the HPP custom resource (CR).



#### IMPORTANT

Do not create storage pools in the same partition as the operating system. Otherwise, the operating system partition might become filled to capacity, which will impact performance or cause the node to become unstable or unusable.

#### Prerequisites

- The directories specified in **spec.storagePools.path** must have read/write access.

#### Procedure

- Create an **hpp\_pvc\_template\_pool.yaml** file for the HPP CR that specifies a persistent volume (PVC) template in the **storagePools** stanza according to the following example:

```
apiVersion: hostpathprovisioner.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HostPathProvisioner
metadata:
 name: hostpath-provisioner
spec:
 imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent
 storagePools: ①
 - name: my-storage-pool
 path: "/var/myvolumes" ②
 pvcTemplate:
 volumeMode: Block ③
 storageClassName: my-storage-class ④
 accessModes:
 - ReadWriteOnce
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 5Gi ⑤
 workload:
 nodeSelector:
 kubernetes.io/os: linux
```

- The **storagePools** stanza is an array that can contain both basic and PVC template storage pools.
- Specify the storage pool directories under this node path.
- Optional: The **volumeMode** parameter can be either **Block** or **Filesystem** as long as it matches the provisioned volume format. If no value is specified, the default is **Filesystem**. If the **volumeMode** is **Block**, the mounting pod creates an XFS file system on the block

volume before mounting it.

- 4 If the **storageClassName** parameter is omitted, the default storage class is used to create PVCs. If you omit **storageClassName**, ensure that the HPP storage class is not the default storage class.
- 5 You can specify statically or dynamically provisioned storage. In either case, ensure the requested storage size is appropriate for the volume you want to virtually divide or the PVC cannot be bound to the large PV. If the storage class you are using uses dynamically provisioned storage, pick an allocation size that matches the size of a typical request.

2. Save the file and exit.
3. Create the HPP with a storage pool by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f_hpp_pvc_template_pool.yaml
```

## 9.6. ENABLING USER PERMISSIONS TO CLONE DATA VOLUMES ACROSS NAMESPACES

The isolating nature of namespaces means that users cannot by default clone resources between namespaces.

To enable a user to clone a virtual machine to another namespace, a user with the **cluster-admin** role must create a new cluster role. Bind this cluster role to a user to enable them to clone virtual machines to the destination namespace.

### 9.6.1. Creating RBAC resources for cloning data volumes

Create a new cluster role that enables permissions for all actions for the **datavolumes** resource.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have cluster admin privileges.

#### Procedure

1. Create a **ClusterRole** manifest:

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRole
metadata:
 name: <datavolume-cloner> ①
rules:
- apiGroups: ["cdi.kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["datavolumes/source"]
 verbs: ["*"]
```

- ① Unique name for the cluster role.

2. Create the cluster role in the cluster:

```
$ oc create -f <datavolume-cloner.yaml> ①
```

- ① The file name of the **ClusterRole** manifest created in the previous step.

3. Create a **RoleBinding** manifest that applies to both the source and destination namespaces and references the cluster role created in the previous step.

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
 name: <allow-clone-to-user> ①
 namespace: <Source namespace> ②
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
 name: default
 namespace: <Destination namespace> ③
roleRef:
 kind: ClusterRole
 name: datavolume-cloner ④
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
```

- ① Unique name for the role binding.
- ② The namespace for the source data volume.
- ③ The namespace to which the data volume is cloned.
- ④ The name of the cluster role created in the previous step.

4. Create the role binding in the cluster:

```
$ oc create -f <datavolume-cloner.yaml> ①
```

- ① The file name of the **RoleBinding** manifest created in the previous step.

## 9.7. CONFIGURING CDI TO OVERRIDE CPU AND MEMORY QUOTAS

You can configure the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) to import, upload, and clone virtual machine disks into namespaces that are subject to CPU and memory resource restrictions.

### 9.7.1. About CPU and memory quotas in a namespace

A *resource quota*, defined by the **ResourceQuota** object, imposes restrictions on a namespace that limit the total amount of compute resources that can be consumed by resources within that namespace.

The **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR) defines the user configuration for the Containerized Data Importer (CDI). The CPU and memory request and limit values are set to a default value of **0**. This ensures that pods created by CDI that do not specify compute resource requirements are given the default values and are allowed to run in a namespace that is restricted with a quota.

When the **AutoResourceLimits** feature gate is enabled, OpenShift Virtualization automatically manages CPU and memory limits. If a namespace has both CPU and memory quotas, the memory limit is set to double the base allocation and the CPU limit is one per vCPU.

### 9.7.2. Overriding CPU and memory defaults

Modify the default settings for CPU and memory requests and limits for your use case by adding the **spec.resourceRequirements.storageWorkloads** stanza to the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### Procedure

1. Edit the **HyperConverged** CR by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Add the **spec.resourceRequirements.storageWorkloads** stanza to the CR, setting the values based on your use case. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 resourceRequirements:
 storageWorkloads:
 limits:
 cpu: "500m"
 memory: "2Gi"
 requests:
 cpu: "250m"
 memory: "1Gi"
```

3. Save and exit the editor to update the **HyperConverged** CR.

### 9.7.3. Additional resources

- [Resource quotas per project](#)

## 9.8. PREPARING CDI SCRATCH SPACE

### 9.8.1. About scratch space

The Containerized Data Importer (CDI) requires scratch space (temporary storage) to complete some operations, such as importing and uploading virtual machine images. During this process, CDI provisions a scratch space PVC equal to the size of the PVC backing the destination data volume (DV). The scratch space PVC is deleted after the operation completes or aborts.

You can define the storage class that is used to bind the scratch space PVC in the **spec.scratchSpaceStorageClass** field of the **HyperConverged** custom resource.

If the defined storage class does not match a storage class in the cluster, then the default storage class defined for the cluster is used. If there is no default storage class defined in the cluster, the storage class used to provision the original DV or PVC is used.



#### NOTE

CDI requires requesting scratch space with a **file** volume mode, regardless of the PVC backing the origin data volume. If the origin PVC is backed by **block** volume mode, you must define a storage class capable of provisioning **file** volume mode PVCs.

#### Manual provisioning

If there are no storage classes, CDI uses any PVCs in the project that match the size requirements for the image. If there are no PVCs that match these requirements, the CDI import pod remains in a **Pending** state until an appropriate PVC is made available or until a timeout function kills the pod.

### 9.8.2. CDI operations that require scratch space

| Type                                 | Reason                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Registry imports                     | CDI must download the image to a scratch space and extract the layers to find the image file. The image file is then passed to QEMU-IMG for conversion to a raw disk. |
| Upload image                         | QEMU-IMG does not accept input from STDIN. Instead, the image to upload is saved in scratch space before it can be passed to QEMU-IMG for conversion.                 |
| HTTP imports of archived images      | QEMU-IMG does not know how to handle the archive formats CDI supports. Instead, the image is unarchived and saved into scratch space before it is passed to QEMU-IMG. |
| HTTP imports of authenticated images | QEMU-IMG inadequately handles authentication. Instead, the image is saved to scratch space and authenticated before it is passed to QEMU-IMG.                         |
| HTTP imports of custom certificates  | QEMU-IMG inadequately handles custom certificates of HTTPS endpoints. Instead, CDI downloads the image to scratch space before passing the file to QEMU-IMG.          |

### 9.8.3. Defining a storage class

You can define the storage class that the Containerized Data Importer (CDI) uses when allocating scratch space by adding the **spec.scratchSpaceStorageClass** field to the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

## Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

## Procedure

1. Edit the **HyperConverged** CR by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Add the **spec.scratchSpaceStorageClass** field to the CR, setting the value to the name of a storage class that exists in the cluster:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 scratchSpaceStorageClass: "<storage_class>" ①
```

- ① If you do not specify a storage class, CDI uses the storage class of the persistent volume claim that is being populated.

3. Save and exit your default editor to update the **HyperConverged** CR.

### 9.8.4. CDI supported operations matrix

This matrix shows the supported CDI operations for content types against endpoints, and which of these operations requires scratch space.

| Content types       | HTTP                      | HTTPS                       | HTTP basic auth           | Registry                 | Upload                     |
|---------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| KubeVirt<br>(QCOW2) | ✓ QCOW2<br>✓ GZ*<br>✓ XZ* | ✓ QCOW2**<br>✓ GZ*<br>✓ XZ* | ✓ QCOW2<br>✓ GZ*<br>✓ XZ* | ✓ QCOW2*<br>□ GZ<br>□ XZ | ✓ QCOW2*<br>✓ GZ*<br>✓ XZ* |
| KubeVirt<br>(RAW)   | ✓ RAW<br>✓ GZ<br>✓ XZ     | ✓ RAW<br>✓ GZ<br>✓ XZ       | ✓ RAW<br>✓ GZ<br>✓ XZ     | ✓ RAW*<br>□ GZ<br>□ XZ   | ✓ RAW*<br>✓ GZ*<br>✓ XZ*   |

✓ Supported operation

□ Unsupported operation

\* Requires scratch space

\*\* Requires scratch space if a custom certificate authority is required

### 9.8.5. Additional resources

- [Dynamic provisioning](#)

## 9.9. USING PREALLOCATION FOR DATA VOLUMES

The Containerized Data Importer can preallocate disk space to improve write performance when creating data volumes.

You can enable preallocation for specific data volumes.

### 9.9.1. About preallocation

The Containerized Data Importer (CDI) can use the QEMU preallocate mode for data volumes to improve write performance. You can use preallocation mode for importing and uploading operations and when creating blank data volumes.

If preallocation is enabled, CDI uses the better preallocation method depending on the underlying file system and device type:

#### **fallocate**

If the file system supports it, CDI uses the operating system's **fallocate** call to preallocate space by using the **posix\_fallocate** function, which allocates blocks and marks them as uninitialized.

#### **full**

If **fallocate** mode cannot be used, **full** mode allocates space for the image by writing data to the underlying storage. Depending on the storage location, all the empty allocated space might be zeroed.

### 9.9.2. Enabling preallocation for a data volume

You can enable preallocation for specific data volumes by including the **spec.preallocation** field in the data volume manifest. You can enable preallocation mode in either the web console or by using the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

Preallocation mode is supported for all CDI source types.

#### Procedure

- Specify the **spec.preallocation** field in the data volume manifest:

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: DataVolume
metadata:
 name: preallocated-datavolume
spec:
 source: ①
 registry:
 url: <image_url> ②
 storage:
 resources:
 requests:
 storage: 1Gi
 preallocation: true
...
```

- ① All CDI source types support preallocation. However, preallocation is ignored for cloning operations.

- 2 Specify the URL of the data source in your registry.

## 9.10. MANAGING DATA VOLUME ANNOTATIONS

Data volume (DV) annotations allow you to manage pod behavior. You can add one or more annotations to a data volume, which then propagates to the created importer pods.

### 9.10.1. Example: Data volume annotations

This example shows how you can configure data volume (DV) annotations to control which network the importer pod uses. The **v1.multus-cni.io/default-network: bridge-network** annotation causes the pod to use the multus network named **bridge-network** as its default network. If you want the importer pod to use both the default network from the cluster and the secondary multus network, use the **k8s.v1.cni.cncf.io/networks: <network\_name>** annotation.

#### Multus network annotation example

```
apiVersion: cdi.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: DataVolume
metadata:
 name: datavolume-example
 annotations:
 v1.multus-cni.io/default-network: bridge-network ①
 # ...
```

- 1 Multus network annotation

# CHAPTER 10. LIVE MIGRATION

## 10.1. ABOUT LIVE MIGRATION

Live migration is the process of moving a running virtual machine (VM) to another node in the cluster without interrupting the virtual workload. By default, live migration traffic is encrypted using Transport Layer Security (TLS).

### 10.1.1. Live migration requirements

Live migration has the following requirements:

- The cluster must have shared storage with **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode.
- The cluster must have sufficient RAM and network bandwidth.



#### NOTE

You must ensure that there is enough memory request capacity in the cluster to support node drains that result in live migrations. You can determine the approximate required spare memory by using the following calculation:

Product of (Maximum number of nodes that can drain in parallel) and (Highest total VM memory request allocations across nodes)

The default number of migrations that can run in parallel in the cluster is 5.

- If a VM uses a host model CPU, the nodes must support the CPU.
- [Configuring a dedicated Multus network](#) for live migration is highly recommended. A dedicated network minimizes the effects of network saturation on tenant workloads during migration.

### 10.1.2. Common live migration tasks

You can perform the following live migration tasks:

- [Configure live migration settings](#)
- [Initiate and cancel live migration](#)
- Monitor the progress of all live migrations in the **Migration** tab of the OpenShift Virtualization web console.
- View VM migration metrics in the **Metrics** tab of the web console.

### 10.1.3. Additional resources

- [Prometheus queries for live migration](#)
- [VM migration tuning](#)
- [VM run strategies](#)

- VM and cluster eviction strategies

## 10.2. CONFIGURING LIVE MIGRATION

You can configure live migration settings to ensure that the migration processes do not overwhelm the cluster.

You can configure live migration policies to apply different migration configurations to groups of virtual machines (VMs).

### 10.2.1. Configuring live migration limits and timeouts

Configure live migration limits and timeouts for the cluster by updating the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR), which is located in the **openshift-cnv** namespace.

#### Procedure

- Edit the **HyperConverged** CR and add the necessary live migration parameters:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

#### Example configuration file

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 liveMigrationConfig:
 bandwidthPerMigration: 64Mi 1
 completionTimeoutPerGiB: 800 2
 parallelMigrationsPerCluster: 5 3
 parallelOutboundMigrationsPerNode: 2 4
 progressTimeout: 150 5
```

- 1** Bandwidth limit of each migration, where the value is the quantity of bytes per second. For example, a value of **2048Mi** means 2048 MiB/s. Default: **0**, which is unlimited.
- 2** The migration is canceled if it has not completed in this time, in seconds per GiB of memory. For example, a VM with 6GiB memory times out if it has not completed migration in 4800 seconds. If the **Migration Method** is **BlockMigration**, the size of the migrating disks is included in the calculation.
- 3** Number of migrations running in parallel in the cluster. Default: **5**.
- 4** Maximum number of outbound migrations per node. Default: **2**.
- 5** The migration is canceled if memory copy fails to make progress in this time, in seconds. Default: **150**.

**NOTE**

You can restore the default value for any **spec.liveMigrationConfig** field by deleting that key/value pair and saving the file. For example, delete **progressTimeout: <value>** to restore the default **progressTimeout: 150**.

### 10.2.2. Live migration policies

You can create live migration policies to apply different migration configurations to groups of VMs that are defined by VM or project labels.

**TIP**

You can create live migration policies by using the OpenShift Virtualization web console.

#### 10.2.2.1. Creating a live migration policy by using the command line

You can create a live migration policy by using the command line. KubeVirt applies the live migration policy to selected virtual machines (VMs) by using any combination of labels:

- VM labels such as **size**, **os**, or **gpu**
- Project labels such as **priority**, **bandwidth**, or **hpc-workload**

For the policy to apply to a specific group of VMs, all labels on the group of VMs must match the labels of the policy.

**NOTE**

If multiple live migration policies apply to a VM, the policy with the greatest number of matching labels takes precedence.

If multiple policies meet this criteria, the policies are sorted by alphabetical order of the matching label keys, and the first one in that order takes precedence.

**Procedure**

1. Edit the VM object to which you want to apply a live migration policy, and add the corresponding VM labels.
  - a. Open the YAML configuration of the resource:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name>
```

- b. Adjust the required label values in the **.spec.template.metadata.labels** section of the configuration. For example, to mark the VM as a **production** VM for the purposes of migration policies, add the **kubevirt.io/environment: production** line:

```
apiVersion: migrations.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: <vm_name>
 namespace: default
 labels:
 app: my-app
```

```

environment: production
spec:
template:
metadata:
labels:
kubevirt.io/domain: <vm_name>
kubevirt.io/size: large
kubevirt.io/environment: production
...

```

- c. Save and exit the configuration.
2. Configure a **MigrationPolicy** object with the corresponding labels. The following example configures a policy that applies to all VMs that are labeled as **production**:

```

apiVersion: migrations.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: MigrationPolicy
metadata:
name: <migration_policy>
spec:
selectors:
namespaceSelector: ①
hpc-workloads: "True"
xyz-workloads-type: ""
virtualMachineInstanceSelector: ②
kubevirt.io/environment: "production"

```

- ① Specify project labels.
- ② Specify VM labels.

3. Create the migration policy by running the following command:

```
$ oc create migrationpolicy -f <migration_policy>.yaml
```

### 10.2.3. Additional resources

- [Configuring a dedicated Multus network for live migration](#)

## 10.3. INITIATING AND CANCELING LIVE MIGRATION

You can initiate the live migration of a virtual machine (VM) to another node by using the [OpenShift Container Platform web console](#) or the [command line](#).

You can cancel a live migration by using the [web console](#) or the [command line](#). The VM remains on its original node.

### TIP

You can also initiate and cancel live migration by using the **virtctl migrate <vm\_name>** and **virtctl migrate-cancel <vm\_name>** commands.

### 10.3.1. Initiating live migration

#### 10.3.1.1. Initiating live migration by using the web console

You can live migrate a running virtual machine (VM) to a different node in the cluster by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.



#### NOTE

The **Migrate** action is visible to all users but only cluster administrators can initiate a live migration.

#### Prerequisites

- The VM must be migratable.
- If the VM is configured with a host model CPU, the cluster must have an available node that supports the CPU model.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.



2. Select **Migrate** from the Options menu  beside a VM.

3. Click **Migrate**.

#### 10.3.1.2. Initiating live migration by using the command line

You can initiate the live migration of a running virtual machine (VM) by using the command line to create a **VirtualMachineInstanceMigration** object for the VM.

#### Procedure

1. Create a **VirtualMachineInstanceMigration** manifest for the VM that you want to migrate:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachineInstanceMigration
metadata:
 name: <migration_name>
spec:
 vmiName: <vm_name>
```

2. Create the object by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <migration_name>.yaml
```

The **VirtualMachineInstanceMigration** object triggers a live migration of the VM. This object exists in the cluster for as long as the virtual machine instance is running, unless manually deleted.

#### Verification

- Obtain the VM status by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe vmi <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

### Example output

```
...
Status:
Conditions:
Last Probe Time: <nil>
Last Transition Time: <nil>
Status: True
Type: LiveMigratable
Migration Method: LiveMigration
Migration State:
Completed: true
End Timestamp: 2018-12-24T06:19:42Z
Migration UID: d78c8962-0743-11e9-a540-fa163e0c69f1
Source Node: node2.example.com
Start Timestamp: 2018-12-24T06:19:35Z
Target Node: node1.example.com
Target Node Address: 10.9.0.18:43891
Target Node Domain Detected: true
```

## 10.3.2. Canceling live migration

### 10.3.2.1. Canceling live migration by using the web console

You can cancel the live migration of a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.

2. Select **Cancel Migration** on the Options menu  beside a VM.

### 10.3.2.2. Canceling live migration by using the command line

Cancel the live migration of a virtual machine by deleting the **VirtualMachineInstanceMigration** object associated with the migration.

#### Procedure

- Delete the **VirtualMachineInstanceMigration** object that triggered the live migration, **migration-job** in this example:

```
$ oc delete vmim migration-job
```

# CHAPTER 11. NODES

## 11.1. NODE MAINTENANCE

Nodes can be placed into maintenance mode by using the **oc adm** utility or **NodeMaintenance** custom resources (CRs).



### NOTE

The **node-maintenance-operator** (NMO) is no longer shipped with OpenShift Virtualization. It is deployed as a standalone Operator from the **OperatorHub** in the OpenShift Container Platform web console or by using the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

For more information on remediation, fencing, and maintaining nodes, see the [Workload Availability for Red Hat OpenShift](#) documentation.



### IMPORTANT

Virtual machines (VMs) must have a persistent volume claim (PVC) with a shared **ReadWriteMany** (RWX) access mode to be live migrated.

The Node Maintenance Operator watches for new or deleted **NodeMaintenance** CRs. When a new **NodeMaintenance** CR is detected, no new workloads are scheduled and the node is cordoned off from the rest of the cluster. All pods that can be evicted are evicted from the node. When a **NodeMaintenance** CR is deleted, the node that is referenced in the CR is made available for new workloads.



### NOTE

Using a **NodeMaintenance** CR for node maintenance tasks achieves the same results as the **oc adm cordon** and **oc adm drain** commands using standard OpenShift Container Platform custom resource processing.

### 11.1.1. Eviction strategies

Placing a node into maintenance marks the node as unschedulable and drains all the VMs and pods from it.

You can configure eviction strategies for virtual machines (VMs) or for the cluster.

#### VM eviction strategy

The VM **LiveMigrate** eviction strategy ensures that a virtual machine instance (VMI) is not interrupted if the node is placed into maintenance or drained. VMIs with this eviction strategy will be live migrated to another node.

You can configure eviction strategies for virtual machines (VMs) by using the OpenShift Virtualization web console or the [command line](#).



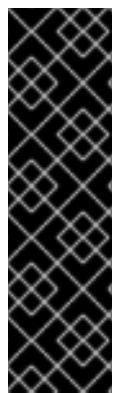
## IMPORTANT

The default eviction strategy is **LiveMigrate**. A non-migratable VM with a **LiveMigrate** eviction strategy might prevent nodes from draining or block an infrastructure upgrade because the VM is not evicted from the node. This situation causes a migration to remain in a **Pending** or **Scheduling** state unless you shut down the VM manually.

You must set the eviction strategy of non-migratable VMs to **LiveMigrateIfPossible**, which does not block an upgrade, or to **None**, for VMs that should not be migrated.

### Cluster eviction strategy

You can configure an eviction strategy for the cluster to prioritize workload continuity or infrastructure upgrade.



## IMPORTANT

Configuring a cluster eviction strategy is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

**Table 11.1. Cluster eviction strategies**

| Eviction strategy               | Description                                                                              | Interrupts workflow | Blocks upgrades  |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| <b>LiveMigrate</b> <sup>1</sup> | Prioritizes workload continuity over upgrades.                                           | No                  | Yes <sup>2</sup> |
| <b>LiveMigrateIfPossible</b>    | Prioritizes upgrades over workload continuity to ensure that the environment is updated. | Yes                 | No               |
| <b>None</b> <sup>3</sup>        | Shuts down VMs with no eviction strategy.                                                | Yes                 | No               |

1. Default eviction strategy for multi-node clusters.
2. If a VM blocks an upgrade, you must shut down the VM manually.
3. Default eviction strategy for single-node OpenShift.

#### 11.1.1. Configuring a VM eviction strategy using the command line

You can configure an eviction strategy for a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line.



## IMPORTANT

The default eviction strategy is **LiveMigrate**. A non-migratable VM with a **LiveMigrate** eviction strategy might prevent nodes from draining or block an infrastructure upgrade because the VM is not evicted from the node. This situation causes a migration to remain in a **Pending** or **Scheduling** state unless you shut down the VM manually.

You must set the eviction strategy of non-migratable VMs to **LiveMigrateIfPossible**, which does not block an upgrade, or to **None**, for VMs that should not be migrated.

## Procedure

1. Edit the **VirtualMachine** resource by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

### Example eviction strategy

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: <vm_name>
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 evictionStrategy: LiveMigrateIfPossible ①
...
```

- 1 Specify the eviction strategy. The default value is **LiveMigrate**.

2. Restart the VM to apply the changes:

```
$ virtctl restart <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

### 11.1.2. Configuring a cluster eviction strategy by using the command line

You can configure an eviction strategy for a cluster by using the command line.



## IMPORTANT

Configuring a cluster eviction strategy is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

## Procedure

1. Edit the **hyperconverged** resource by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

- Set the cluster eviction strategy as shown in the following example:

### Example cluster eviction strategy

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 evictionStrategy: LiveMigrate
...
```

## 11.1.2. Run strategies

A virtual machine (VM) configured with **spec.running: true** is immediately restarted. The **spec.runStrategy** key provides greater flexibility for determining how a VM behaves under certain conditions.



### IMPORTANT

The **spec.runStrategy** and **spec.running** keys are mutually exclusive. Only one of them can be used.

A VM configuration with both keys is invalid.

### 11.1.2.1. Run strategies

The **spec.runStrategy** key has four possible values:

#### Always

The virtual machine instance (VMI) is always present when a virtual machine (VM) is created on another node. A new VMI is created if the original stops for any reason. This is the same behavior as **running: true**.

#### RerunOnFailure

The VMI is re-created on another node if the previous instance fails. The instance is not re-created if the VM stops successfully, such as when it is shut down.

#### Manual

You control the VMI state manually with the **start**, **stop**, and **restart** virtctl client commands. The VM is not automatically restarted.

#### Halted

No VMI is present when a VM is created. This is the same behavior as **running: false**.

Different combinations of the **virtctl start**, **stop** and **restart** commands affect the run strategy.

The following table describes a VM's transition between states. The first column shows the VM's initial run strategy. The remaining columns show a virtctl command and the new run strategy after that command is run.

**Table 11.2. Run strategy before and after virtctl commands**

| Initial run strategy | Start  | Stop   | Restart        |
|----------------------|--------|--------|----------------|
| Always               | -      | Halted | Always         |
| RerunOnFailure       | -      | Halted | RerunOnFailure |
| Manual               | Manual | Manual | Manual         |
| Halted               | Always | -      | -              |

**NOTE**

If a node in a cluster installed by using installer-provisioned infrastructure fails the machine health check and is unavailable, VMs with **runStrategy: Always** or **runStrategy: RerunOnFailure** are rescheduled on a new node.

### 11.1.2.2. Configuring a VM run strategy by using the command line

You can configure a run strategy for a virtual machine (VM) by using the command line.

**IMPORTANT**

The **spec.runStrategy** and **spec.running** keys are mutually exclusive. A VM configuration that contains values for both keys is invalid.

#### Procedure

- Edit the **VirtualMachine** resource by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

#### Example run strategy

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
spec:
 runStrategy: Always
...
```

### 11.1.3. Maintaining bare metal nodes

When you deploy OpenShift Container Platform on bare metal infrastructure, there are additional considerations that must be taken into account compared to deploying on cloud infrastructure. Unlike in cloud environments where the cluster nodes are considered ephemeral, re-provisioning a bare metal node requires significantly more time and effort for maintenance tasks.

When a bare metal node fails, for example, if a fatal kernel error happens or a NIC card hardware failure occurs, workloads on the failed node need to be restarted elsewhere else on the cluster while the problem node is repaired or replaced. Node maintenance mode allows cluster administrators to gracefully power down nodes, moving workloads to other parts of the cluster and ensuring workloads do not get interrupted. Detailed progress and node status details are provided during maintenance.

#### 11.1.4. Additional resources

- [About live migration](#)

## 11.2. MANAGING NODE LABELING FOR OBSOLETE CPU MODELS

You can schedule a virtual machine (VM) on a node as long as the VM CPU model and policy are supported by the node.

### 11.2.1. About node labeling for obsolete CPU models

The OpenShift Virtualization Operator uses a predefined list of obsolete CPU models to ensure that a node supports only valid CPU models for scheduled VMs.

By default, the following CPU models are eliminated from the list of labels generated for the node:

#### Example 11.1. Obsolete CPU models

```
"486"
Conroe
athlon
core2duo
coreduo
kvm32
kvm64
n270
pentium
pentium2
pentium3
pentiumpro
phenom
qemu32
qemu64
```

This predefined list is not visible in the **HyperConverged** CR. You cannot *remove* CPU models from this list, but you can add to the list by editing the **spec.obsoleteCPUs.cpuModels** field of the **HyperConverged** CR.

### 11.2.2. About node labeling for CPU features

Through the process of iteration, the base CPU features in the minimum CPU model are eliminated from the list of labels generated for the node.

For example:

- An environment might have two supported CPU models: **Penryn** and **Haswell**.
- If **Penryn** is specified as the CPU model for **minCPU**, each base CPU feature for **Penryn** is compared to the list of CPU features supported by **Haswell**.

#### Example 11.2. CPU features supported by Penryn

```
apic
clflush
```

```
cmov
cx16
cx8
de
fpu
fxsr
lahf_lm
lm
mca
mce
mmx
msr
mtrr
nx
pae
pat
pge
pni
pse
pse36
sep
sse
sse2
sse4.1
ssse3
syscall
tsc
```

---

#### Example 11.3. CPU features supported by Haswell

```
aes
apic
avx
avx2
bmi1
bmi2
clflush
cmov
cx16
cx8
de
erms
fma
fpu
fsbsbase
fxsr
hle
invpcid
lahf_lm
lm
mca
mce
mmx
movbe
```

```
msr
mtrr
nx
pae
pat
pcid
pclmuldq
pge
pni
popcnt
pse
pse36
rdtscp
rtm
sep
smep
sse
sse2
sse4.1
sse4.2
ssse3
syscall
tsc
tsc-deadline
x2apic
xsave
```

- If both **Penryn** and **Haswell** support a specific CPU feature, a label is not created for that feature. Labels are generated for CPU features that are supported only by **Haswell** and not by **Penryn**.

#### Example 11.4. Node labels created for CPU features after iteration

```
aes
avx
avx2
bmi1
bmi2
erms
fma
fsbsbase
hle
invpcid
movbe
pcid
pclmuldq
popcnt
rdtscp
rtm
sse4.2
tsc-deadline
x2apic
xsave
```

### 11.2.3. Configuring obsolete CPU models

You can configure a list of obsolete CPU models by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

#### Procedure

- Edit the **HyperConverged** custom resource, specifying the obsolete CPU models in the **obsoleteCPUs** array. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 obsoleteCPUs:
 cpuModels: ①
 - "<obsolete_cpu_1>"
 - "<obsolete_cpu_2>"
 minCPUModel: "<minimum_cpu_model>" ②
```

- ① Replace the example values in the **cpuModels** array with obsolete CPU models. Any value that you specify is added to a predefined list of obsolete CPU models. The predefined list is not visible in the CR.
- ② Replace this value with the minimum CPU model that you want to use for basic CPU features. If you do not specify a value, **Penryn** is used by default.

## 11.3. PREVENTING NODE RECONCILIATION

Use **skip-node** annotation to prevent the **node-labeller** from reconciling a node.

### 11.3.1. Using skip-node annotation

If you want the **node-labeller** to skip a node, annotate that node by using the **oc** CLI.

#### Prerequisites

- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

#### Procedure

- Annotate the node that you want to skip by running the following command:

```
$ oc annotate node <node_name> node-labeller.kubevirt.io/skip-node=true ①
```

- ① Replace **<node\_name>** with the name of the relevant node to skip.

Reconciliation resumes on the next cycle after the node annotation is removed or set to false.

### 11.3.2. Additional resources

- [Managing node labeling for obsolete CPU models](#)

## 11.4. DELETING A FAILED NODE TO TRIGGER VIRTUAL MACHINE FAILOVER

If a node fails and [machine health checks](#) are not deployed on your cluster, virtual machines (VMs) with **runStrategy: Always** configured are not automatically relocated to healthy nodes. To trigger VM failover, you must manually delete the **Node** object.



### NOTE

If you installed your cluster by using [installer-provisioned infrastructure](#) and you properly configured machine health checks, the following events occur:

- Failed nodes are automatically recycled.
- Virtual machines with **runStrategy** set to **Always** or **RerunOnFailure** are automatically scheduled on healthy nodes.

### 11.4.1. Prerequisites

- A node where a virtual machine was running has the **NotReady** condition.
- The virtual machine that was running on the failed node has **runStrategy** set to **Always**.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

### 11.4.2. Deleting nodes from a bare metal cluster

When you delete a node using the CLI, the node object is deleted in Kubernetes, but the pods that exist on the node are not deleted. Any bare pods not backed by a replication controller become inaccessible to OpenShift Container Platform. Pods backed by replication controllers are rescheduled to other available nodes. You must delete local manifest pods.

#### Procedure

Delete a node from an OpenShift Container Platform cluster running on bare metal by completing the following steps:

1. Mark the node as unschedulable:

```
$ oc adm cordon <node_name>
```

2. Drain all pods on the node:

```
$ oc adm drain <node_name> --force=true
```

This step might fail if the node is offline or unresponsive. Even if the node does not respond, it might still be running a workload that writes to shared storage. To avoid data corruption, power down the physical hardware before you proceed.

3. Delete the node from the cluster:

```
$ oc delete node <node_name>
```

Although the node object is now deleted from the cluster, it can still rejoin the cluster after reboot or if the kubelet service is restarted. To permanently delete the node and all its data, you must [decommission the node](#).

4. If you powered down the physical hardware, turn it back on so that the node can rejoin the cluster.

### 11.4.3. Verifying virtual machine failover

After all resources are terminated on the unhealthy node, a new virtual machine instance (VMI) is automatically created on a healthy node for each relocated VM. To confirm that the VMI was created, view all VMIs by using the **oc** CLI.

#### 11.4.3.1. Listing all virtual machine instances using the CLI

You can list all virtual machine instances (VMIs) in your cluster, including standalone VMIs and those owned by virtual machines, by using the **oc** command-line interface (CLI).

#### Procedure

- List all VMIs by running the following command:

```
$ oc get vmis -A
```

# CHAPTER 12. MONITORING

## 12.1. MONITORING OVERVIEW

You can monitor the health of your cluster and virtual machines (VMs) with the following tools:

### Monitoring OpenShift Virtualization VM health status

View the overall health of your OpenShift Virtualization environment in the web console by navigating to the **Home** → **Overview** page in the OpenShift Container Platform web console. The **Status** card displays the overall health of OpenShift Virtualization based on the alerts and conditions.

### OpenShift Container Platform cluster checkup framework

Run automated tests on your cluster with the OpenShift Container Platform cluster checkup framework to check the following conditions:

- Network connectivity and latency between two VMs attached to a secondary network interface
- VM running a Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) workload with zero packet loss
- Cluster storage is optimally configured for OpenShift Virtualization

### Prometheus queries for virtual resources

Query vCPU, network, storage, and guest memory swapping usage and live migration progress.

### VM custom metrics

Configure the **node-exporter** service to expose internal VM metrics and processes.

### VM health checks

Configure readiness, liveness, and guest agent ping probes and a watchdog for VMs.

### Runbooks

Diagnose and resolve issues that trigger OpenShift Virtualization [alerts](#) in the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

## 12.2. OPENSIFT VIRTUALIZATION CLUSTER CHECKUP FRAMEWORK

OpenShift Virtualization includes the following predefined checkups that can be used for cluster maintenance and troubleshooting:

- Latency checkup, which verifies network connectivity and measures latency between two virtual machines (VMs) that are attached to a secondary network interface.



### IMPORTANT

Before you run a latency checkup, you must first [create a bridge interface](#) on the cluster nodes to connect the VM's secondary interface to any interface on the node. If you do not create a bridge interface, the VMs do not start and the job fails.

- Storage checkup, which verifies if the cluster storage is optimally configured for OpenShift Virtualization.

- DPDK checkup, which verifies that a node can run a VM with a Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) workload with zero packet loss.



## IMPORTANT

The OpenShift Virtualization cluster checkup framework is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

### 12.2.1. About the OpenShift Virtualization cluster checkup framework

A *checkup* is an automated test workload that allows you to verify if a specific cluster functionality works as expected. The cluster checkup framework uses native Kubernetes resources to configure and execute the checkup.

By using predefined checkups, cluster administrators and developers can improve cluster maintainability, troubleshoot unexpected behavior, minimize errors, and save time. They can also review the results of the checkup and share them with experts for further analysis. Vendors can write and publish checkups for features or services that they provide and verify that their customer environments are configured correctly.

Running a predefined checkup in an existing namespace involves setting up a service account for the checkup, creating the **Role** and **RoleBinding** objects for the service account, enabling permissions for the checkup, and creating the input config map and the checkup job. You can run a checkup multiple times.



## IMPORTANT

You must always:

- Verify that the checkup image is from a trustworthy source before applying it.
- Review the checkup permissions before creating the **Role** and **RoleBinding** objects.

### 12.2.2. Running checkups by using the web console

Use the following procedures the first time you run checkups by using the web console. For additional checkups, click **Run checkup** on either checkup tab, and select the appropriate checkup from the drop down menu.

#### 12.2.2.1. Running a latency checkup by using the web console

Run a latency checkup to verify network connectivity and measure the latency between two virtual machines attached to a secondary network interface.

##### Prerequisites

- You must add a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** to the namespace.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Checkups** in the web console.
2. Click the **Network latency** tab.
3. Click **Install permissions**.
4. Click **Run checkup**.
5. Enter a name for the checkup in the **Name** field.
6. Select a **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** from the drop-down menu.
7. Optional: Set a duration for the latency sample in the **Sample duration (seconds)** field.
8. Optional: Define a maximum latency time interval by enabling **Set maximum desired latency (milliseconds)** and defining the time interval.
9. Optional: Target specific nodes by enabling **Select nodes** and specifying the **Source node** and **Target node**.
10. Click **Run**.

You can view the status of the latency checkup in the **Checkups** list on the **Latency checkup** tab. Click on the name of the checkup for more details.

### 12.2.2.2. Running a storage checkup by using the web console

Run a storage checkup to validate that storage is working correctly for virtual machines.

## Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **Checkups** in the web console.
2. Click the **Storage** tab.
3. Click **Install permissions**.
4. Click **Run checkup**.
5. Enter a name for the checkup in the **Name** field.
6. Enter a timeout value for the checkup in the **Timeout (minutes)** fields.
7. Click **Run**.

You can view the status of the storage checkup in the **Checkups** list on the **Storage** tab. Click on the name of the checkup for more details.

### 12.2.3. Running checkups by using the command line

Use the following procedures the first time you run checkups by using the command line.

#### 12.2.3.1. Running a latency checkup by using the command line

You use a predefined checkup to verify network connectivity and measure latency between two virtual machines (VMs) that are attached to a secondary network interface. The latency checkup uses the ping utility.

You run a latency checkup by performing the following steps:

1. Create a service account, roles, and rolebindings to provide cluster access permissions to the latency checkup.
2. Create a config map to provide the input to run the checkup and to store the results.
3. Create a job to run the checkup.
4. Review the results in the config map.
5. Optional: To rerun the checkup, delete the existing config map and job and then create a new config map and job.
6. When you are finished, delete the latency checkup resources.

## Prerequisites

- You installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- The cluster has at least two worker nodes.
- You configured a network attachment definition for a namespace.

## Procedure

1. Create a **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest for the latency checkup:

### Example 12.1. Example role manifest file

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
 name: vm-latency-checkup-sa

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-vm-latency-checker
rules:
- apiGroups: ["kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstances"]
 verbs: ["get", "create", "delete"]
- apiGroups: ["subresources.kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstances/console"]
 verbs: ["get"]
- apiGroups: ["k8s.cni.cncf.io"]
 resources: ["network-attachment-definitions"]
 verbs: ["get"]

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
```

```

metadata:
 name: kubevirt-vm-latency-checker
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
 name: vm-latency-checkup-sa
roleRef:
 kind: Role
 name: kubevirt-vm-latency-checker
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
 name: kiagnose-configmap-access
rules:
- apiGroups: [""]
 resources: ["configmaps"]
 verbs: ["get", "update"]

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
 name: kiagnose-configmap-access
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
 name: vm-latency-checkup-sa
roleRef:
 kind: Role
 name: kiagnose-configmap-access
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io

```

2. Apply the **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest:

\$ oc apply -n <target\_namespace> -f <latency\_sa\_roles\_rolebinding>.yaml ①

- ① <**target\_namespace**> is the namespace where the checkup is to be run. This must be an existing namespace where the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object resides.

3. Create a **ConfigMap** manifest that contains the input parameters for the checkup:

#### Example input config map

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup-config
 labels:
 kiagnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-vm-latency
data:
 spec.timeout: 5m
 spec.param.networkAttachmentDefinitionNamespace: <target_namespace>
 spec.param.networkAttachmentDefinitionName: "blue-network" ①
 spec.param.maxDesiredLatencyMilliseconds: "10" ②

```

```
spec.param.sampleDurationSeconds: "5" ③
spec.param.sourceNode: "worker1" ④
spec.param.targetNode: "worker2" ⑤
```

- 1 The name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.
- 2 Optional: The maximum desired latency, in milliseconds, between the virtual machines. If the measured latency exceeds this value, the checkup fails.
- 3 Optional: The duration of the latency check, in seconds.
- 4 Optional: When specified, latency is measured from this node to the target node. If the source node is specified, the **spec.param.targetNode** field cannot be empty.
- 5 Optional: When specified, latency is measured from the source node to this node.

4. Apply the config map manifest in the target namespace:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <latency_config_map>.yaml
```

5. Create a **Job** manifest to run the checkup:

### Example job manifest

```
apiVersion: batch/v1
kind: Job
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup
 labels:
 kibgnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-vm-latency
spec:
 backoffLimit: 0
 template:
 spec:
 serviceAccountName: vm-latency-checkup-sa
 restartPolicy: Never
 containers:
 - name: vm-latency-checkup
 image: registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/vm-network-latency-checkup-
rhel9:v4.16.0
 securityContext:
 allowPrivilegeEscalation: false
 capabilities:
 drop: ["ALL"]
 runAsNonRoot: true
 seccompProfile:
 type: "RuntimeDefault"
 env:
 - name: CONFIGMAP_NAMESPACE
 value: <target_namespace>
 - name: CONFIGMAP_NAME
 value: kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup-config
 - name: POD_UID
```

```

 valueFrom:
 fieldRef:
 fieldPath: metadata.uid

```

6. Apply the **Job** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <latency_job>.yaml
```

7. Wait for the job to complete:

```
$ oc wait job kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup -n <target_namespace> --for condition=complete - -timeout 6m
```

8. Review the results of the latency checkup by running the following command. If the maximum measured latency is greater than the value of the **spec.param.maxDesiredLatencyMilliseconds** attribute, the checkup fails and returns an error.

```
$ oc get configmap kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup-config -n <target_namespace> -o yaml
```

### Example output config map (success)

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup-config
 namespace: <target_namespace>
 labels:
 kiagnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-vm-latency
data:
 spec.timeout: 5m
 spec.param.networkAttachmentDefinitionNamespace: <target_namespace>
 spec.param.networkAttachmentDefinitionName: "blue-network"
 spec.param.maxDesiredLatencyMilliseconds: "10"
 spec.param.sampleDurationSeconds: "5"
 spec.param.sourceNode: "worker1"
 spec.param.targetNode: "worker2"
 status.succeeded: "true"
 status.failureReason: ""
 status.completionTimestamp: "2022-01-01T09:00:00Z"
 status.startTimestamp: "2022-01-01T09:00:07Z"
 status.result.avgLatencyNanoSec: "177000"
 status.result.maxLatencyNanoSec: "244000" ①
 status.result.measurementDurationSec: "5"
 status.result.minLatencyNanoSec: "135000"
 status.result.sourceNode: "worker1"
 status.result.targetNode: "worker2"

```

① The maximum measured latency in nanoseconds.

9. Optional: To view the detailed job log in case of checkup failure, use the following command:

```
$ oc logs job.batch/kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup -n <target_namespace>
```

10. Delete the job and config map that you previously created by running the following commands:

```
$ oc delete job -n <target_namespace> kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup
$ oc delete config-map -n <target_namespace> kubevirt-vm-latency-checkup-config
```

11. Optional: If you do not plan to run another checkup, delete the roles manifest:

```
$ oc delete -f <latency_sa_roles_rolebinding>.yaml
```

### 12.2.3.2. Running a storage checkup by using the command line

Use a predefined checkup to verify that the OpenShift Container Platform cluster storage is configured optimally to run OpenShift Virtualization workloads.

#### Prerequisites

- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- The cluster administrator has created the required **cluster-reader** permissions for the storage checkup service account and namespace, such as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: ClusterRoleBinding
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-storage-checkup-clustereader
roleRef:
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
 kind: ClusterRole
 name: cluster-reader
subjects:
- kind: ServiceAccount
 name: storage-checkup-sa
 namespace: <target_namespace> ①
```

- ① The namespace where the checkup is to be run.

#### Procedure

1. Create a **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest file for the storage checkup:

##### Example 12.2. Example service account, role, and rolebinding manifest

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
 name: storage-checkup-sa

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
 name: storage-checkup-role
```

```

rules:
 - apiGroups: [""]
 resources: ["configmaps"]
 verbs: ["get", "update"]
 - apiGroups: ["kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachines"]
 verbs: ["create", "delete"]
 - apiGroups: ["kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstances"]
 verbs: ["get"]
 - apiGroups: ["subresources.kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstances/addvolume",
 "virtualmachineinstances/removevolume"]
 verbs: ["update"]
 - apiGroups: ["kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstancemigrations"]
 verbs: ["create"]
 - apiGroups: ["cdi.kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["datavolumes"]
 verbs: ["create", "delete"]
 - apiGroups: [""]
 resources: ["persistentvolumeclaims"]
 verbs: ["delete"]

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
 name: storage-checkup-role
subjects:
 - kind: ServiceAccount
 name: storage-checkup-sa
roleRef:
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
 kind: Role
 name: storage-checkup-role

```

2. Apply the **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest in the target namespace:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <storage_sa_roles_rolebinding>.yaml
```

3. Create a **ConfigMap** and **Job** manifest file. The config map contains the input parameters for the checkup job.

#### Example input config map and job manifest

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
 name: storage-checkup-config
 namespace: $CHECKUP_NAMESPACE
data:
 spec.timeout: 10m
 spec.param.storageClass: ocs-storagecluster-ceph-rbd-virtualization

```

```

spec.param.vmiTimeout: 3m

apiVersion: batch/v1
kind: Job
metadata:
 name: storage-checkup
 namespace: $CHECKUP_NAMESPACE
spec:
 backoffLimit: 0
 template:
 spec:
 serviceAccount: storage-checkup-sa
 restartPolicy: Never
 containers:
 - name: storage-checkup
 image: quay.io/kiagnose/kubevirt-storage-checkup:main
 imagePullPolicy: Always
 env:
 - name: CONFIGMAP_NAMESPACE
 value: $CHECKUP_NAMESPACE
 - name: CONFIGMAP_NAME
 value: storage-checkup-config

```

4. Apply the **ConfigMap** and **Job** manifest file in the target namespace to run the checkup:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <storage_configmap_job>.yaml
```

5. Wait for the job to complete:

```
$ oc wait job storage-checkup -n <target_namespace> --for condition=complete --timeout 10m
```

6. Review the results of the checkup by running the following command:

```
$ oc get configmap storage-checkup-config -n <target_namespace> -o yaml
```

### Example output config map (success)

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
 name: storage-checkup-config
 labels:
 kiagnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-storage
data:
 spec.timeout: 10m
 status.succeeded: "true" ①
 status.failureReason: "" ②
 status.startTimestamp: "2023-07-31T13:14:38Z" ③
 status.completionTimestamp: "2023-07-31T13:19:41Z" ④
 status.result.cnvVersion: 4.16.2 ⑤
 status.result.defaultStorageClass: trident-nfs ⑥
 status.result.goldenImagesNoDataSource: <data_import_cron_list> ⑦

```

```

status.result.goldenImagesNotUpToDate: <data_import_cron_list> 8
status.result.ocpVersion: 4.16.0 9
status.result.pvcBound: "true" 10
status.result.storageProfileMissingVolumeSnapshotClass: <storage_class_list> 11
status.result.storageProfilesWithEmptyClaimPropertySets: <storage_profile_list> 12
status.result.storageProfilesWithSmartClone: <storage_profile_list> 13
status.result.storageProfilesWithSpecClaimPropertySets: <storage_profile_list> 14
status.result.storageProfilesWithRWX: |-
 ocs-storagecluster-ceph-rbd
 ocs-storagecluster-ceph-rbd-virtualization
 ocs-storagecluster-cephfs
 trident-iscsi
 trident-minio
 trident-nfs
 windows-vms
status.result.vmBootFromGoldenImage: VMI "vmi-under-test-dhkb8" successfully booted
status.result.vmHotplugVolume: |-
 VMI "vmi-under-test-dhkb8" hotplug volume ready
 VMI "vmi-under-test-dhkb8" hotplug volume removed
status.result.vmLiveMigration: VMI "vmi-under-test-dhkb8" migration completed
status.result.vmVolumeClone: 'DV cloneType: "csi-clone"'
status.result.vmsWithNonVirtRbdStorageClass: <vm_list> 15
status.result.vmsWithUnsetEfsStorageClass: <vm_list> 16

```

- 1 Specifies if the checkup is successful (**true**) or not (**false**).
- 2 The reason for failure if the checkup fails.
- 3 The time when the checkup started, in RFC 3339 time format.
- 4 The time when the checkup has completed, in RFC 3339 time format.
- 5 The OpenShift Virtualization version.
- 6 Specifies if there is a default storage class.
- 7 The list of golden images whose data source is not ready.
- 8 The list of golden images whose data import cron is not up-to-date.
- 9 The OpenShift Container Platform version.
- 10 Specifies if a PVC of 10Mi has been created and bound by the provisioner.
- 11 The list of storage profiles using snapshot-based clone but missing VolumeSnapshotClass.
- 12 The list of storage profiles with unknown provisioners.
- 13 The list of storage profiles with smart clone support (CSI/snapshot).
- 14 The list of storage profiles spec-overridden claimPropertySets.
- 15 The list of virtual machines that use the Ceph RBD storage class when the virtualization storage class exists.

- 16** The list of virtual machines that use an Elastic File Store (EFS) storage class where the GID and UID are not set in the storage class.

7. Delete the job and config map that you previously created by running the following commands:

```
$ oc delete job -n <target_namespace> storage-checkup
```

```
$ oc delete config-map -n <target_namespace> storage-checkup-config
```

8. Optional: If you do not plan to run another checkup, delete the **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest:

```
$ oc delete -f <storage_sa_roles_rolebinding>.yaml
```

### 12.2.3.3. Running a DPDK checkup by using the command line

Use a predefined checkup to verify that your OpenShift Container Platform cluster node can run a virtual machine (VM) with a Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) workload with zero packet loss. The DPDK checkup runs traffic between a traffic generator and a VM running a test DPDK application.

You run a DPDK checkup by performing the following steps:

1. Create a service account, role, and role bindings for the DPDK checkup.
2. Create a config map to provide the input to run the checkup and to store the results.
3. Create a job to run the checkup.
4. Review the results in the config map.
5. Optional: To rerun the checkup, delete the existing config map and job and then create a new config map and job.
6. When you are finished, delete the DPDK checkup resources.

#### Prerequisites

- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- The cluster is configured to run DPDK applications.
- The project is configured to run DPDK applications.

#### Procedure

1. Create a **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest for the DPDK checkup:

##### Example 12.3. Example service account, role, and rolebinding manifest file

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ServiceAccount
metadata:
 name: dpdk-checkup-sa
```

```

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
 name: kiagnose-configmap-access
rules:
 - apiGroups: [""]
 resources: ["configmaps"]
 verbs: ["get", "update"]

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
 name: kiagnose-configmap-access
subjects:
 - kind: ServiceAccount
 name: dpdk-checkup-sa
roleRef:
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
 kind: Role
 name: kiagnose-configmap-access

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: Role
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-dpdk-checker
rules:
 - apiGroups: ["kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstances"]
 verbs: ["create", "get", "delete"]
 - apiGroups: ["subresources.kubevirt.io"]
 resources: ["virtualmachineinstances/console"]
 verbs: ["get"]
 - apiGroups: [""]
 resources: ["configmaps"]
 verbs: ["create", "delete"]

apiVersion: rbac.authorization.k8s.io/v1
kind: RoleBinding
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-dpdk-checker
subjects:
 - kind: ServiceAccount
 name: dpdk-checkup-sa
roleRef:
 apiGroup: rbac.authorization.k8s.io
 kind: Role
 name: kubevirt-dpdk-checker

```

2. Apply the **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <dpdk_sa_roles_rolebinding>.yaml
```

3. Create a **ConfigMap** manifest that contains the input parameters for the checkup:

## Example input config map

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
 name: dpdk-checkup-config
 labels:
 kiagnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-dpdk
data:
 spec.timeout: 10m
 spec.param.networkAttachmentDefinitionName: <network_name> ①
 spec.param.trafficGenContainerDiskImage: "quay.io/kiagnose/kubevirt-dpdk-checkup-traffic-
gen:v0.4.0" ②
 spec.param.vmUnderTestContainerDiskImage: "quay.io/kiagnose/kubevirt-dpdk-checkup-
vm:v0.4.0" ③

```

- ① The name of the **NetworkAttachmentDefinition** object.
- ② The container disk image for the traffic generator. In this example, the image is pulled from the upstream Project Quay Container Registry.
- ③ The container disk image for the VM under test. In this example, the image is pulled from the upstream Project Quay Container Registry.

4. Apply the **ConfigMap** manifest in the target namespace:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <dpdk_config_map>.yaml
```

5. Create a **Job** manifest to run the checkup:

## Example job manifest

```

apiVersion: batch/v1
kind: Job
metadata:
 name: dpdk-checkup
 labels:
 kiagnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-dpdk
spec:
 backoffLimit: 0
 template:
 spec:
 serviceAccountName: dpdk-checkup-sa
 restartPolicy: Never
 containers:
 - name: dpdk-checkup
 image: registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/kubevirt-dpdk-checkup-
rhel9:v4.16.0
 imagePullPolicy: Always
 securityContext:
 allowPrivilegeEscalation: false
 capabilities:
 drop: ["ALL"]
 runAsNonRoot: true

```

```

 seccompProfile:
 type: "RuntimeDefault"
 env:
 - name: CONFIGMAP_NAMESPACE
 value: <target-namespace>
 - name: CONFIGMAP_NAME
 value: dpdk-checkup-config
 - name: POD_UID
 valueFrom:
 fieldRef:
 fieldPath: metadata.uid

```

6. Apply the **Job** manifest:

```
$ oc apply -n <target_namespace> -f <dpdk_job>.yaml
```

7. Wait for the job to complete:

```
$ oc wait job dpdk-checkup -n <target_namespace> --for condition=complete --timeout 10m
```

8. Review the results of the checkup by running the following command:

```
$ oc get configmap dpdk-checkup-config -n <target_namespace> -o yaml
```

#### Example output config map (success)

```

apiVersion: v1
kind: ConfigMap
metadata:
 name: dpdk-checkup-config
 labels:
 kiagnose/checkup-type: kubevirt-dpdk
data:
 spec.timeout: 10m
 spec.param.NetworkAttachmentDefinitionName: "dpdk-network-1"
 spec.param.trafficGenContainerDiskImage: "quay.io/kiagnose/kubevirt-dpdk-checkup-traffic-gen:v0.4.0"
 spec.param.vmUnderTestContainerDiskImage: "quay.io/kiagnose/kubevirt-dpdk-checkup-vm:v0.4.0"
 status.succeeded: "true" ①
 status.failureReason: "" ②
 status.startTimestamp: "2023-07-31T13:14:38Z" ③
 status.completionTimestamp: "2023-07-31T13:19:41Z" ④
 status.result.trafficGenSentPackets: "4800000000" ⑤
 status.result.trafficGenOutputErrorPackets: "0" ⑥
 status.result.trafficGenInputErrorPackets: "0" ⑦
 status.result.trafficGenActualNodeName: worker-dpdk1 ⑧
 status.result.vmUnderTestActualNodeName: worker-dpdk2 ⑨
 status.result.vmUnderTestReceivedPackets: "4800000000" ⑩
 status.result.vmUnderTestRxDroppedPackets: "0" ⑪
 status.result.vmUnderTestTxDroppedPackets: "0" ⑫

```

- 1 Specifies if the checkup is successful (**true**) or not (**false**).
- 2 The reason for failure if the checkup fails.
- 3 The time when the checkup started, in RFC 3339 time format.
- 4 The time when the checkup has completed, in RFC 3339 time format.
- 5 The number of packets sent from the traffic generator.
- 6 The number of error packets sent from the traffic generator.
- 7 The number of error packets received by the traffic generator.
- 8 The node on which the traffic generator VM was scheduled.
- 9 The node on which the VM under test was scheduled.
- 10 The number of packets received on the VM under test.
- 11 The ingress traffic packets that were dropped by the DPDK application.
- 12 The egress traffic packets that were dropped from the DPDK application.

9. Delete the job and config map that you previously created by running the following commands:

```
$ oc delete job -n <target_namespace> dpdk-checkup
$ oc delete config-map -n <target_namespace> dpdk-checkup-config
```

10. Optional: If you do not plan to run another checkup, delete the **ServiceAccount**, **Role**, and **RoleBinding** manifest:

```
$ oc delete -f <dpdk_sa_roles_rolebinding>.yaml
```

#### 12.2.3.3.1. DPDK checkup config map parameters

The following table shows the mandatory and optional parameters that you can set in the **data** stanza of the input **ConfigMap** manifest when you run a cluster DPDK readiness checkup:

**Table 12.1. DPDK checkup config map input parameters**

| Parameter                                         | Description                                                                             | Is Mandatory |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>spec.timeout</b>                               | The time, in minutes, before the checkup fails.                                         | True         |
| <b>spec.param.networkAttachmentDefinitionName</b> | The name of the <b>NetworkAttachmentDefinition</b> object of the SR-IOV NICs connected. | True         |

| Parameter                                       | Description                                                                                                         | Is Mandatory |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>spec.param.trafficGenContainerDiskImage</b>  | The container disk image for the traffic generator.                                                                 | True         |
| <b>spec.param.trafficGenTargetNodeName</b>      | The node on which the traffic generator VM is to be scheduled. The node should be configured to allow DPDK traffic. | False        |
| <b>spec.param.trafficGenPacketsPerSecond</b>    | The number of packets per second, in kilo (k) or million(m). The default value is 8m.                               | False        |
| <b>spec.param.vmUnderTestContainerDiskImage</b> | The container disk image for the VM under test.                                                                     | True         |
| <b>spec.param.vmUnderTestTargetNodeName</b>     | The node on which the VM under test is to be scheduled. The node should be configured to allow DPDK traffic.        | False        |
| <b>spec.param.testDuration</b>                  | The duration, in minutes, for which the traffic generator runs. The default value is 5 minutes.                     | False        |
| <b>spec.param.portBandwidthGbps</b>             | The maximum bandwidth of the SR-IOV NIC. The default value is 10Gbps.                                               | False        |
| <b>spec.param.verbose</b>                       | When set to <b>true</b> , it increases the verbosity of the checkup log. The default value is <b>false</b> .        | False        |

#### 12.2.3.3.2. Building a container disk image for RHEL virtual machines

You can build a custom Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 8 OS image in **qcow2** format and use it to create a container disk image. You can store the container disk image in a registry that is accessible from your cluster and specify the image location in the **spec.param.vmContainerDiskImage** attribute of the DPDK checkup config map.

To build a container disk image, you must create an image builder virtual machine (VM). The *image builder* VM is a RHEL 8 VM that can be used to build custom RHEL images.

#### Prerequisites

- The image builder VM must run RHEL 8.7 and must have a minimum of 2 CPU cores, 4 GiB RAM, and 20 GB of free space in the **/var** directory.
- You have installed the image builder tool and its CLI (**composer-cli**) on the VM.
- You have installed the **virt-customize** tool:

```
dnf install libguestfs-tools
```

- You have installed the Podman CLI tool ([podman](#)).

## Procedure

1. Verify that you can build a RHEL 8.7 image:

```
composer-cli distros list
```



### NOTE

To run the **composer-cli** commands as non-root, add your user to the **weldr** or **root** groups:

```
usermod -a -G weldr user
```

```
$ newgrp weldr
```

2. Enter the following command to create an image blueprint file in TOML format that contains the packages to be installed, kernel customizations, and the services to be disabled during boot time:

```
$ cat << EOF > dpdk-vm.toml
name = "dpdk_image"
description = "Image to use with the DPDK checkup"
version = "0.0.1"
distro = "rhel-87"

[[customizations.user]]
name = "root"
password = "redhat"

[[packages]]
name = "dpdk"

[[packages]]
name = "dpdk-tools"

[[packages]]
name = "driverctl"

[[packages]]
name = "tuned-profiles-cpu-partitioning"

[customizations.kernel]
append = "default_hugepagesz=1GB hugepagesz=1G hugepages=1"

[customizations.services]
disabled = ["NetworkManager-wait-online", "sshd"]
EOF
```

- Push the blueprint file to the image builder tool by running the following command:

```
composer-cli blueprints push dpdk-vm.toml
```

- Generate the system image by specifying the blueprint name and output file format. The Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) of the image is displayed when you start the compose process.

```
composer-cli compose start dpdk_image qcow2
```

- Wait for the compose process to complete. The compose status must show **FINISHED** before you can continue to the next step.

```
composer-cli compose status
```

- Enter the following command to download the **qcow2** image file by specifying its UUID:

```
composer-cli compose image <UUID>
```

- Create the customization scripts by running the following commands:

```
$ cat <<EOF >customize-vm
#!/bin/bash

Setup hugepages mount
mkdir -p /mnt/huge
echo "hugetlbfs /mnt/huge hugetlbfs defaults,pagesize=1GB 0 0" >> /etc/fstab

Create vfio-noiommu.conf
echo "options vfio enable_unsafe_noiommu_mode=1" > /etc/modprobe.d/vfio-noiommu.conf

Enable guest-exec,guest-exec-status on the qemu-guest-agent configuration
sed -i '/^BLACKLIST_RPC=/ { s/guest-exec-status//; s/guest-exec//g }' /etc/sysconfig/qemu-ga
sed -i '/^BLACKLIST_RPC=/ { s/,+/,/g; s/^,|,$//g }' /etc/sysconfig/qemu-ga
EOF
```

- Use the **virt-customize** tool to customize the image generated by the image builder tool:

```
$ virt-customize -a <UUID>-disk.qcow2 --run=customize-vm --selinux-relabel
```

- To create a Dockerfile that contains all the commands to build the container disk image, enter the following command:

```
$ cat << EOF > Dockerfile
FROM scratch
COPY --chown=107:107 <UUID>-disk.qcow2 /disk/
EOF
```

where:

**<UUID>-disk.qcow2**

Specifies the name of the custom image in **qcow2** format.

10. Build and tag the container by running the following command:

```
$ podman build . -t dpdk-rhel:latest
```

11. Push the container disk image to a registry that is accessible from your cluster by running the following command:

```
$ podman push dpdk-rhel:latest
```

12. Provide a link to the container disk image in the **spec.param.vmUnderTestContainerDiskImage** attribute in the DPDK checkup config map.

#### 12.2.4. Additional resources

- [Attaching a virtual machine to multiple networks](#)
- [Using a virtual function in DPDK mode with an Intel NIC](#)
- [Using SR-IOV and the Node Tuning Operator to achieve a DPDK line rate](#)
- [Installing image builder](#)
- [How to register and subscribe a RHEL system to the Red Hat Customer Portal using Red Hat Subscription Manager](#)

### 12.3. PROMETHEUS QUERIES FOR VIRTUAL RESOURCES

OpenShift Virtualization provides metrics that you can use to monitor the consumption of cluster infrastructure resources, including vCPU, network, storage, and guest memory swapping. You can also use metrics to query live migration status.

#### 12.3.1. Prerequisites

- To use the vCPU metric, the **schedstats=enable** kernel argument must be applied to the **MachineConfig** object. This kernel argument enables scheduler statistics used for debugging and performance tuning and adds a minor additional load to the scheduler. For more information, see [Adding kernel arguments to nodes](#).
- For guest memory swapping queries to return data, memory swapping must be enabled on the virtual guests.

#### 12.3.2. Querying metrics

The OpenShift Container Platform monitoring dashboard enables you to run Prometheus Query Language (PromQL) queries to examine metrics visualized on a plot. This functionality provides information about the state of a cluster and any user-defined workloads that you are monitoring.

As a cluster administrator, you can query metrics for all core OpenShift Container Platform and user-defined projects.

As a developer, you must specify a project name when querying metrics. You must have the required privileges to view metrics for the selected project.

##### 12.3.2.1. Querying metrics for all projects as a cluster administrator

As a cluster administrator or as a user with view permissions for all projects, you can access metrics for all default OpenShift Container Platform and user-defined projects in the Metrics UI.

## Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** cluster role or with view permissions for all projects.
- You have installed the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

## Procedure

1. From the **Administrator** perspective in the OpenShift Container Platform web console, select **Observe** → **Metrics**.
2. To add one or more queries, do any of the following:

| Option                          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Create a custom query.          | Add your Prometheus Query Language (PromQL) query to the <b>Expression</b> field.<br><br>As you type a PromQL expression, autocomplete suggestions appear in a drop-down list. These suggestions include functions, metrics, labels, and time tokens. You can use the keyboard arrows to select one of these suggested items and then press Enter to add the item to your expression. You can also move your mouse pointer over a suggested item to view a brief description of that item. |
| Add multiple queries.           | Select <b>Add query</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Duplicate an existing query.    | Select the Options menu  next to the query, then choose <b>Duplicate query</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Disable a query from being run. | Select the Options menu  next to the query and choose <b>Disable query</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

3. To run queries that you created, select **Run queries**. The metrics from the queries are visualized on the plot. If a query is invalid, the UI shows an error message.



### NOTE

Queries that operate on large amounts of data might time out or overload the browser when drawing time series graphs. To avoid this, select **Hide graph** and calibrate your query using only the metrics table. Then, after finding a feasible query, enable the plot to draw the graphs.

**NOTE**

By default, the query table shows an expanded view that lists every metric and its current value. You can select to minimize the expanded view for a query.

4. Optional: The page URL now contains the queries you ran. To use this set of queries again in the future, save this URL.
5. Explore the visualized metrics. Initially, all metrics from all enabled queries are shown on the plot. You can select which metrics are shown by doing any of the following:

| Option                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hide all metrics from a query.                               | Click the Options menu  for the query and click <b>Hide all series</b> .                                                                                                                                                        |
| Hide a specific metric.                                      | Go to the query table and click the colored square near the metric name.                                                                                                                                                        |
| Zoom into the plot and change the time range.                | <p>Either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visually select the time range by clicking and dragging on the plot horizontally.</li> <li>• Use the menu in the left upper corner to select the time range.</li> </ul> |
| Reset the time range.                                        | Select <b>Reset zoom</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Display outputs for all queries at a specific point in time. | Hold the mouse cursor on the plot at that point. The query outputs will appear in a pop-up box.                                                                                                                                 |
| Hide the plot.                                               | Select <b>Hide graph</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

### 12.3.2.2. Querying metrics for user-defined projects as a developer

You can access metrics for a user-defined project as a developer or as a user with view permissions for the project.

In the **Developer** perspective, the Metrics UI includes some predefined CPU, memory, bandwidth, and network packet queries for the selected project. You can also run custom Prometheus Query Language (PromQL) queries for CPU, memory, bandwidth, network packet and application metrics for the project.

**NOTE**

Developers can only use the **Developer** perspective and not the **Administrator** perspective. As a developer, you can only query metrics for one project at a time.

### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a developer or as a user with view permissions for the project that you are viewing metrics for.
- You have enabled monitoring for user-defined projects.
- You have deployed a service in a user-defined project.
- You have created a **ServiceMonitor** custom resource definition (CRD) for the service to define how the service is monitored.

### Procedure

1. From the **Developer** perspective in the OpenShift Container Platform web console, select **Observe** → **Metrics**.
2. Select the project that you want to view metrics for in the **Project:** list.
3. Select a query from the **Select query** list, or create a custom PromQL query based on the selected query by selecting **Show PromQL**. The metrics from the queries are visualized on the plot.



#### NOTE

In the Developer perspective, you can only run one query at a time.

4. Explore the visualized metrics by doing any of the following:

| Option                                                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Zoom into the plot and change the time range.                | <p>Either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Visually select the time range by clicking and dragging on the plot horizontally.</li> <li>• Use the menu in the left upper corner to select the time range.</li> </ul> |
| Reset the time range.                                        | Select <b>Reset zoom</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Display outputs for all queries at a specific point in time. | Hold the mouse cursor on the plot at that point. The query outputs appear in a pop-up box.                                                                                                                                      |

### 12.3.3. Virtualization metrics

The following metric descriptions include example Prometheus Query Language (PromQL) queries. These metrics are not an API and might change between versions.



#### NOTE

The following examples use **topk** queries that specify a time period. If virtual machines are deleted during that time period, they can still appear in the query output.

#### 12.3.3.1. vCPU metrics

The following query can identify virtual machines that are waiting for Input/Output (I/O):

### **kubevirt\_vmi\_vcpu\_wait\_seconds\_total**

Returns the wait time (in seconds) for a virtual machine's vCPU. Type: Counter.

A value above '0' means that the vCPU wants to run, but the host scheduler cannot run it yet. This inability to run indicates that there is an issue with I/O.



#### NOTE

To query the vCPU metric, the **schedstats=enable** kernel argument must first be applied to the **MachineConfig** object. This kernel argument enables scheduler statistics used for debugging and performance tuning and adds a minor additional load to the scheduler.

#### Example vCPU wait time query

```
topk(3, sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_vcpu_wait_seconds_total[6m]))) > 0 ①
```

- ① This query returns the top 3 VMs waiting for I/O at every given moment over a six-minute time period.

#### 12.3.3.2. Network metrics

The following queries can identify virtual machines that are saturating the network:

### **kubevirt\_vmi\_network\_receive\_bytes\_total**

Returns the total amount of traffic received (in bytes) on the virtual machine's network. Type: Counter.

### **kubevirt\_vmi\_network\_transmit\_bytes\_total**

Returns the total amount of traffic transmitted (in bytes) on the virtual machine's network. Type: Counter.

#### Example network traffic query

```
topk(3, sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_network_receive_bytes_total[6m])) + sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_network_transmit_bytes_total[6m]))) > 0 ①
```

- ① This query returns the top 3 VMs transmitting the most network traffic at every given moment over a six-minute time period.

#### 12.3.3.3. Storage metrics

##### 12.3.3.3.1. Storage-related traffic

The following queries can identify VMs that are writing large amounts of data:

### **kubevirt\_vmi\_storage\_read\_traffic\_bytes\_total**

Returns the total amount (in bytes) of the virtual machine's storage-related traffic. Type: Counter.

### **kubevirt\_vmi\_storage\_write\_traffic\_bytes\_total**

Returns the total amount of storage writes (in bytes) of the virtual machine's storage-related traffic. Type: Counter.

### Example storage-related traffic query

```
topk(3, sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_storage_read_traffic_bytes_total[6m])) + sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_storage_write_traffic_bytes_total[6m]))) > 0 ①
```

- ① This query returns the top 3 VMs performing the most storage traffic at every given moment over a six-minute time period.

#### 12.3.3.2. Storage snapshot data

##### **kubevirt\_vmsnapshot\_disks\_restored\_from\_source**

Returns the total number of virtual machine disks restored from the source virtual machine. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmsnapshot\_disks\_restored\_from\_source\_bytes**

Returns the amount of space in bytes restored from the source virtual machine. Type: Gauge.

### Examples of storage snapshot data queries

```
kubevirt_vmsnapshot_disks_restored_from_source{vm_name="simple-vm", vm_namespace="default"} ①
```

- ① This query returns the total number of virtual machine disks restored from the source virtual machine.

```
kubevirt_vmsnapshot_disks_restored_from_source_bytes{vm_name="simple-vm", vm_namespace="default"} ①
```

- ① This query returns the amount of space in bytes restored from the source virtual machine.

#### 12.3.3.3. I/O performance

The following queries can determine the I/O performance of storage devices:

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_storage\_iops\_read\_total**

Returns the amount of write I/O operations the virtual machine is performing per second. Type: Counter.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_storage\_iops\_write\_total**

Returns the amount of read I/O operations the virtual machine is performing per second. Type: Counter.

### Example I/O performance query

```
topk(3, sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_storage_iops_read_total[6m])) + sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_storage_iops_write_total[6m]))) > 0 ①
```

- 1** This query returns the top 3 VMs performing the most I/O operations per second at every given moment over a six-minute time period.

#### 12.3.3.4. Guest memory swapping metrics

The following queries can identify which swap-enabled guests are performing the most memory swapping:

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_memory\_swap\_in\_traffic\_bytes**

Returns the total amount (in bytes) of memory the virtual guest is swapping in. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_memory\_swap\_out\_traffic\_bytes**

Returns the total amount (in bytes) of memory the virtual guest is swapping out. Type: Gauge.

#### Example memory swapping query

```
topk(3, sum by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_memory_swap_in_traffic_bytes[6m])) + sum
by (name, namespace) (rate(kubevirt_vmi_memory_swap_out_traffic_bytes[6m]))) > 0 1
```

- 1** This query returns the top 3 VMs where the guest is performing the most memory swapping at every given moment over a six-minute time period.



#### NOTE

Memory swapping indicates that the virtual machine is under memory pressure. Increasing the memory allocation of the virtual machine can mitigate this issue.

#### 12.3.3.5. Live migration metrics

The following metrics can be queried to show live migration status:

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migration\_data\_processed\_bytes**

The amount of guest operating system data that has migrated to the new virtual machine (VM). Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migration\_data\_remaining\_bytes**

The amount of guest operating system data that remains to be migrated. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migration\_memory\_transfer\_rate\_bytes**

The rate at which memory is becoming dirty in the guest operating system. Dirty memory is data that has been changed but not yet written to disk. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migrations\_in\_pending\_phase**

The number of pending migrations. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migrations\_in\_scheduling\_phase**

The number of scheduling migrations. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migrations\_in\_running\_phase**

The number of running migrations. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migration\_succeeded**

The number of successfully completed migrations. Type: Gauge.

##### **kubevirt\_vmi\_migration\_failed**

The number of failed migrations. Type: Gauge.

#### 12.3.4. Additional resources

- [Monitoring overview](#)
- [Querying Prometheus](#)
- [Prometheus query examples](#)

## 12.4. EXPOSING CUSTOM METRICS FOR VIRTUAL MACHINES

OpenShift Container Platform includes a preconfigured, preinstalled, and self-updating monitoring stack that provides monitoring for core platform components. This monitoring stack is based on the Prometheus monitoring system. Prometheus is a time-series database and a rule evaluation engine for metrics.

In addition to using the OpenShift Container Platform monitoring stack, you can enable monitoring for user-defined projects by using the CLI and query custom metrics that are exposed for virtual machines through the **node-exporter** service.

#### 12.4.1. Configuring the node exporter service

The node-exporter agent is deployed on every virtual machine in the cluster from which you want to collect metrics. Configure the node-exporter agent as a service to expose internal metrics and processes that are associated with virtual machines.

##### Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift Container Platform CLI **oc**.
- Log in to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.
- Create the **cluster-monitoring-config** ConfigMap object in the **openshift-monitoring** project.
- Configure the **user-workload-monitoring-config** ConfigMap object in the **openshift-user-workload-monitoring** project by setting **enableUserWorkload** to **true**.

##### Procedure

- 1 Create the **Service** YAML file. In the following example, the file is called **node-exporter-service.yaml**.

```
kind: Service
apiVersion: v1
metadata:
 name: node-exporter-service ①
 namespace: dynamation ②
 labels:
 servicetype: metrics ③
spec:
 ports:
 - name: exmet ④
 protocol: TCP
```

```

port: 9100 5
targetPort: 9100 6
type: ClusterIP
selector:
 monitor: metrics 7

```

- 1** The node-exporter service that exposes the metrics from the virtual machines.
- 2** The namespace where the service is created.
- 3** The label for the service. The **ServiceMonitor** uses this label to match this service.
- 4** The name given to the port that exposes metrics on port 9100 for the **ClusterIP** service.
- 5** The target port used by **node-exporter-service** to listen for requests.
- 6** The TCP port number of the virtual machine that is configured with the **monitor** label.
- 7** The label used to match the virtual machine's pods. In this example, any virtual machine's pod with the label **monitor** and a value of **metrics** will be matched.

## 2. Create the node-exporter service:

```
$ oc create -f node-exporter-service.yaml
```

### 12.4.2. Configuring a virtual machine with the node exporter service

Download the **node-exporter** file on to the virtual machine. Then, create a **systemd** service that runs the node-exporter service when the virtual machine boots.

#### Prerequisites

- The pods for the component are running in the **openshift-user-workload-monitoring** project.
- Grant the **monitoring-edit** role to users who need to monitor this user-defined project.

#### Procedure

1. Log on to the virtual machine.
2. Download the **node-exporter** file on to the virtual machine by using the directory path that applies to the version of **node-exporter** file.

```
$ wget
https://github.com/prometheus/node_exporter/releases/download/v1.3.1/node_exporter-1.3.1.linux-amd64.tar.gz
```

3. Extract the executable and place it in the **/usr/bin** directory.

```
$ sudo tar xvf node_exporter-1.3.1.linux-amd64.tar.gz \
--directory /usr/bin --strip 1 "*/node_exporter"
```

- Create a **node\_exporter.service** file in this directory path: **/etc/systemd/system**. This **systemd** service file runs the node-exporter service when the virtual machine reboots.

```
[Unit]
Description=Prometheus Metrics Exporter
After=network.target
StartLimitIntervalSec=0

[Service]
Type=simple
Restart=always
RestartSec=1
User=root
ExecStart=/usr/bin/node_exporter

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

- Enable and start the **systemd** service.

```
$ sudo systemctl enable node_exporter.service
$ sudo systemctl start node_exporter.service
```

## Verification

- Verify that the node-exporter agent is reporting metrics from the virtual machine.

```
$ curl http://localhost:9100/metrics
```

## Example output

```
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0"} 1.5244e-05
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0.25"} 3.0449e-05
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0.5"} 3.7913e-05
```

### 12.4.3. Creating a custom monitoring label for virtual machines

To enable queries to multiple virtual machines from a single service, add a custom label in the virtual machine's YAML file.

## Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift Container Platform CLI **oc**.
- Log in as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges.
- Access to the web console for stop and restart a virtual machine.

## Procedure

- Edit the **template** spec of your virtual machine configuration file. In this example, the label **monitor** has the value **metrics**.

```

spec:
template:
 metadata:
 labels:
 monitor: metrics

```

- Stop and restart the virtual machine to create a new pod with the label name given to the **monitor** label.

#### 12.4.3.1. Querying the node-exporter service for metrics

Metrics are exposed for virtual machines through an HTTP service endpoint under the **/metrics** canonical name. When you query for metrics, Prometheus directly scrapes the metrics from the metrics endpoint exposed by the virtual machines and presents these metrics for viewing.

#### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges or the **monitoring-edit** role.
- You have enabled monitoring for the user-defined project by configuring the node-exporter service.

#### Procedure

- Obtain the HTTP service endpoint by specifying the namespace for the service:

```
$ oc get service -n <namespace> <node-exporter-service>
```

- To list all available metrics for the node-exporter service, query the **metrics** resource.

```
$ curl http://<172.30.226.162:9100>/metrics | grep -vE "^#|^$"
```

#### Example output

```

node_arp_entries{device="eth0"} 1
node_boot_time_seconds 1.643153218e+09
node_context_switches_total 4.4938158e+07
node_cooling_device_cur_state{name="0",type="Processor"} 0
node_cooling_device_max_state{name="0",type="Processor"} 0
node_cpu_guest_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="nice"} 0
node_cpu_guest_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="user"} 0
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="idle"} 1.10586485e+06
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="iowait"} 37.61
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="irq"} 233.91
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="nice"} 551.47
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="softirq"} 87.3
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="steal"} 86.12
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="system"} 464.15
node_cpu_seconds_total{cpu="0",mode="user"} 1075.2
node_disk_discard_time_seconds_total{device="vda"} 0
node_disk_discard_time_seconds_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_discarded_sectors_total{device="vda"} 0
node_disk_discarded_sectors_total{device="vdb"} 0

```

```

node_disk_discards_completed_total{device="vda"} 0
node_disk_discards_completed_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_discards_merged_total{device="vda"} 0
node_disk_discards_merged_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_info{device="vda",major="252",minor="0"} 1
node_disk_info{device="vdb",major="252",minor="16"} 1
node_disk_io_now{device="vda"} 0
node_disk_io_now{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_io_time_seconds_total{device="vda"} 174
node_disk_io_time_seconds_total{device="vdb"} 0.054
node_disk_io_time_weighted_seconds_total{device="vda"} 259.79200000000003
node_disk_io_time_weighted_seconds_total{device="vdb"} 0.039
node_disk_read_bytes_total{device="vda"} 3.71867136e+08
node_disk_read_bytes_total{device="vdb"} 366592
node_disk_read_time_seconds_total{device="vda"} 19.128
node_disk_read_time_seconds_total{device="vdb"} 0.039
node_disk_reads_completed_total{device="vda"} 5619
node_disk_reads_completed_total{device="vdb"} 96
node_disk_reads_merged_total{device="vda"} 5
node_disk_reads_merged_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_write_time_seconds_total{device="vda"} 240.66400000000002
node_disk_write_time_seconds_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_writes_completed_total{device="vda"} 71584
node_disk_writes_completed_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_writes_merged_total{device="vda"} 19761
node_disk_writes_merged_total{device="vdb"} 0
node_disk_written_bytes_total{device="vda"} 2.007924224e+09
node_disk_written_bytes_total{device="vdb"} 0

```

#### 12.4.4. Creating a ServiceMonitor resource for the node exporter service

You can use a Prometheus client library and scrape metrics from the `/metrics` endpoint to access and view the metrics exposed by the node-exporter service. Use a **ServiceMonitor** custom resource definition (CRD) to monitor the node exporter service.

##### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges or the **monitoring-edit** role.
- You have enabled monitoring for the user-defined project by configuring the node-exporter service.

##### Procedure

1. Create a YAML file for the **ServiceMonitor** resource configuration. In this example, the service monitor matches any service with the label **metrics** and queries the **exmet** port every 30 seconds.

```

apiVersion: monitoring.coreos.com/v1
kind: ServiceMonitor
metadata:
 labels:
 k8s-app: node-exporter-metrics-monitor
 name: node-exporter-metrics-monitor ①

```

```

namespace: dynamation 2
spec:
endpoints:
- interval: 30s 3
port: exmet 4
scheme: http
selector:
matchLabels:
servicetype: metrics

```

- 1** The name of the **ServiceMonitor**.
- 2** The namespace where the **ServiceMonitor** is created.
- 3** The interval at which the port will be queried.
- 4** The name of the port that is queried every 30 seconds

## 2. Create the **ServiceMonitor** configuration for the node-exporter service.

```
$ oc create -f node-exporter-metrics-monitor.yaml
```

### 12.4.4.1. Accessing the node exporter service outside the cluster

You can access the node-exporter service outside the cluster and view the exposed metrics.

#### Prerequisites

- You have access to the cluster as a user with **cluster-admin** privileges or the **monitoring-edit** role.
- You have enabled monitoring for the user-defined project by configuring the node-exporter service.

#### Procedure

1. Expose the node-exporter service.

```
$ oc expose service -n <namespace> <node_exporter_service_name>
```

2. Obtain the FQDN (Fully Qualified Domain Name) for the route.

```
$ oc get route -o=custom-columns=NAME:.metadata.name,DNS:.spec.host
```

#### Example output

| NAME                  | DNS                                                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| node-exporter-service | node-exporter-service-dynamation.apps.cluster.example.org |

3. Use the **curl** command to display metrics for the node-exporter service.

```
$ curl -s http://node-exporter-service-dynamation.apps.cluster.example.org/metrics
```

## Example output

```
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0"} 1.5382e-05
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0.25"} 3.1163e-05
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0.5"} 3.8546e-05
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="0.75"} 4.9139e-05
go_gc_duration_seconds{quantile="1"} 0.000189423
```

### 12.4.5. Additional resources

- [Configuring the monitoring stack](#)
- [Enabling monitoring for user-defined projects](#)
- [Managing metrics](#)
- [Reviewing monitoring dashboards](#)
- [Monitoring application health by using health checks](#)
- [Creating and using config maps](#)
- [Controlling virtual machine states](#)

## 12.5. EXPOSING DOWNWARD METRICS FOR VIRTUAL MACHINES

As an administrator, you can expose a limited set of host and virtual machine (VM) metrics to a guest VM by first enabling a **downwardMetrics** feature gate and then configuring a **downwardMetrics** device.

Users can view the metrics results by using the command line or the **vm-dump-metrics tool**.



### NOTE

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9, use the command line to view downward metrics. See [Viewing downward metrics by using the command line](#).

The `vm-dump-metrics` tool is not supported on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 platform.

### 12.5.1. Enabling or disabling the downwardMetrics feature gate

You can enable or disable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate by performing either of the following actions:

- Editing the HyperConverged custom resource (CR) in your default editor
- Using the command line

#### 12.5.1.1. Enabling or disabling the downward metrics feature gate in a YAML file

To expose downward metrics for a host virtual machine, you can enable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate by editing a YAML file.

### Prerequisites

- You must have administrator privileges to enable the feature gate.

## Procedure

1. Open the HyperConverged custom resource (CR) in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Choose to enable or disable the downwardMetrics feature gate as follows:

- To enable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate, add and then set **spec.featureGates.downwardMetrics** to **true**. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 featureGates:
 downwardMetrics: true
...
```

- To disable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate, set **spec.featureGates.downwardMetrics** to **false**. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
 namespace: openshift-cnv
spec:
 featureGates:
 downwardMetrics: false
...
```

### 12.5.1.2. Enabling or disabling the downward metrics feature gate from the command line

To expose downward metrics for a host virtual machine, you can enable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate by using the command line.

## Prerequisites

- You must have administrator privileges to enable the feature gate.

## Procedure

- Choose to enable or disable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate as follows:
  - Enable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate by running the command shown in the following example:

```
$ oc patch hco kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
```

```
--type json -p '[{"op": "replace", "path": \
"/spec/featureGates/downwardMetrics" \
"value": true}]'
```

- Disable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate by running the command shown in the following example:

```
$ oc patch hco kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv \
--type json -p '[{"op": "replace", "path": \
"/spec/featureGates/downwardMetrics" \
"value": false}]'
```

## 12.5.2. Configuring a downward metrics device

You enable the capturing of downward metrics for a host VM by creating a configuration file that includes a **downwardMetrics** device. Adding this device establishes that the metrics are exposed through a **virtio-serial** port.

### Prerequisites

- You must first enable the **downwardMetrics** feature gate.

### Procedure

- Edit or create a YAML file that includes a **downwardMetrics** device, as shown in the following example:

#### Example downwardMetrics configuration file

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: fedora
 namespace: default
spec:
 dataVolumeTemplates:
 - metadata:
 name: fedora-volume
 spec:
 sourceRef:
 kind: DataSource
 name: fedora
 namespace: openshift-virtualization-os-images
 storage:
 resources: {}
 storageClassName: hostpath-csi-basic
 instancetype:
 name: u1.medium
 preference:
 name: fedora
 running: true
 template:
 metadata:
 labels:
```

```

 app.kubernetes.io/name: headless
spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 downwardMetrics: {} ①
 subdomain: headless
 volumes:
 - dataVolume:
 name: fedora-volume
 name: rootdisk
 - cloudInitNoCloud:
 userData: |
 #cloud-config
 chpasswd:
 expire: false
 password: '<password>' ②
 user: fedora
 name: cloudinitdisk

```

- ① The **downwardMetrics** device.
- ② The password for the **fedora** user.

### 12.5.3. Viewing downward metrics

You can view downward metrics by using either of the following options:

- The command line interface (CLI)
- The **vm-dump-metrics** tool



#### NOTE

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9, use the command line to view downward metrics. The **vm-dump-metrics** tool is not supported on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 platform.

#### 12.5.3.1. Viewing downward metrics by using the command line

You can view downward metrics by entering a command from inside a guest virtual machine (VM).

#### Procedure

- Run the following commands:

```

$ sudo sh -c 'printf "GET /metrics/XML\n\n" > /dev/virtio-ports/org.github.vhostmd.1'
$ sudo cat /dev/virtio-ports/org.github.vhostmd.1

```

#### 12.5.3.2. Viewing downward metrics by using the **vm-dump-metrics** tool

To view downward metrics, install the **vm-dump-metrics** tool and then use the tool to expose the metrics results.



## NOTE

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9, use the command line to view downward metrics. The `vm-dump-metrics` tool is not supported on the Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) 9 platform.

## Procedure

1. Install the **vm-dump-metrics** tool by running the following command:

```
$ sudo dnf install -y vm-dump-metrics
```

2. Retrieve the metrics results by running the following command:

```
$ sudo vm-dump-metrics
```

## Example output

```
<metrics>
 <metric type="string" context="host">
 <name>HostName</name>
 <value>node01</value>
 [...]
 <metric type="int64" context="host" unit="s">
 <name>Time</name>
 <value>1619008605</value>
 </metric>
 <metric type="string" context="host">
 <name>VirtualizationVendor</name>
 <value>kubevirt.io</value>
 </metric>
</metrics>
```

## 12.6. VIRTUAL MACHINE HEALTH CHECKS

You can configure virtual machine (VM) health checks by defining readiness and liveness probes in the **VirtualMachine** resource.

### 12.6.1. About readiness and liveness probes

Use readiness and liveness probes to detect and handle unhealthy virtual machines (VMs). You can include one or more probes in the specification of the VM to ensure that traffic does not reach a VM that is not ready for it and that a new VM is created when a VM becomes unresponsive.

A *readiness probe* determines whether a VM is ready to accept service requests. If the probe fails, the VM is removed from the list of available endpoints until the VM is ready.

A *liveness probe* determines whether a VM is responsive. If the probe fails, the VM is deleted and a new VM is created to restore responsiveness.

You can configure readiness and liveness probes by setting the **spec.readinessProbe** and the **spec.livenessProbe** fields of the **VirtualMachine** object. These fields support the following tests:

## HTTP GET

The probe determines the health of the VM by using a web hook. The test is successful if the HTTP response code is between 200 and 399. You can use an HTTP GET test with applications that return HTTP status codes when they are completely initialized.

## TCP socket

The probe attempts to open a socket to the VM. The VM is only considered healthy if the probe can establish a connection. You can use a TCP socket test with applications that do not start listening until initialization is complete.

## Guest agent ping

The probe uses the **guest-ping** command to determine if the QEMU guest agent is running on the virtual machine.

### 12.6.1.1. Defining an HTTP readiness probe

Define an HTTP readiness probe by setting the **spec.readinessProbe.httpGet** field of the virtual machine (VM) configuration.

#### Procedure

- Include details of the readiness probe in the VM configuration file.

#### Sample readiness probe with an HTTP GET test

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 annotations:
 name: fedora-vm
 namespace: example-namespace
...
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 readinessProbe:
 httpGet: ①
 port: 1500 ②
 path: /healthz ③
 httpHeaders:
 - name: Custom-Header
 value: Awesome
 initialDelaySeconds: 120 ④
 periodSeconds: 20 ⑤
 timeoutSeconds: 10 ⑥
 failureThreshold: 3 ⑦
 successThreshold: 3 ⑧
...
```

- ① The HTTP GET request to perform to connect to the VM.

- 2 The port of the VM that the probe queries. In the above example, the probe queries port 1500.
- 3 The path to access on the HTTP server. In the above example, if the handler for the server's /healthz path returns a success code, the VM is considered to be healthy. If the handler returns a failure code, the VM is removed from the list of available endpoints.
- 4 The time, in seconds, after the VM starts before the readiness probe is initiated.
- 5 The delay, in seconds, between performing probes. The default delay is 10 seconds. This value must be greater than **timeoutSeconds**.
- 6 The number of seconds of inactivity after which the probe times out and the VM is assumed to have failed. The default value is 1. This value must be lower than **periodSeconds**.
- 7 The number of times that the probe is allowed to fail. The default is 3. After the specified number of attempts, the pod is marked **Unready**.
- 8 The number of times that the probe must report success, after a failure, to be considered successful. The default is 1.

2. Create the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

### 12.6.1.2. Defining a TCP readiness probe

Define a TCP readiness probe by setting the **spec.readinessProbe.tcpSocket** field of the virtual machine (VM) configuration.

#### Procedure

1. Include details of the TCP readiness probe in the VM configuration file.

#### Sample readiness probe with a TCP socket test

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 annotations:
 name: fedora-vm
 namespace: example-namespace
 ...
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 readinessProbe:
 initialDelaySeconds: 120 1
 periodSeconds: 20 2
 tcpSocket: 3
 port: 1500 4
 timeoutSeconds: 10 5
 ...
...
```

- 1 The time, in seconds, after the VM starts before the readiness probe is initiated.
- 2 The delay, in seconds, between performing probes. The default delay is 10 seconds. This value must be greater than **timeoutSeconds**.
- 3 The TCP action to perform.
- 4 The port of the VM that the probe queries.
- 5 The number of seconds of inactivity after which the probe times out and the VM is assumed to have failed. The default value is 1. This value must be lower than **periodSeconds**.

2. Create the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

### 12.6.1.3. Defining an HTTP liveness probe

Define an HTTP liveness probe by setting the **spec.livenessProbe.httpGet** field of the virtual machine (VM) configuration. You can define both HTTP and TCP tests for liveness probes in the same way as readiness probes. This procedure configures a sample liveness probe with an HTTP GET test.

#### Procedure

1. Include details of the HTTP liveness probe in the VM configuration file.

#### Sample liveness probe with an HTTP GET test

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 annotations:
 name: fedora-vm
 namespace: example-namespace
...
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 livenessProbe:
 initialDelaySeconds: 120 1
 periodSeconds: 20 2
 httpGet: 3
 port: 1500 4
 path: /healthz 5
 httpHeaders:
 - name: Custom-Header
 value: Awesome
 timeoutSeconds: 10 6
...
```

- 1** The time, in seconds, after the VM starts before the liveness probe is initiated.

- 2 The delay, in seconds, between performing probes. The default delay is 10 seconds. This value must be greater than **timeoutSeconds**.
- 3 The HTTP GET request to perform to connect to the VM.
- 4 The port of the VM that the probe queries. In the above example, the probe queries port 1500. The VM installs and runs a minimal HTTP server on port 1500 via cloud-init.
- 5 The path to access on the HTTP server. In the above example, if the handler for the server's **/healthz** path returns a success code, the VM is considered to be healthy. If the handler returns a failure code, the VM is deleted and a new VM is created.
- 6 The number of seconds of inactivity after which the probe times out and the VM is assumed to have failed. The default value is 1. This value must be lower than **periodSeconds**.

2. Create the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

### 12.6.2. Defining a watchdog

You can define a watchdog to monitor the health of the guest operating system by performing the following steps:

1. Configure a watchdog device for the virtual machine (VM).
2. Install the watchdog agent on the guest.

The watchdog device monitors the agent and performs one of the following actions if the guest operating system is unresponsive:

- **poweroff**: The VM powers down immediately. If **spec.running** is set to **true** or **spec.runStrategy** is not set to **manual**, then the VM reboots.
- **reset**: The VM reboots in place and the guest operating system cannot react.



#### NOTE

The reboot time might cause liveness probes to time out. If cluster-level protections detect a failed liveness probe, the VM might be forcibly rescheduled, increasing the reboot time.

- **shutdown**: The VM gracefully powers down by stopping all services.



#### NOTE

Watchdog is not available for Windows VMs.

#### 12.6.2.1. Configuring a watchdog device for the virtual machine

You configure a watchdog device for the virtual machine (VM).

## Prerequisites

- The VM must have kernel support for an **i6300esb** watchdog device. Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) images support **i6300esb**.

## Procedure

- Create a **YAML** file with the following contents:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 labels:
 kubevirt.io/vm: vm2-rhel84-watchdog
 name: <vm-name>
spec:
 running: false
 template:
 metadata:
 labels:
 kubevirt.io/vm: vm2-rhel84-watchdog
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 watchdog:
 name: <watchdog>
 i6300esb:
 action: "poweroff" ①
...
```

- ① Specify **poweroff**, **reset**, or **shutdown**.

The example above configures the **i6300esb** watchdog device on a RHEL8 VM with the poweroff action and exposes the device as **/dev/watchdog**.

This device can now be used by the watchdog binary.

- Apply the YAML file to your cluster by running the following command:

```
$ oc apply -f <file_name>.yaml
```



### IMPORTANT

This procedure is provided for testing watchdog functionality only and must not be run on production machines.

- Run the following command to verify that the VM is connected to the watchdog device:

```
$ lspci | grep watchdog -i
```

- Run one of the following commands to confirm the watchdog is active:

- Trigger a kernel panic:

- ```
# echo c > /proc/sysrq-trigger
```
- Stop the watchdog service:
- ```
pkill -9 watchdog
```

### 12.6.2.2. Installing the watchdog agent on the guest

You install the watchdog agent on the guest and start the **watchdog** service.

#### Procedure

- Log in to the virtual machine as root user.
- Install the **watchdog** package and its dependencies:

```
yum install watchdog
```

- Uncomment the following line in the **/etc/watchdog.conf** file and save the changes:

```
#watchdog-device = /dev/watchdog
```

- Enable the **watchdog** service to start on boot:

```
systemctl enable --now watchdog.service
```

### 12.6.3. Defining a guest agent ping probe

Define a guest agent ping probe by setting the **spec.readinessProbe.guestAgentPing** field of the virtual machine (VM) configuration.



#### IMPORTANT

The guest agent ping probe is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

#### Prerequisites

- The QEMU guest agent must be installed and enabled on the virtual machine.

#### Procedure

- Include details of the guest agent ping probe in the VM configuration file. For example:

#### Sample guest agent ping probe

```

apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 annotations:
 name: fedora-vm
 namespace: example-namespace
...
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 readinessProbe:
 guestAgentPing: {} 1
 initialDelaySeconds: 120 2
 periodSeconds: 20 3
 timeoutSeconds: 10 4
 failureThreshold: 3 5
 successThreshold: 3 6
...

```

- 1** The guest agent ping probe to connect to the VM.
- 2** Optional: The time, in seconds, after the VM starts before the guest agent probe is initiated.
- 3** Optional: The delay, in seconds, between performing probes. The default delay is 10 seconds. This value must be greater than **timeoutSeconds**.
- 4** Optional: The number of seconds of inactivity after which the probe times out and the VM is assumed to have failed. The default value is 1. This value must be lower than **periodSeconds**.
- 5** Optional: The number of times that the probe is allowed to fail. The default is 3. After the specified number of attempts, the pod is marked **Unready**.
- 6** Optional: The number of times that the probe must report success, after a failure, to be considered successful. The default is 1.

2. Create the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

#### 12.6.4. Additional resources

- [Monitoring application health by using health checks](#)

## 12.7. OPENSPLIT VIRTUALIZATION RUNBOOKS

Runbooks for the OpenShift Virtualization Operator are maintained in the [openshift/runbooks](#) Git repository, and you can view them on GitHub. To diagnose and resolve issues that trigger OpenShift Virtualization [alerts](#), follow the procedures in the runbooks.

OpenShift Virtualization alerts are displayed in the **Virtualization → Overview** tab in the web console.

### 12.7.1. CDIDataImportCronOutdated

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDIDataImportCronOutdated** alert.

### 12.7.2. CDIDataVolumeUnusualRestartCount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDIDataVolumeUnusualRestartCount** alert.

### 12.7.3. CDIDefaultStorageClassDegraded

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDIDefaultStorageClassDegraded** alert.

### 12.7.4. CDIMultipleDefaultVirtStorageClasses

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDIMultipleDefaultVirtStorageClasses** alert.

### 12.7.5. CDINoDefaultStorageClass

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDINoDefaultStorageClass** alert.

### 12.7.6. CDINotReady

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDINotReady** alert.

### 12.7.7. CDIOperatorDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDIOperatorDown** alert.

### 12.7.8. CDIStorageProfilesIncomplete

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CDIStorageProfilesIncomplete** alert.

### 12.7.9. CnaoDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CnaoDown** alert.

### 12.7.10. CnaoNMstateMigration

- [View the runbook](#) for the **CnaoNMstateMigration** alert.

### 12.7.11. HCOInstallationIncomplete

- [View the runbook](#) for the **HCOInstallationIncomplete** alert.

### 12.7.12. HPPNotReady

- [View the runbook](#) for the **HPPNotReady** alert.

### 12.7.13. HPPOperatorDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **HPPOperatorDown** alert.

## 12.7.14. HPPSharingPoolPathWithOS

- [View the runbook](#) for the **HPPSharingPoolPathWithOS** alert.

## 12.7.15. KubemacpoolDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubemacpoolDown** alert.

## 12.7.16. KubeMacPoolDuplicateMacsFound

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubeMacPoolDuplicateMacsFound** alert.

## 12.7.17. KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedCPU

- The **KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedCPU** alert is [deprecated](#).

## 12.7.18. KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedMemory

- The **KubeVirtComponentExceedsRequestedMemory** alert is [deprecated](#).

## 12.7.19. KubeVirtCRModified

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubeVirtCRModified** alert.

## 12.7.20. KubeVirtDeprecatedAPIRequested

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubeVirtDeprecatedAPIRequested** alert.

## 12.7.21. KubeVirtNoAvailableNodesToRunVMs

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubeVirtNoAvailableNodesToRunVMs** alert.

## 12.7.22. KubevirtVmHighMemoryUsage

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubevirtVmHighMemoryUsage** alert.

## 12.7.23. KubeVirtVMIExcessiveMigrations

- [View the runbook](#) for the **KubeVirtVMIExcessiveMigrations** alert.

## 12.7.24. LowKVMNodesCount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **LowKVMNodesCount** alert.

## 12.7.25. LowReadyVirtControllersCount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **LowReadyVirtControllersCount** alert.

## 12.7.26. LowReadyVirtOperatorsCount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **LowReadyVirtOperatorsCount** alert.

### 12.7.27. LowVirtAPICount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **LowVirtAPICount** alert.

### 12.7.28. LowVirtControllersCount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **LowVirtControllersCount** alert.

### 12.7.29. LowVirtOperatorCount

- [View the runbook](#) for the **LowVirtOperatorCount** alert.

### 12.7.30. NetworkAddonsConfigNotReady

- [View the runbook](#) for the **NetworkAddonsConfigNotReady** alert.

### 12.7.31. NoLeadingVirtOperator

- [View the runbook](#) for the **NoLeadingVirtOperator** alert.

### 12.7.32. NoReadyVirtController

- [View the runbook](#) for the **NoReadyVirtController** alert.

### 12.7.33. NoReadyVirtOperator

- [View the runbook](#) for the **NoReadyVirtOperator** alert.

### 12.7.34. OrphanedVirtualMachineInstances

- [View the runbook](#) for the **OrphanedVirtualMachineInstances** alert.

### 12.7.35. OutdatedVirtualMachineInstanceWorkloads

- [View the runbook](#) for the **OutdatedVirtualMachineInstanceWorkloads** alert.

### 12.7.36. SingleStackIPv6Unsupported

- [View the runbook](#) for the **SingleStackIPv6Unsupported** alert.

### 12.7.37. SSPCommonTemplatesModificationReverted

- [View the runbook](#) for the **SSPCommonTemplatesModificationReverted** alert.

### 12.7.38. SSPDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **SSPDown** alert.

### 12.7.39. SSPFailingToReconcile

- [View the runbook](#) for the **SSPFailingToReconcile** alert.

### 12.7.40. SSPHighRateRejectedVms

- [View the runbook](#) for the **SSPHighRateRejectedVms** alert.

### 12.7.41. SSPTemplateValidatorDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **SSPTemplateValidatorDown** alert.

### 12.7.42. UnsupportedHCOModification

- [View the runbook](#) for the **UnsupportedHCOModification** alert.

### 12.7.43. VirtAPIDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtAPIDown** alert.

### 12.7.44. VirtApiRESTErrorsBurst

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtApiRESTErrorsBurst** alert.

### 12.7.45. VirtApiRESTErrorsHigh

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtApiRESTErrorsHigh** alert.

### 12.7.46. VirtControllerDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtControllerDown** alert.

### 12.7.47. VirtControllerRESTErrorsBurst

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtControllerRESTErrorsBurst** alert.

### 12.7.48. VirtControllerRESTErrorsHigh

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtControllerRESTErrorsHigh** alert.

### 12.7.49. VirtHandlerDaemonSetRolloutFailing

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtHandlerDaemonSetRolloutFailing** alert.

### 12.7.50. VirtHandlerRESTErrorsBurst

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtHandlerRESTErrorsBurst** alert.

### 12.7.51. VirtHandlerRESTErrorsHigh

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtHandlerRESTErrorsHigh** alert.

### 12.7.52. VirtOperatorDown

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtOperatorDown** alert.

### 12.7.53. VirtOperatorRESTErrorsBurst

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtOperatorRESTErrorsBurst** alert.

### 12.7.54. VirtOperatorRESTErrorsHigh

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VirtOperatorRESTErrorsHigh** alert.

### 12.7.55. VirtualMachineCRCErrors

- The runbook for the **VirtualMachineCRCErrors** alert is deprecated because the alert was renamed to **VMStorageClassWarning**.
  - [View the runbook](#) for the **VMStorageClassWarning** alert.

### 12.7.56. VMCannotBeEvicted

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VMCannotBeEvicted** alert.

### 12.7.57. VMStorageClassWarning

- [View the runbook](#) for the **VMStorageClassWarning** alert.

# CHAPTER 13. SUPPORT

## 13.1. SUPPORT OVERVIEW

You can collect data about your environment, monitor the health of your cluster and virtual machines (VMs), and troubleshoot OpenShift Virtualization resources with the following tools.

### 13.1.1. Web console

The OpenShift Container Platform web console displays resource usage, alerts, events, and trends for your cluster and for OpenShift Virtualization components and resources.

**Table 13.1. Web console pages for monitoring and troubleshooting**

Page	Description
<b>Overview</b> page	Cluster details, status, alerts, inventory, and resource usage
<b>Virtualization</b> → <b>Overview</b> tab	OpenShift Virtualization resources, usage, alerts, and status
<b>Virtualization</b> → <b>Top consumers</b> tab	Top consumers of CPU, memory, and storage
<b>Virtualization</b> → <b>Migrations</b> tab	Progress of live migrations
<b>VirtualMachines</b> → <b>VirtualMachine</b> → <b>VirtualMachine details</b> → <b>Metrics</b> tab	VM resource usage, storage, network, and migration
<b>VirtualMachines</b> → <b>VirtualMachine</b> → <b>VirtualMachine details</b> → <b>Events</b> tab	List of VM events
<b>VirtualMachines</b> → <b>VirtualMachine</b> → <b>VirtualMachine details</b> → <b>Diagnostics</b> tab	VM status conditions and volume snapshot status

### 13.1.2. Collecting data for Red Hat Support

When you submit a [support case](#) to Red Hat Support, it is helpful to provide debugging information. You can gather debugging information by performing the following steps:

#### Collecting data about your environment

Configure Prometheus and Alertmanager and collect **must-gather** data for OpenShift Container Platform and OpenShift Virtualization.

#### Collecting data about VMs

Collect **must-gather** data and memory dumps from VMs.

#### must-gather tool for OpenShift Virtualization

Configure and use the **must-gather** tool.

### 13.1.3. Troubleshooting

Troubleshoot OpenShift Virtualization components and VMs and resolve issues that trigger alerts in the web console.

#### Events

View important life-cycle information for VMs, namespaces, and resources.

#### Logs

View and configure logs for OpenShift Virtualization components and VMs.

#### Troubleshooting data volumes

Troubleshoot data volumes by analyzing conditions and events.

## 13.2. COLLECTING DATA FOR RED HAT SUPPORT

When you submit a [support case](#) to Red Hat Support, it is helpful to provide debugging information for OpenShift Container Platform and OpenShift Virtualization by using the following tools:

#### must-gather tool

The **must-gather** tool collects diagnostic information, including resource definitions and service logs.

#### Prometheus

Prometheus is a time-series database and a rule evaluation engine for metrics. Prometheus sends alerts to Alertmanager for processing.

#### Alertmanager

The Alertmanager service handles alerts received from Prometheus. The Alertmanager is also responsible for sending the alerts to external notification systems.

For information about the OpenShift Container Platform monitoring stack, see [About OpenShift Container Platform monitoring](#).

### 13.2.1. Collecting data about your environment

Collecting data about your environment minimizes the time required to analyze and determine the root cause.

#### Prerequisites

- Set the retention time for Prometheus metrics data to a minimum of seven days.
- Configure the Alertmanager to capture relevant alerts and to send alert notifications to a dedicated mailbox so that they can be viewed and persisted outside the cluster.
- Record the exact number of affected nodes and virtual machines.

#### Procedure

1. Collect must-gather data for the cluster.
2. Collect must-gather data for Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation, if necessary.
3. Collect must-gather data for OpenShift Virtualization.
4. Collect Prometheus metrics for the cluster.

### 13.2.2. Collecting data about virtual machines

Collecting data about malfunctioning virtual machines (VMs) minimizes the time required to analyze and determine the root cause.

#### Prerequisites

- Linux VMs: [Install the latest QEMU guest agent](#) .
- Windows VMs:
  - Record the Windows patch update details.
  - [Install the latest VirtIO drivers](#).
  - [Install the latest QEMU guest agent](#) .
  - If Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) is enabled, connect by using the [desktop viewer](#) to determine whether there is a problem with the connection software.

#### Procedure

1. [Collect must-gather data for the VMs](#) using the **/usr/bin/gather** script.
2. Collect screenshots of VMs that have crashed *before* you restart them.
3. [Collect memory dumps from VMs](#) *before* remediation attempts.
4. Record factors that the malfunctioning VMs have in common. For example, the VMs have the same host or network.

### 13.2.3. Using the must-gather tool for OpenShift Virtualization

You can collect data about OpenShift Virtualization resources by running the **must-gather** command with the OpenShift Virtualization image.

The default data collection includes information about the following resources:

- OpenShift Virtualization Operator namespaces, including child objects
- OpenShift Virtualization custom resource definitions
- Namespaces that contain virtual machines
- Basic virtual machine definitions

Instance types information is not currently collected by default; you can, however, run a command to optionally collect it.

#### Procedure

- Run the following command to collect data about OpenShift Virtualization:

```
$ oc adm must-gather \
--image=registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/cnv-must-gather-rhel9:v4.16.0 \
-- /usr/bin/gather
```

### 13.2.3.1. must-gather tool options

You can run the **oc adm must-gather** command to collect **must gather** images for all the Operators and products deployed on your cluster without the need to explicitly specify the required images. Alternatively, you can specify a combination of scripts and environment variables for the following options:

- Collecting detailed virtual machine (VM) information from a namespace
- Collecting detailed information about specified VMs
- Collecting image, image-stream, and image-stream-tags information
- Limiting the maximum number of parallel processes used by the **must-gather** tool

#### 13.2.3.1.1. Parameters

##### Environment variables

You can specify environment variables for a compatible script.

###### **NS=<namespace\_name>**

Collect virtual machine information, including **virt-launcher** pod details, from the namespace that you specify. The **VirtualMachine** and **VirtualMachineInstance** CR data is collected for all namespaces.

###### **VM=<vm\_name>**

Collect details about a particular virtual machine. To use this option, you must also specify a namespace by using the **NS** environment variable.

###### **PROS=<number\_of\_processes>**

Modify the maximum number of parallel processes that the **must-gather** tool uses. The default value is **5**.



##### IMPORTANT

Using too many parallel processes can cause performance issues. Increasing the maximum number of parallel processes is not recommended.

### Scripts

Each script is compatible only with certain environment variable combinations.

#### /usr/bin/gather

Use the default **must-gather** script, which collects cluster data from all namespaces and includes only basic VM information. This script is compatible only with the **PROS** variable.

#### /usr/bin/gather --vms\_details

Collect VM log files, VM definitions, control-plane logs, and namespaces that belong to OpenShift Virtualization resources. Specifying namespaces includes their child objects. If you use this parameter without specifying a namespace or VM, the **must-gather** tool collects this data for all VMs in the cluster. This script is compatible with all environment variables, but you must specify a namespace if you use the **VM** variable.

#### /usr/bin/gather --images

Collect image, image-stream, and image-stream-tags custom resource information. This script is compatible only with the **PROS** variable.

#### /usr/bin/gather --instancetypes

Collect instance types information. This information is not currently collected by default; you can, however, optionally collect it.

#### 13.2.3.1.2. Usage and examples

Environment variables are optional. You can run a script by itself or with one or more compatible environment variables.

**Table 13.2. Compatible parameters**

Script	Compatible environment variable
/usr/bin/gather	* <b>PROS=&lt;number_of_processes&gt;</b>
/usr/bin/gather --vms_details	* For a namespace: <b>NS=&lt;namespace_name&gt;</b> * For a VM: <b>VM=&lt;vm_name&gt; NS=&lt;namespace_name&gt;</b> * <b>PROS=&lt;number_of_processes&gt;</b>
/usr/bin/gather --images	* <b>PROS=&lt;number_of_processes&gt;</b>

#### Syntax

To collect **must-gather** logs for all Operators and products on your cluster in a single pass, run the following command:

```
$ oc adm must-gather --all-images
```

If you need to pass additional parameters to individual **must-gather** images, use the following command:

```
$ oc adm must-gather \
--image=registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/cnv-must-gather-rhel9:v4.16.0 \
-- <environment_variable_1> <environment_variable_2> <script_name>
```

#### Default data collection parallel processes

By default, five processes run in parallel.

```
$ oc adm must-gather \
--image=registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/cnv-must-gather-rhel9:v4.16.0 \
-- PROS=5 /usr/bin/gather ①
```

① You can modify the number of parallel processes by changing the default.

#### Detailed VM information

The following command collects detailed VM information for the **my-vm** VM in the **mynamespace** namespace:

```
$ oc adm must-gather \
--image=registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/cnv-must-gather-rhel9:v4.16.0 \
-- NS=mynamespace VM=my-vm /usr/bin/gather --vms_details 1
```

- 1 The **NS** environment variable is mandatory if you use the **VM** environment variable.

## Image, image-stream, and image-stream-tags information

The following command collects image, image-stream, and image-stream-tags information from the cluster:

```
$ oc adm must-gather \
--image=registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/cnv-must-gather-rhel9:v4.16.0 \
/usr/bin/gather --images
```

## Instance types information

The following command collects instance types information from the cluster:

```
$ oc adm must-gather \
--image=registry.redhat.io/container-native-virtualization/cnv-must-gather-rhel9:v4.16.0 \
/usr/bin/gather --instancetypes
```

## 13.3. TROUBLESHOOTING

OpenShift Virtualization provides tools and logs for troubleshooting virtual machines (VMs) and virtualization components.

You can troubleshoot OpenShift Virtualization components by using the tools provided in the web console or by using the **oc** CLI tool.

### 13.3.1. Events

[OpenShift Container Platform events](#) are records of important life-cycle information and are useful for monitoring and troubleshooting virtual machine, namespace, and resource issues.

- VM events: Navigate to the **Events** tab of the **VirtualMachine details** page in the web console.

#### Namespace events

You can view namespace events by running the following command:

```
$ oc get events -n <namespace>
```

See the [list of events](#) for details about specific events.

#### Resource events

You can view resource events by running the following command:

```
$ oc describe <resource> <resource_name>
```

### 13.3.2. Pod logs

You can view logs for OpenShift Virtualization pods by using the web console or the CLI. You can also view [aggregated logs](#) by using the LokiStack in the web console.

#### 13.3.2.1. Configuring OpenShift Virtualization pod log verbosity

You can configure the verbosity level of OpenShift Virtualization pod logs by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

##### Procedure

1. To set log verbosity for specific components, open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default text editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

2. Set the log level for one or more components by editing the **spec.logVerbosityConfig** stanza. For example:

```
apiVersion: hco.kubevirt.io/v1beta1
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 logVerbosityConfig:
 kubevirt:
 virtAPI: 5 1
 virtController: 4
 virtHandler: 3
 virtLauncher: 2
 virtOperator: 6
```

- 1** The log verbosity value must be an integer in the range **1–9**, where a higher number indicates a more detailed log. In this example, the **virtAPI** component logs are exposed if their priority level is **5** or higher.

3. Apply your changes by saving and exiting the editor.

#### 13.3.2.2. Viewing virt-launcher pod logs with the web console

You can view the **virt-launcher** pod logs for a virtual machine by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

##### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines**.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. On the **General** tile, click the pod name to open the **Pod details** page.
4. Click the **Logs** tab to view the logs.

### 13.3.2.3. Viewing OpenShift Virtualization pod logs with the CLI

You can view logs for the OpenShift Virtualization pods by using the **oc** CLI tool.

#### Procedure

- View a list of pods in the OpenShift Virtualization namespace by running the following command:

```
$ oc get pods -n openshift-cnv
```

#### Example 13.1. Example output

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
disks-images-provider-7gqbc	1/1	Running	0	32m
disks-images-provider-vg4kx	1/1	Running	0	32m
virt-api-57fcc4497b-7qfmc	1/1	Running	0	31m
virt-api-57fcc4497b-tx9nc	1/1	Running	0	31m
virt-controller-76c784655f-7fp6m	1/1	Running	0	30m
virt-controller-76c784655f-f4pbd	1/1	Running	0	30m
virt-handler-2m86x	1/1	Running	0	30m
virt-handler-9qs6z	1/1	Running	0	30m
virt-operator-7ccfdbf65f-q5snk	1/1	Running	0	32m
virt-operator-7ccfdbf65f-vllz8	1/1	Running	0	32m

- View the pod log by running the following command:

```
$ oc logs -n openshift-cnv <pod_name>
```



#### NOTE

If a pod fails to start, you can use the **--previous** option to view logs from the last attempt.

To monitor log output in real time, use the **-f** option.

#### Example 13.2. Example output

```
{"component":"virt-handler","level":"info","msg":"set verbosity to 2","pos":"virt-handler.go:453","timestamp":"2022-04-17T08:58:37.373695Z"} {"component":"virt-handler","level":"info","msg":"set verbosity to 2","pos":"virt-handler.go:453","timestamp":"2022-04-17T08:58:37.373726Z"} {"component":"virt-handler","level":"info","msg":"setting rate limiter to 5 QPS and 10 Burst","pos":"virt-handler.go:462","timestamp":"2022-04-17T08:58:37.373782Z"} {"component":"virt-handler","level":"info","msg":"CPU features of a minimum baseline CPU model: map[apic:true clflush:true cmov:true cx16:true cx8:true de:true fpu:true fxsr:true lahf_lm:true lm:true mca:true mce:true mmx:true msr:true mttr:true nx:true pae:true pat:true pge:true pni:true pse:true pse36:true sep:true sse:true sse2:true sse4.1:true ssse3:true syscall:true tsc:true]","pos":"cpu_plugin.go:96","timestamp":"2022-04-17T08:58:37.390221Z"} {"component":"virt-handler","level":"warning","msg":"host model mode is expected to contain only one model","pos":"cpu_plugin.go:103","timestamp":"2022-04-
```

```
17T08:58:37.390263Z"}
{"component":"virt-handler","level":"info","msg":"node-labeller is
running","pos":"node_labeller.go:94","timestamp":"2022-04-17T08:58:37.391011Z"}
```

### 13.3.3. Guest system logs

Viewing the boot logs of VM guests can help diagnose issues. You can configure access to guests' logs and view them by using either the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the **oc** CLI.

This feature is disabled by default. If a VM does not explicitly have this setting enabled or disabled, it inherits the cluster-wide default setting.



#### IMPORTANT

If sensitive information such as credentials or other personally identifiable information (PII) is written to the serial console, it is logged with all other visible text. Red Hat recommends using SSH to send sensitive data instead of the serial console.

#### 13.3.3.1. Enabling default access to VM guest system logs with the web console

You can enable default access to VM guest system logs by using the web console.

##### Procedure

- From the side menu, click **Virtualization** → **Overview**.
- Click the **Settings** tab.
- Click **Cluster** → **Guest management**.
- Set **Enable guest system log access** to on.

#### 13.3.3.2. Enabling default access to VM guest system logs with the CLI

You can enable default access to VM guest system logs by editing the **HyperConverged** custom resource (CR).

##### Procedure

- Open the **HyperConverged** CR in your default editor by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit hyperconverged kubevirt-hyperconverged -n openshift-cnv
```

- Update the **disableSerialConsoleLog** value. For example:

```
kind: HyperConverged
metadata:
 name: kubevirt-hyperconverged
spec:
 virtualMachineOptions:
 disableSerialConsoleLog: true ①
#...
```

- 1 Set the value of **disableSerialConsoleLog** to **false** if you want serial console access to be enabled on VMs by default.

### 13.3.3.3. Setting guest system log access for a single VM with the web console

You can configure access to VM guest system logs for a single VM by using the web console. This setting takes precedence over the cluster-wide default configuration.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Configuration** tab.
4. Set **Guest system log access** to on or off.

### 13.3.3.4. Setting guest system log access for a single VM with the CLI

You can configure access to VM guest system logs for a single VM by editing the **VirtualMachine** CR. This setting takes precedence over the cluster-wide default configuration.

#### Procedure

1. Edit the virtual machine manifest by running the following command:

```
$ oc edit vm <vm_name>
```

2. Update the value of the **logSerialConsole** field. For example:

```
apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
kind: VirtualMachine
metadata:
 name: example-vm
spec:
 template:
 spec:
 domain:
 devices:
 logSerialConsole: true ①
#...
```

- 1 To enable access to the guest's serial console log, set the **logSerialConsole** value to **true**.

3. Apply the new configuration to the VM by running the following command:

```
$ oc apply vm <vm_name>
```

4. Optional: If you edited a running VM, restart the VM to apply the new configuration. For example:

```
$ virtctl restart <vm_name> -n <namespace>
```

### 13.3.3.5. Viewing guest system logs with the web console

You can view the serial console logs of a virtual machine (VM) guest by using the web console.

#### Prerequisites

- Guest system log access is enabled.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** from the side menu.
2. Select a virtual machine to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Diagnostics** tab.
4. Click **Guest system logs** to load the serial console.

### 13.3.3.6. Viewing guest system logs with the CLI

You can view the serial console logs of a VM guest by running the **oc logs** command.

#### Prerequisites

- Guest system log access is enabled.

#### Procedure

- View the logs by running the following command, substituting your own values for **<namespace>** and **<vm\_name>**:  

```
$ oc logs -n <namespace> -l kubevirt.io/domain=<vm_name> --tail=-1 -c guest-console-log
```

## 13.3.4. Log aggregation

You can facilitate troubleshooting by aggregating and filtering logs.

### 13.3.4.1. Viewing aggregated OpenShift Virtualization logs with the LokiStack

You can view aggregated logs for OpenShift Virtualization pods and containers by using the LokiStack in the web console.

#### Prerequisites

- You deployed the LokiStack.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Observe** → **Logs** in the web console.

2. Select **application**, for **virt-launcher** pod logs, or **infrastructure**, for OpenShift Virtualization control plane pods and containers, from the log type list.
3. Click **Show Query** to display the query field.
4. Enter the LogQL query in the query field and click **Run Query** to display the filtered logs.

### 13.3.4.2. OpenShift Virtualization LogQL queries

You can view and filter aggregated logs for OpenShift Virtualization components by running Loki Query Language (LogQL) queries on the **Observe → Logs** page in the web console.

The default log type is *infrastructure*. The **virt-launcher** log type is *application*.

Optional: You can include or exclude strings or regular expressions by using line filter expressions.



#### NOTE

If the query matches a large number of logs, the query might time out.

**Table 13.3. OpenShift Virtualization LogQL example queries**

Component	LogQL query
All	{log_type=~".+"} json  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"
<b>cdi-apiserver</b>	{log_type=~".+"} json  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_component="storage"
<b>cdi-deployment</b>	
<b>cdi-operator</b>	
<b>hco-operator</b>	{log_type=~".+"} json  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_component="deployment"
<b>kubemacpool</b>	{log_type=~".+"} json  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_component="network"

Component	LogQL query
virt-api	
virt-controller	{log_type=~".+"}json  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_component="compute"
virt-handler	
virt-operator	
ssp-operator	{log_type=~".+"}json  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"  kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_component="schedule"
Container	{log_type=~".+",kubernetes_container_name=~<container> <container>} ①  json kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"
①	Specify one or more containers separated by a pipe ( ).
virt-launcher	You must select <b>application</b> from the log type list before running this query.
	{log_type=~".+", kubernetes_container_name="compute"}json != "custom-ga-command" ①
①	<b>!= "custom-ga-command"</b> excludes libvirt logs that contain the string <b>custom-ga-command</b> . ( <a href="#">BZ#2177684</a> )

You can filter log lines to include or exclude strings or regular expressions by using line filter expressions.

Table 13.4. Line filter expressions

Line filter expression	Description
= "<string>"	Log line contains string
!= "<string>"	Log line does not contain string
~ "<regex>"	Log line contains regular expression
!~ "<regex>"	Log line does not contain regular expression

## Example line filter expression

```
{log_type=~".+"} |json
|kubernetes_labels_app_kubernetes_io_part_of="hyperconverged-cluster"
|= "error" != "timeout"
```

## Additional resources for LokiStack and LogQL

- [About log storage](#)
- [Deploying the LokiStack](#)
- [LogQL log queries](#) in the Grafana documentation

### 13.3.5. Common error messages

The following error messages might appear in OpenShift Virtualization logs:

#### **ErrImagePull or ImagePullBackOff**

Indicates an incorrect deployment configuration or problems with the images that are referenced.

### 13.3.6. Troubleshooting data volumes

You can check the **Conditions** and **Events** sections of the **DataVolume** object to analyze and resolve issues.

#### 13.3.6.1. About data volume conditions and events

You can diagnose data volume issues by examining the output of the **Conditions** and **Events** sections generated by the command:

```
$ oc describe dv <DataVolume>
```

The **Conditions** section displays the following **Types**:

- **Bound**
- **Running**
- **Ready**

The **Events** section provides the following additional information:

- **Type** of event
- **Reason** for logging
- **Source** of the event
- **Message** containing additional diagnostic information.

The output from **oc describe** does not always contain **Events**.

An event is generated when the **Status**, **Reason**, or **Message** changes. Both conditions and events react to changes in the state of the data volume.

For example, if you misspell the URL during an import operation, the import generates a 404 message. That message change generates an event with a reason. The output in the **Conditions** section is updated as well.

### 13.3.6.2. Analyzing data volume conditions and events

By inspecting the **Conditions** and **Events** sections generated by the **describe** command, you determine the state of the data volume in relation to persistent volume claims (PVCs), and whether or not an operation is actively running or completed. You might also receive messages that offer specific details about the status of the data volume, and how it came to be in its current state.

There are many different combinations of conditions. Each must be evaluated in its unique context.

Examples of various combinations follow.

- **Bound** – A successfully bound PVC displays in this example.

Note that the **Type** is **Bound**, so the **Status** is **True**. If the PVC is not bound, the **Status** is **False**.

When the PVC is bound, an event is generated stating that the PVC is bound. In this case, the **Reason** is **Bound** and **Status** is **True**. The **Message** indicates which PVC owns the data volume.

**Message**, in the **Events** section, provides further details including how long the PVC has been bound (**Age**) and by what resource (**From**), in this case **datavolume-controller**:

#### Example output

```

Status:
Conditions:
Last Heart Beat Time: 2020-07-15T03:58:24Z
Last Transition Time: 2020-07-15T03:58:24Z
Message: PVC win10-rootdisk Bound
Reason: Bound
Status: True
Type: Bound
...
Events:
 Type Reason Age From Message
 ---- ----- --- ----
 Normal Bound 24s datavolume-controller PVC example-dv Bound

```

- **Running** – In this case, note that **Type** is **Running** and **Status** is **False**, indicating that an event has occurred that caused an attempted operation to fail, changing the Status from **True** to **False**.

However, note that **Reason** is **Completed** and the **Message** field indicates **Import Complete**.

In the **Events** section, the **Reason** and **Message** contain additional troubleshooting information about the failed operation. In this example, the **Message** displays an inability to connect due to a **404**, listed in the **Events** section's first **Warning**.

From this information, you conclude that an import operation was running, creating contention for other operations that are attempting to access the data volume:

## Example output

```
Status:
Conditions:
Last Heart Beat Time: 2020-07-15T04:31:39Z
Last Transition Time: 2020-07-15T04:31:39Z
Message: Import Complete
Reason: Completed
Status: False
Type: Running
...
Events:
Type Reason Age From Message
---- ----- ---- -----
Warning Error 12s (x2 over 14s) datavolume-controller Unable to connect
to http data source: expected status code 200, got 404. Status: 404 Not Found
```

- **Ready** – If **Type** is **Ready** and **Status** is **True**, then the data volume is ready to be used, as in the following example. If the data volume is not ready to be used, the **Status** is **False**:

## Example output

```
Status:
Conditions:
Last Heart Beat Time: 2020-07-15T04:31:39Z
Last Transition Time: 2020-07-15T04:31:39Z
Status: True
Type: Ready
```

# CHAPTER 14. BACKUP AND RESTORE

## 14.1. BACKUP AND RESTORE BY USING VM SNAPSHOTS

You can back up and restore virtual machines (VMs) by using snapshots. Snapshots are supported by the following storage providers:

- Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation
- Any other cloud storage provider with the Container Storage Interface (CSI) driver that supports the Kubernetes Volume Snapshot API

Online snapshots have a default time deadline of five minutes (**5m**) that can be changed, if needed.



### IMPORTANT

Online snapshots are supported for virtual machines that have hot plugged virtual disks. However, hot plugged disks that are not in the virtual machine specification are not included in the snapshot.

To create snapshots of an online (Running state) VM with the highest integrity, install the QEMU guest agent if it is not included with your operating system. The QEMU guest agent is included with the default Red Hat templates.

The QEMU guest agent takes a consistent snapshot by attempting to quiesce the VM file system as much as possible, depending on the system workload. This ensures that in-flight I/O is written to the disk before the snapshot is taken. If the guest agent is not present, quiescing is not possible and a best-effort snapshot is taken. The conditions under which the snapshot was taken are reflected in the snapshot indications that are displayed in the web console or CLI.

### 14.1.1. About snapshots

A *snapshot* represents the state and data of a virtual machine (VM) at a specific point in time. You can use a snapshot to restore an existing VM to a previous state (represented by the snapshot) for backup and disaster recovery or to rapidly roll back to a previous development version.

A VM snapshot is created from a VM that is powered off (Stopped state) or powered on (Running state).

When taking a snapshot of a running VM, the controller checks that the QEMU guest agent is installed and running. If so, it freezes the VM file system before taking the snapshot, and thaws the file system after the snapshot is taken.

The snapshot stores a copy of each Container Storage Interface (CSI) volume attached to the VM and a copy of the VM specification and metadata. Snapshots cannot be changed after creation.

You can perform the following snapshot actions:

- Create a new snapshot
- Create a copy of a virtual machine from a snapshot
- List all snapshots attached to a specific VM
- Restore a VM from a snapshot

- Delete an existing VM snapshot

## VM snapshot controller and custom resources

The VM snapshot feature introduces three new API objects defined as custom resource definitions (CRDs) for managing snapshots:

- **VirtualMachineSnapshot**: Represents a user request to create a snapshot. It contains information about the current state of the VM.
- **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent**: Represents a provisioned resource on the cluster (a snapshot). It is created by the VM snapshot controller and contains references to all resources required to restore the VM.
- **VirtualMachineRestore**: Represents a user request to restore a VM from a snapshot.

The VM snapshot controller binds a **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent** object with the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object for which it was created, with a one-to-one mapping.

### 14.1.2. Creating snapshots

You can create snapshots of virtual machines (VMs) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line.

#### 14.1.2.1. Creating a snapshot by using the web console

You can create a snapshot of a virtual machine (VM) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

The VM snapshot includes disks that meet the following requirements:

- Either a data volume or a persistent volume claim
- Belong to a storage class that supports Container Storage Interface (CSI) volume snapshots

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. If the VM is running, click the options menu  and select **Stop** to power it down.
4. Click the **Snapshots** tab and then click **Take Snapshot**.
5. Enter the snapshot name.
6. Expand **Disk included in this Snapshot** to see the storage volumes to be included in the snapshot.
7. If your VM has disks that cannot be included in the snapshot and you wish to proceed, select **I am aware of this warning and wish to proceed**.
8. Click **Save**.

### 14.1.2.2. Creating a snapshot by using the command line

You can create a virtual machine (VM) snapshot for an offline or online VM by creating a **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object.

#### Prerequisites

- Ensure that the persistent volume claims (PVCs) are in a storage class that supports Container Storage Interface (CSI) volume snapshots.
- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).
- Optional: Power down the VM for which you want to create a snapshot.

#### Procedure

1. Create a YAML file to define a **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object that specifies the name of the new **VirtualMachineSnapshot** and the name of the source VM as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: snapshot.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineSnapshot
metadata:
 name: <snapshot_name>
spec:
 source:
 apiGroup: kubevirt.io
 kind: VirtualMachine
 name: <vm_name>
```

2. Create the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object:

```
$ oc create -f <snapshot_name>.yaml
```

The snapshot controller creates a **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent** object, binds it to the **VirtualMachineSnapshot**, and updates the **status** and **readyToUse** fields of the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object.

3. Optional: If you are taking an online snapshot, you can use the **wait** command and monitor the status of the snapshot:

- a. Enter the following command:

```
$ oc wait <vm_name> <snapshot_name> --for condition=Ready
```

- b. Verify the status of the snapshot:

- **InProgress** - The online snapshot operation is still in progress.
- **Succeeded** - The online snapshot operation completed successfully.
- **Failed** - The online snapshot operation failed.



## NOTE

Online snapshots have a default time deadline of five minutes (**5m**). If the snapshot does not complete successfully in five minutes, the status is set to **failed**. Afterwards, the file system will be thawed and the VM unfrozen but the status remains **failed** until you delete the failed snapshot image.

To change the default time deadline, add the **FailureDeadline** attribute to the VM snapshot spec with the time designated in minutes (**m**) or in seconds (**s**) that you want to specify before the snapshot operation times out.

To set no deadline, you can specify **0**, though this is generally not recommended, as it can result in an unresponsive VM.

If you do not specify a unit of time such as **m** or **s**, the default is seconds (**s**).

## Verification

- Verify that the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object is created and bound with **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent** and that the **readyToUse** flag is set to **true**:

```
$ oc describe vmsnapshot <snapshot_name>
```

### Example output

```
apiVersion: snapshot.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineSnapshot
metadata:
 creationTimestamp: "2020-09-30T14:41:51Z"
 finalizers:
 - snapshot.kubevirt.io/vmsnapshot-protection
 generation: 5
 name: mysnap
 namespace: default
 resourceVersion: "3897"
 selfLink:
 /apis/snapshot.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/default/virtualmachinesnapshots/my-
 vmsnapshot
 uid: 28eedf08-5d6a-42c1-969c-2eda58e2a78d
spec:
 source:
 apiGroup: kubevirt.io
 kind: VirtualMachine
 name: my-vm
status:
 conditions:
 - lastProbeTime: null
 lastTransitionTime: "2020-09-30T14:42:03Z"
 reason: Operation complete
 status: "False" ①
 type: Progressing
 - lastProbeTime: null
```

```

lastTransitionTime: "2020-09-30T14:42:03Z"
reason: Operation complete
status: "True" ②
type: Ready
creationTime: "2020-09-30T14:42:03Z"
readyToUse: true ③
sourceUID: 355897f3-73a0-4ec4-83d3-3c2df9486f4f
virtualMachineSnapshotContentName: vmsnapshot-content-28eedf08-5d6a-42c1-969c-
2eda58e2a78d ④

```

- ① The **status** field of the **Progressing** condition specifies if the snapshot is still being created.
- ② The **status** field of the **Ready** condition specifies if the snapshot creation process is complete.
- ③ Specifies if the snapshot is ready to be used.
- ④ Specifies that the snapshot is bound to a **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent** object created by the snapshot controller.

2. Check the **spec:volumeBackups** property of the **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent** resource to verify that the expected PVCs are included in the snapshot.

### 14.1.3. Verifying online snapshots by using snapshot indications

Snapshot indications are contextual information about online virtual machine (VM) snapshot operations. Indications are not available for offline virtual machine (VM) snapshot operations. Indications are helpful in describing details about the online snapshot creation.

#### Prerequisites

- You must have attempted to create an online VM snapshot.

#### Procedure

1. Display the output from the snapshot indications by performing one of the following actions:
  - Use the command line to view indicator output in the **status** stanza of the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object YAML.
  - In the web console, click **VirtualMachineSnapshot** → **Status** in the **Snapshot details** screen.
2. Verify the status of your online VM snapshot by viewing the values of the **status.indications** parameter:
  - **Online** indicates that the VM was running during online snapshot creation.
  - **GuestAgent** indicates that the QEMU guest agent was running during online snapshot creation.
  - **NoGuestAgent** indicates that the QEMU guest agent was not running during online snapshot creation. The QEMU guest agent could not be used to freeze and thaw the file system, either because the QEMU guest agent was not installed or running or due to

another error.

#### 14.1.4. Restoring virtual machines from snapshots

You can restore virtual machines (VMs) from snapshots by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line.

##### 14.1.4.1. Restoring a VM from a snapshot by using the web console

You can restore a virtual machine (VM) to a previous configuration represented by a snapshot in the OpenShift Container Platform web console.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. If the VM is running, click the options menu  and select **Stop** to power it down.
4. Click the **Snapshots** tab to view a list of snapshots associated with the VM.
5. Select a snapshot to open the **Snapshot Details** screen.
6. Click the options menu  and select **Restore VirtualMachine from snapshot**
7. Click **Restore**.

##### 14.1.4.2. Restoring a VM from a snapshot by using the command line

You can restore an existing virtual machine (VM) to a previous configuration by using the command line. You can only restore from an offline VM snapshot.

#### Prerequisites

- Power down the VM you want to restore.

#### Procedure

1. Create a YAML file to define a **VirtualMachineRestore** object that specifies the name of the VM you want to restore and the name of the snapshot to be used as the source as in the following example:

```
apiVersion: snapshot.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineRestore
metadata:
 name: <vm_restore>
spec:
 target:
 apiGroup: kubevirt.io
```

```
kind: VirtualMachine
name: <vm_name>
virtualMachineSnapshotName: <snapshot_name>
```

2. Create the **VirtualMachineRestore** object:

```
$ oc create -f <vm_restore>.yaml
```

The snapshot controller updates the status fields of the **VirtualMachineRestore** object and replaces the existing VM configuration with the snapshot content.

## Verification

- Verify that the VM is restored to the previous state represented by the snapshot and that the **complete** flag is set to **true**:

```
$ oc get vmrestore <vm_restore>
```

## Example output

```
apiVersion: snapshot.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1
kind: VirtualMachineRestore
metadata:
 creationTimestamp: "2020-09-30T14:46:27Z"
 generation: 5
 name: my-vmrestore
 namespace: default
 ownerReferences:
 - apiVersion: kubevirt.io/v1
 blockOwnerDeletion: true
 controller: true
 kind: VirtualMachine
 name: my-vm
 uid: 355897f3-73a0-4ec4-83d3-3c2df9486f4f
 resourceVersion: "5512"
 selfLink:
 /apis/snapshot.kubevirt.io/v1alpha1/namespaces/default/virtualmachinerestores/my-vmrestore
 uid: 71c679a8-136e-46b0-b9b5-f57175a6a041
spec:
 target:
 apiGroup: kubevirt.io
 kind: VirtualMachine
 name: my-vm
 virtualMachineSnapshotName: my-vmsnapshot
status:
 complete: true ①
 conditions:
 - lastProbeTime: null
 lastTransitionTime: "2020-09-30T14:46:28Z"
 reason: Operation complete
 status: "False" ②
 type: Progressing
 - lastProbeTime: null
```

```

lastTransitionTime: "2020-09-30T14:46:28Z"
reason: Operation complete
status: "True" ③
type: Ready
deletedDataVolumes:
- test-dv1
restoreTime: "2020-09-30T14:46:28Z"
restores:
- dataVolumeName: restore-71c679a8-136e-46b0-b9b5-f57175a6a041-datavolumedisk1
persistentVolumeClaim: restore-71c679a8-136e-46b0-b9b5-f57175a6a041-
datavolumedisk1
volumeName: datavolumedisk1
volumeSnapshotName: vmsnapshot-28eedf08-5d6a-42c1-969c-2eda58e2a78d-volume-
datavolumedisk1

```

- ① Specifies if the process of restoring the VM to the state represented by the snapshot is complete.
- ② The **status** field of the **Progressing** condition specifies if the VM is still being restored.
- ③ The **status** field of the **Ready** condition specifies if the VM restoration process is complete.

## 14.1.5. Deleting snapshots

You can delete snapshots of virtual machines (VMs) by using the OpenShift Container Platform web console or the command line.

### 14.1.5.1. Deleting a snapshot by using the web console

You can delete an existing virtual machine (VM) snapshot by using the web console.

#### Procedure

1. Navigate to **Virtualization** → **VirtualMachines** in the web console.
2. Select a VM to open the **VirtualMachine details** page.
3. Click the **Snapshots** tab to view a list of snapshots associated with the VM.
4. Click the options menu  beside a snapshot and select **Delete snapshot**.
5. Click **Delete**.

### 14.1.5.2. Deleting a virtual machine snapshot in the CLI

You can delete an existing virtual machine (VM) snapshot by deleting the appropriate **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object.

#### Prerequisites

- Install the OpenShift CLI (**oc**).

## Procedure

- Delete the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** object:

```
$ oc delete vmsnapshot <snapshot_name>
```

The snapshot controller deletes the **VirtualMachineSnapshot** along with the associated **VirtualMachineSnapshotContent** object.

## Verification

- Verify that the snapshot is deleted and no longer attached to this VM:

```
$ oc get vmsnapshot
```

### 14.1.6. Additional resources

- [CSI Volume Snapshots](#)

## 14.2. BACKING UP AND RESTORING VIRTUAL MACHINES



### IMPORTANT

Red Hat supports using OpenShift Virtualization 4.14 or later with OADP 1.3.x or later.

OADP versions earlier than 1.3.0 are not supported for back up and restore of OpenShift Virtualization.

Back up and restore virtual machines by using the [OpenShift API for Data Protection](#).

You can install the OpenShift API for Data Protection (OADP) with OpenShift Virtualization by installing the OADP Operator and configuring a backup location. You can then install the Data Protection Application.



### NOTE

OpenShift API for Data Protection with OpenShift Virtualization supports the following backup and restore storage options:

- Container Storage Interface (CSI) backups
- Container Storage Interface (CSI) backups with DataMover

The following storage options are excluded:

- File system backup and restore
- Volume snapshot backup and restore

For more information, see [Backing up applications with File System Backup: Kopia or Restic](#).

To install the OADP Operator in a restricted network environment, you must first disable the default OperatorHub sources and mirror the Operator catalog.

See [Using Operator Lifecycle Manager on restricted networks](#) for details.

### 14.2.1. Installing and configuring OADP with OpenShift Virtualization

As a cluster administrator, you install OADP by installing the OADP Operator.

The latest version of the OADP Operator installs [Velero 1.14](#).

#### Prerequisites

- Access to the cluster as a user with the **cluster-admin** role.

#### Procedure

- Install the OADP Operator according to the instructions for your storage provider.
- Install the Data Protection Application (DPA) with the **kubevirt** and **openshift** OADP plugins.
- Back up virtual machines by creating a **Backup** custom resource (CR).



#### WARNING

Red Hat support is limited to only the following options:

- CSI backups
- CSI backups with DataMover.

You restore the **Backup** CR by creating a **Restore** CR.

#### Additional resources

- [OADP plugins](#)
- [Backup custom resource \(CR\)](#)
- [Restore CR](#)
- [Using Operator Lifecycle Manager on restricted networks](#)

### 14.2.2. Installing the Data Protection Application 1.3

You install the Data Protection Application (DPA) by creating an instance of the **DataProtectionApplication** API.

#### Prerequisites

- You must install the OADP Operator.
- You must configure object storage as a backup location.
- If you use snapshots to back up PVs, your cloud provider must support either a native snapshot API or Container Storage Interface (CSI) snapshots.
- If the backup and snapshot locations use the same credentials, you must create a **Secret** with the default name, **cloud-credentials**.
- If the backup and snapshot locations use different credentials, you must create two **Secrets**:
  - **Secret** with a custom name for the backup location. You add this **Secret** to the **DataProtectionApplication** CR.
  - **Secret** with another custom name for the snapshot location. You add this **Secret** to the **DataProtectionApplication** CR.



#### NOTE

If you do not want to specify backup or snapshot locations during the installation, you can create a default **Secret** with an empty **credentials-velero** file. If there is no default **Secret**, the installation will fail.

#### Procedure

1. Click **Operators** → **Installed Operators** and select the OADP Operator.
2. Under **Provided APIs**, click **Create instance** in the **DataProtectionApplication** box.
3. Click **YAML View** and update the parameters of the **DataProtectionApplication** manifest:

```
apiVersion: oadp.openshift.io/v1alpha1
kind: DataProtectionApplication
metadata:
 name: <dpa_sample>
 namespace: openshift-adp ①
spec:
 configuration:
 velero:
 defaultPlugins:
 - kubevirt ②
 - gcp ③
 - csi ④
 - openshift ⑤
 resourceTimeout: 10m ⑥
 nodeAgent: ⑦
 enable: true ⑧
 uploaderType: kopia ⑨
 podConfig:
 nodeSelector: <node_selector> ⑩
 backupLocations:
 - velero:
 provider: gcp ⑪
 default: true
```

```

 credential:
 key: cloud
 name: <default_secret> ⑫
 objectStorage:
 bucket: <bucket_name> ⑬
 prefix: <prefix> ⑭

```

- ① The default namespace for OADP is **openshift-adp**. The namespace is a variable and is configurable.
- ② The **kubevirt** plugin is mandatory for OpenShift Virtualization.
- ③ Specify the plugin for the backup provider, for example, **gcp**, if it exists.
- ④ The **csi** plugin is mandatory for backing up PVs with CSI snapshots. The **csi** plugin uses the [Velero CSI beta snapshot APIs](#). You do not need to configure a snapshot location.
- ⑤ The **openshift** plugin is mandatory.
- ⑥ Specify how many minutes to wait for several Velero resources before timeout occurs, such as Velero CRD availability, volumeSnapshot deletion, and backup repository availability. The default is 10m.
- ⑦ The administrative agent that routes the administrative requests to servers.
- ⑧ Set this value to **true** if you want to enable **nodeAgent** and perform File System Backup.
- ⑨ Enter **kopia** as your uploader to use the Built-in DataMover. The **nodeAgent** deploys a daemon set, which means that the **nodeAgent** pods run on each working node. You can configure File System Backup by adding **spec.defaultVolumesToFsBackup: true** to the **Backup** CR.
- ⑩ Specify the nodes on which Kopia are available. By default, Kopia runs on all nodes.
- ⑪ Specify the backup provider.
- ⑫ Specify the correct default name for the **Secret**, for example, **cloud-credentials-gcp**, if you use a default plugin for the backup provider. If specifying a custom name, then the custom name is used for the backup location. If you do not specify a **Secret** name, the default name is used.
- ⑬ Specify a bucket as the backup storage location. If the bucket is not a dedicated bucket for Velero backups, you must specify a prefix.
- ⑭ Specify a prefix for Velero backups, for example, **velero**, if the bucket is used for multiple purposes.

#### 4. Click **Create**.

#### Verification

1. Verify the installation by viewing the OpenShift API for Data Protection (OADP) resources by running the following command:

```
$ oc get all -n openshift-adp
```

**Example output**

NAME	READY	STATUS	RESTARTS	AGE
pod/oadp-operator-controller-manager-67d9494d47-6l8z8	2/2	Running	0	2m8s
pod/node-agent-9cq4q	1/1	Running	0	94s
pod/node-agent-m4lts	1/1	Running	0	94s
pod/node-agent-pv4kr	1/1	Running	0	95s
pod/velero-588db7f655-n842v	1/1	Running	0	95s

NAME	TYPE	CLUSTER-IP	EXTERNAL-IP
PORT(S) AGE			
service/oadp-operator-controller-manager-metrics-service <none>	ClusterIP	172.30.70.140	
8443/TCP 2m8s			
service/openshift-adp-velero-metrics-svc 8085/TCP	ClusterIP	172.30.10.0	<none>
8h			

NAME	DESIRED	CURRENT	READY	UP-TO-DATE	AVAILABLE	NODE
SELECTOR AGE						
daemonset.apps/node-agent 3	3	3	3	3	<none>	96s

NAME	READY	UP-TO-DATE	AVAILABLE	AGE
deployment.apps/oadp-operator-controller-manager	1/1	1	1	2m9s
deployment.apps/velero	1/1	1	1	96s

NAME	DESIRED	CURRENT	READY	AGE
replicaset.apps/oadp-operator-controller-manager-67d9494d47	1	1	1	2m9s
replicaset.apps/velero-588db7f655	1	1	1	96s

2. Verify that the **DataProtectionApplication** (DPA) is reconciled by running the following command:

```
$ oc get dpa dpa-sample -n openshift-adp -o jsonpath='{.status}'
```

**Example output**

```
{"conditions": [{"lastTransitionTime": "2023-10-27T01:23:57Z", "message": "Reconcile complete", "reason": "Complete", "status": "True", "type": "Reconciled"}]}
```

3. Verify the **type** is set to **Reconciled**.
4. Verify the backup storage location and confirm that the **PHASE** is **Available** by running the following command:

```
$ oc get backupStorageLocation -n openshift-adp
```

**Example output**

NAME	PHASE	LAST VALIDATED	AGE	DEFAULT
dpa-sample-1	Available	1s	3d16h	true

## 14.3. DISASTER RECOVERY

OpenShift Virtualization supports using disaster recovery (DR) solutions to ensure that your environment can recover after a site outage. To use these methods, you must plan your OpenShift Virtualization deployment in advance.

### 14.3.1. About disaster recovery methods

For an overview of disaster recovery (DR) concepts, architecture, and planning considerations, see the [Red Hat OpenShift Virtualization disaster recovery guide](#) in the Red Hat Knowledgebase.

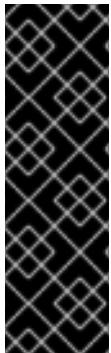
The two primary DR methods for OpenShift Virtualization are Metropolitan Disaster Recovery (Metro-DR) and Regional-DR.

#### 14.3.1.1. Metro-DR

Metro-DR uses synchronous replication. It writes to storage at both the primary and secondary sites so that the data is always synchronized between sites. Because the storage provider is responsible for ensuring that the synchronization succeeds, the environment must meet the throughput and latency requirements of the storage provider.

#### 14.3.1.2. Regional-DR

Regional-DR uses asynchronous replication. The data in the primary site is synchronized with the secondary site at regular intervals. For this type of replication, you can have a higher latency connection between the primary and secondary sites.



#### IMPORTANT

Regional-DR is a Technology Preview feature only. Technology Preview features are not supported with Red Hat production service level agreements (SLAs) and might not be functionally complete. Red Hat does not recommend using them in production. These features provide early access to upcoming product features, enabling customers to test functionality and provide feedback during the development process.

For more information about the support scope of Red Hat Technology Preview features, see [Technology Preview Features Support Scope](#).

### 14.3.2. Defining applications for disaster recovery

Define applications for disaster recovery by using VMs that Red Hat Advanced Cluster Management (RHACM) manages or discovers.

#### 14.3.2.1. Best practices when defining an RHACM-managed VM

An RHACM-managed application that includes a VM must be created by using a GitOps workflow and by creating an RHACM application or **ApplicationSet**.

There are several actions you can take to improve your experience and chance of success when defining an RHACM-managed VM.

##### Use a PVC and populator to define storage for the VM

Because data volumes create persistent volume claims (PVCs) implicitly, data volumes and VMs with data volume templates do not fit as neatly into the GitOps model.

##### Use the import method when choosing a population source for your VM disk

Use the import method to work around limitations in Regional-DR that prevent you from protecting VMs that use cloned PVCs.

Select a RHEL image from the software catalog to use the import method. Red Hat recommends using a specific version of the image rather than a floating tag for consistent results. The KubeVirt community maintains container disks for other operating systems in a Quay repository.

#### **Use `pullMethod: node`**

Use the pod **pullMethod: node** when creating a data volume from a registry source to take advantage of the OpenShift Container Platform pull secret, which is required to pull container images from the Red Hat registry.

### **14.3.2.2. Best practices when defining an RHACM-discovered virtual machine**

You can configure any VM in the cluster that is not an RHACM-managed application as an RHACM-discovered application. This includes VMs imported by using the Migration Toolkit for Virtualization (MTV), VMs created by using the OpenShift Virtualization web console, or VMs created by any other means, such as the CLI.

There are several actions you can take to improve your experience and chance of success when defining an RHACM-discovered VM.

#### **Protect the VM when using MTV, the OpenShift Virtualization web console, or a custom VM**

Because automatic labeling is not currently available, the application owner must manually label the components of the VM application when using MTV, the OpenShift Virtualization web console, or a custom VM.

After creating the VM, apply a common label to the following resources associated with the VM:

**VirtualMachine**, **DataVolume**, **PersistentVolumeClaim**, **Service**, **Route**, **Secret**, and **ConfigMap**. Do not label virtual machine instances (VMIs) or pods since OpenShift Virtualization creates and manages these automatically.

#### **Include more than theVirtualMachine object in the VM**

Working VMs typically also contain data volumes, persistent volume claims (PVCs), services, routes, secrets, **ConfigMap** objects, and **VirtualMachineSnapshot** objects.

#### **Include the VM as part of a larger logical application**

This includes other pod-based workloads and VMs.

### **14.3.3. VM behavior during disaster recovery scenarios**

VMs typically act similarly to pod-based workloads during both relocate and failover disaster recovery flows.

#### **Relocate**

Use relocate to move an application from the primary environment to the secondary environment when the primary environment is still accessible. During relocate, the VM is gracefully terminated, any unreplicated data is synchronized to the secondary environment, and the VM starts in the secondary environment.

Because the terminates gracefully, there is no data loss in this scenario. Therefore, the VM operating system does not need to perform crash recovery.

#### **Failover**

Use failover when there is a critical failure in the primary environment that makes it impractical or impossible to use relocation to move the workload to a secondary environment. When failover is

executed, the storage is fenced from the primary environment, the I/O to the VM disks is abruptly halted, and the VM restarts in the secondary environment using the replicated data.

You should expect data loss due to failover. The extent of loss depends on whether you use Metro-DR, which uses synchronous replication, or Regional-DR, which uses asynchronous replication. Because Regional-DR uses snapshot-based replication intervals, the window of data loss is proportional to the replication interval length. When the VM restarts, the operating system might perform crash recovery.

#### 14.3.4. Metro-DR for Red Hat OpenShift Data Foundation

OpenShift Virtualization supports the [Metro-DR solution for OpenShift Data Foundation](#), which provides two-way synchronous data replication between managed OpenShift Virtualization clusters installed on primary and secondary sites. This solution combines Red Hat Advanced Cluster Management (RHACM), Red Hat Ceph Storage, and OpenShift Data Foundation components.

Use this solution during a site disaster to failover applications from the primary to the secondary site, and relocate the applications back to the primary site after restoring the disaster site.

This synchronous solution is only available to metropolitan distance data centers with a 10-millisecond latency or less.

For more information about using the Metro-DR solution for OpenShift Data Foundation with OpenShift Virtualization, see [the Red Hat Knowledgebase](#) or IBM's OpenShift Data Foundation Metro-DR documentation.

#### Additional resources

- [Configuring OpenShift Data Foundation Disaster Recovery for OpenShift Workloads](#)

#### Additional resources

- [Red Hat Advanced Cluster Management for Kubernetes 2.10](#)